



DEPARTMENT OF THE NAVY
HEADQUARTERS UNITED STATES MARINE CORPS
3000 MARINE CORPS PENTAGON
WASHINGTON, DC 20350-3000

NAVMC 3500.2
C 469
17 Nov 06

NAVMC 3500.2

From: Commandant of the Marine Corps
To: Distribution List

Subj: ASSAULT AMPHIBIAN TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL, (SHORT TITLE: AA
T&R MANUAL)

Ref: (a) MCO P3500.72A
(b) MCO 1553.3A
(c) MCO 3400.3F
(d) MCO 3500.27B W/Erratum
(e) MCRP 3-0A
(f) MCRP 3-0B
(g) MCO 1553.2A

1. Purpose. Per reference (a), this T&R Manual establishes Core Capability Mission Essential Tasks (MET) for readiness reporting and required events for standardization training of Marines and Navy personnel assigned to the Marine Corps Assault Amphibian battalion. Additionally, it provides tasking for formal schools preparing personnel for service in the Marine Corps Assault Amphibian battalion. This NAVMC supersedes MCO P3500.79.

2. Scope

a. The Core Capability Mission Essential Task List (METL) in this manual is used in Defense Readiness Reporting System (DRRS) by all Assault Amphibian battalions for the assessment and reporting of unit readiness. Units achieve training readiness for reporting in DRRS by gaining and sustaining proficiency in the training events in this manual at both collective (unit) and individual levels.

b. Per reference (b), commanders will conduct an internal assessment of the unit's ability to execute each MET, and develop long-, mid-, and short-range training plans to sustain proficiency in each MET. Training plans will incorporate these events to standardize training and provide objective assessment of progress toward attaining combat readiness. Commanders will keep records at the unit and individual levels to record training achievements, identify training gaps, and document objective assessments of readiness associated with training Marines. Commanders will use reference (c) to incorporate nuclear, biological, and chemical defense training into training plans and reference (d) to integrate operational risk management. References (e) and (f) provide amplifying information for effective planning and management of training within the unit.

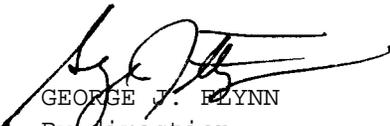
DISTRIBUTION STATEMENT A: Approved for public release; distribution is unlimited.

c. Formal school and training detachment commanders will use references (a) and (g) to ensure programs of instruction meet skill training requirements established in this manual, and provide career-progression training in the events designated for initial training in the formal school environment.

3. Information. CG, TECOM will update this T&R Manual as necessary to provide current and relevant training standards to commanders, and to ensure a current Core Capabilities METL is available for use in DRRS by the Marine Corps Assault Amphibian battalion. All questions pertaining to the Marine Corps Ground T&R Program and Unit Training Management should be directed to: Commanding General, TECOM (Ground Training Branch C 469), 1019 Elliot Road, Quantico, VA 22134.

4. Command. This Publication is applicable to the Marine Corps Total Force.

5. Certification. Reviewed and approved this date.


GEORGE J. FLYNN
By direction

Distribution: 10033193800

Copy to: 7000260 (2)
8145001 (1)

LOCATOR SHEET

Subj: ASSAULT AMPHIBIAN TRAINING AND READINESS MANUAL, (SHORT TITLE: AA
T&R MANUAL)

Location: _____
(Indicate location(s) of copy(ies) of this Manual.)

RECORD OF CHANGES

Log completed change action as indicated

Change Number	Date of Change	Date Entered	Signature of Person Incorporating Change

AA T&R MANUAL

TABLE OF CONTENTS

CHAPTER

1 OVERVIEW

2 MISSION ESSENTIAL TASKS MATRIX

3 COLLECTIVE TRAINING ASSAULT AMPHIBIAN
BATTALION & COMPANY

4 COLLECTIVE TRAINING ASSAULT AMPHIBIAN
PLATOON

5 COLLECTIVE TRAINING ASSAULT AMPHIBIAN
SECTION & CREW

6 INDIVIDUAL EVENTS MOS 1803

7 INDIVIDUAL EVENTS MOS 1833

8 INDIVIDUAL AND COLLECTIVE TRAINING
ASSAULT AMPHIBIAN UNIT GUNNERY TABLES

AA T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 1

OVERVIEW

	<u>PARAGRAPH</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
INTRODUCTION.	1000	1-2
UNIT TRAINING	1001	1-2
UNIT TRAINING MANAGEMENT.	1002	1-3
SUSTAINMENT AND EVALUATION OF TRAINING.	1003	1-3
ORGANIZATION.	1004	1-4
T&R EVENT CODING.	1005	1-4
COMBAT READINESS PERCENTAGE.	1006	1-5
EVALUATION-CODED (E-CODED) EVENTS	1007	1-6
CRP CALCULATION	1008	1-6
T&R EVENT COMPOSITION	1009	1-7
NBC TRAINING.	1010	1-9
NIGHT TRAINING.	1011	1-9
OPERATIONAL RISK MANAGEMENT (ORM)	1012	1-10
MARINE CORPS GROUND T&R PROGRAM	1013	1-10

AA T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 1

OVERVIEW

1000. INTRODUCTION

1. The T&R Program is the Corps' primary tool for planning, conducting and evaluating training, and assessing training readiness. Subject matter experts (SMEs) from the operating forces developed core capability Mission Essential Task Lists (METLs) for ground communities derived from the Marine Corps Task List (MCTL). T&R manuals are built around these METLs and all events contained in T&R manuals relate directly to this METL. This comprehensive T&R Program will help to ensure the Marine Corps continues to improve its combat readiness by training more efficiently and effectively. Ultimately, this will enhance the Marine Corps' ability to accomplish real-world missions.

2. The T&R Manual contains the individual and collective training requirements to prepare units to accomplish their combat mission. The T&R Manual is not intended to be an encyclopedia that contains every minute detail of how to accomplish training. Instead, it identifies the minimum standards that Marines must be able to perform in combat. The T&R Manual is a fundamental tool for commanders to build and maintain unit combat readiness. Using this tool, leaders can construct and execute an effective training plan that supports the unit's METL. More detailed information on the Marine Corps Ground T&R Program is found in reference (a).

1001. UNIT TRAINING

1. The training of Marines to perform as an integrated unit in combat lies at the heart of the T&R program. Unit and individual readiness are directly related. Individual training and the mastery of individual core skills serve as the building blocks for unit combat readiness. A Marine's ability to perform critical skills required in combat is essential. However, it is not necessary to have all individuals within a unit fully trained in order for that organization to accomplish its assigned tasks. Manpower shortfalls, temporary assignments, leave, or other factors outside the commander's control, often affect the ability to conduct individual training. During these periods, unit readiness is enhanced if emphasis is placed on the individual training of Marines on-hand. Subsequently, these Marines will be mission ready and capable of executing as part of a team when the full complement of personnel is available.

2. Commanders will ensure that all tactical training is focused on their combat mission. The T&R Manual is a tool to help develop the unit's training plan. In most cases, unit training should focus on achieving unit proficiency in the core capabilities METL. However, commanders will adjust their training focus to support METLs associated with a major OPLAN/CONPLAN or named operation as designated by their higher commander and reported accordingly in the Defense Readiness Reporting System (DRRS). Tactical

training will support the METL in use by the commander and be tailored to meet T&R standards. Commanders at all levels are responsible for effective combat training. The conduct of training in a professional manner consistent with Marine Corps standards cannot be over emphasized.

3. Commanders will provide personnel the opportunity to attend formal and operational level courses of instruction as required by this Manual. Attendance at all formal courses must enhance the warfighting capabilities of the unit as determined by the unit commander.

1002. UNIT TRAINING MANAGEMENT

1. Unit Training Management (UTM) is the application of the Systems Approach to Training (SAT) and the Marine Corps Training Principles. This is accomplished in a manner that maximizes training results and focuses the training priorities of the unit in preparation for the conduct of its wartime mission.

2. UTM techniques, described in references (b) and (e), provide commanders with the requisite tools and techniques to analyze, design, develop, implement, and evaluate the training of their unit. The Marine Corps Training Principles, explained in reference (b), provide sound and proven direction and are flexible enough to accommodate the demands of local conditions. These principles are not inclusive, nor do they guarantee success. They are guides that commanders can use to manage unit-training programs. The Marine Corps training principles are:

- Train as you fight
- Make commanders responsible for training
- Use standards-based training
- Use performance-oriented training
- Use mission-oriented training
- Train the MAGTF to fight as a combined arms team
- Train to sustain proficiency
- Train to challenge

3. To maintain an efficient and effective training program, leaders at every level must understand and implement UTM. Guidance for UTM and the process for establishing effective programs are contained in references (a) through (g).

1003. SUSTAINMENT AND EVALUATION OF TRAINING

1. The evaluation of training is necessary to properly prepare Marines for combat. Evaluations are either formal or informal, and performed by members of the unit (internal evaluation) or from an external command (external evaluation).

2. Marines are expected to maintain proficiency in the training events for their MOS at the appropriate grade or billet to which assigned. Leaders are responsible for recording the training achievements of their Marines. Whether it involves individual or collective training events, they must ensure proficiency is sustained by requiring retraining of each event at or

before expiration of the designated sustainment interval. Performance of the training event, however, is not sufficient to ensure combat readiness. Leaders at all levels must evaluate the performance of their Marines and the unit as they complete training events, and only record successful accomplishment of training based upon the evaluation. The goal of evaluation is to ensure that correct methods are employed to achieve the desired standard, or the Marines understand how they need to improve in order to attain the standard. Leaders must determine whether credit for completing a training event is recorded if the standard was not achieved. While successful accomplishment is desired, debriefing of errors can result in successful learning that will allow ethical recording of training event completion. Evaluation is a continuous process that is integral to training management and is conducted by leaders at every level and during all phases of planning and the conduct of training. To ensure training is efficient and effective, evaluation is an integral part of the training plan. Ultimately, leaders remain responsible for determining if the training was effective.

3. The purpose of formal and informal evaluation is to provide commanders with a process to determine a unit's/Marine's proficiency in the tasks that must be performed in combat. Informal evaluations are conducted during every training evolution. Formal evaluations are often scenario-based, focused on the unit's METs, based on collective training standards, and usually conducted during higher-level collective events. References (a) and (f) provide further guidance on the conduct of informal and formal evaluations using the Marine Corps Ground T&R Program.

1004. ORGANIZATION

1. T&R Manuals are organized in one of two methods: unit-based or community-based. Unit-based T&R Manuals are written to support a type of unit (Infantry, Assault Amphibian, Tanks, etc.) and contain both collective and individual training standards. Community-based are written to support an Occupational Field, a group of related Military Occupational Specialties (MOSs), or billets within an organization (EOD, NBC, Intel, etc.), and usually only contain individual training standards. T&R Manuals are comprised of chapters that contain unit METs, collective training standards (CTS), and individual training standards (ITS) for each MOS, billet, etc.

2. The Assault Amphibian T&R Manual is a unit-based manual comprised of 8 chapters. Chapter 2 lists the Core Capability METs and their related collective events. Chapters 3 through 5 contain collective events. Chapters 6 and 8 contain individual events. Chapter 8 contains the Assault Amphibian unit gunnery tables.

1005. T&R EVENT CODING

1. T&R events are coded for ease of reference. Each event has a 4-4-4-digit identifier. The first four digits are referred to as a "community" and represent the unit type or occupation (AAV, 1803, 1833). The second four digits represent the functional or duty area (TAC, CMDC, GNRV, etc.). The last four digits represent the level and sequence of the event.

2. The T&R levels are illustrated in Figure 1. An example of the T&R coding used in this Manual is shown in Figure 2.

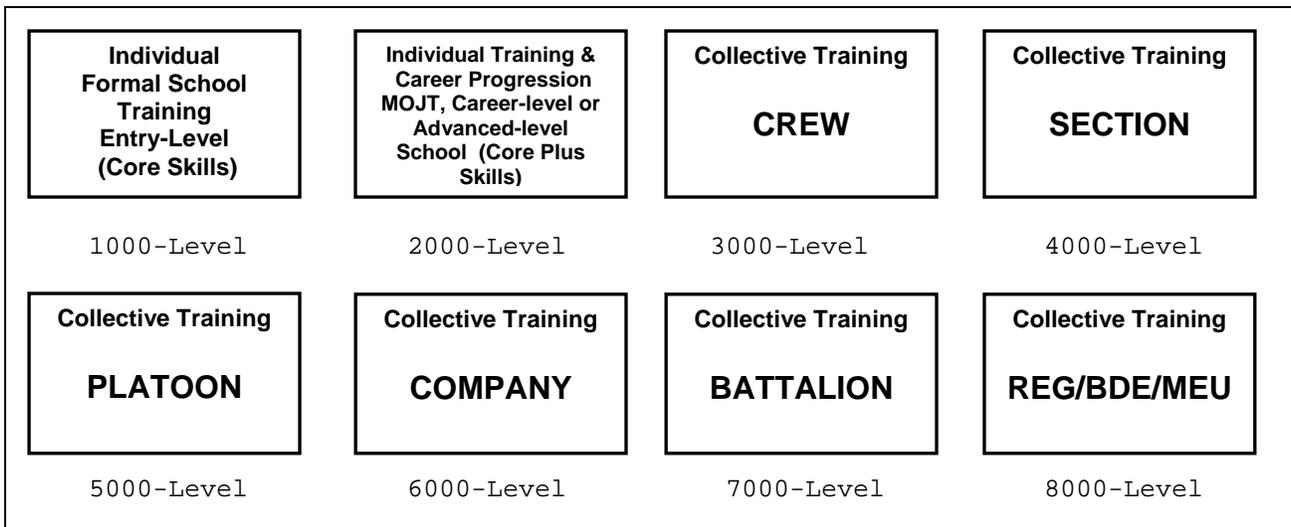


Figure 1: T&R Event Levels

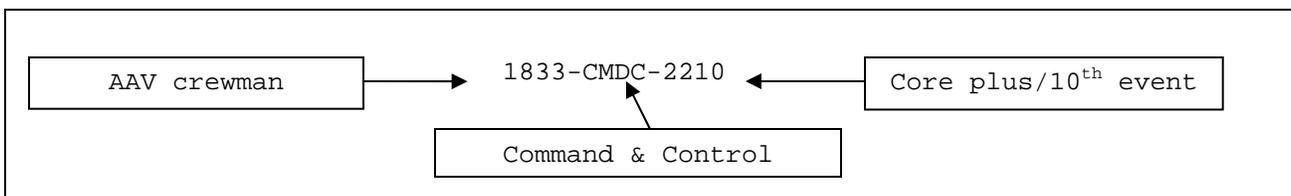


Figure 2: T&R Event Coding

1006. COMBAT READINESS PERCENTAGE

1. The Marine Corps Ground T&R Program includes processes to assess readiness of units and individual Marines. Every unit in the Marine Corps maintains a basic level of readiness based on the training and experience of the Marines in the unit. Even units that never trained together are capable of accomplishing some portion of their missions. Combat readiness assessment does not associate a quantitative value for this baseline of readiness, but uses a "Combat Readiness Percentage", as a method to provide a concise descriptor of the recent training accomplishments of units and Marines.

2. Combat Readiness Percentage (CRP) is the percentage of required training events that a unit or Marine accomplishes within specified sustainment intervals.

3. In unit-based T&R Manuals, unit combat readiness is assessed as a percentage of the successfully completed and current (within sustainment interval) key training events called "Evaluation-Coded" (E-Coded) Events. E-Coded Events and unit CRP calculation are described in follow-on paragraphs. CRP achieved through the completion of E-Coded Events is directly relevant to readiness assessment in DRRS.

4. Individual combat readiness, in both unit-based and community-based T&R Manuals, is assessed as the percentage of required individual events in which a Marine is current. This translates as the percentage of training events for his/her MOS and grade (or billet) that the Marine successfully completes within the directed sustainment interval. Individual skills are developed through a combination of 1000-level training (entry-level formal school courses), individual on-the-job training in 2000-level events, and follow-on formal school training. Skill proficiency is maintained by retraining in each event per the specified sustainment interval.

1007. EVALUATION-CODED (E-CODED) EVENTS

1. Unit-type T&R Manuals can contain numerous unit events, some for the whole unit and others for integral parts that serve as building blocks for training. To simplify training management and readiness assessment, only collective events that are critical components of a mission essential task (MET), or key indicators of a unit's readiness, are used to generate CRP for a MET. These critical or key events are designated in the T&R Manual as Evaluation-Coded (E-Coded) events. Formal evaluation of unit performance in these events is recommended because of their value in assessing combat readiness. Only E-Coded events are used to calculate CRP for each MET.

2. The use of a METL-based training program allows the commander discretion in training. This makes the T&R Manual a training tool rather than a prescriptive checklist.

1008. CRP CALCULATION

1. Collective training begins at the 3000 level (team, crew or equivalent). Unit training plans are designed to accomplish the events that support the unit METL while simultaneously sustaining proficiency in individual core skills. Using the battalion-based (unit) model, the battalion (7000-level) has collective events that directly support a MET on the METL. These collective events are E-Coded and the only events that contribute to unit CRP. This is done to assist commanders in prioritizing the training toward the METL, taking into account resource, time, and personnel constraints.

2. Unit CRP increases after the completion of E-Coded events. The number of E-Coded events for the MET determines the value of each E-Coded event. For example, if there are 4 E-Coded events for a MET, each is worth 25% of MET CRP. MET CRP is calculated by adding the percentage of each completed and current (within sustainment interval) E-Coded training event. The percentage for each MET is calculated the same way and all are added together and divided by the number of METS to determine unit CRP. For ease of calculation, we will say that each MET has 4 E-Coded events, each contributing 25% towards the completion of the MET. If the unit has completed and is current on three of the four E-Coded events for a given MET, then they have completed 75% of the MET. The CRP for each MET is added together and divided by the number of METS to get unit CRP; unit CRP is the average of MET CRP.

For Example:

MET 1: 75% complete (3 of 4 E-Coded events trained)
MET 2: 100% complete (6 of 6 E-Coded events trained)
MET 3: 25% complete (1 of 4 E-Coded events trained)
MET 4: 50% complete (2 of 4 E-Coded events trained)
MET 5: 75% complete (3 of 4 E-Coded events trained)

To get unit CRP, simply add the CRP for each MET and divide by the number of METS:

MET CRP: $75 + 100 + 25 + 50 + 75 = 325$

Unit CRP: $325 \text{ (total MET CRP)} / 5 \text{ (total number of METS)} = 65\%$

1009. T&R EVENT COMPOSITION

1. This section explains each of the components of a T&R event. These items are included in all events in each T&R manual.

a. Event Code (see Sect 1006). The event code is a 4-4-4 character set. For individual training events, the first 4 characters indicate the occupational function. The second 4 characters indicate functional area (TAC, CBTS, VOPS, etc.). The third 4 characters are simply a numerical designator for the event.

b. Event Title. The event title is the name of the event.

c. E-Coded. This is a "yes/no" category to indicate whether or not the event is E-Coded. If yes, the event contributes toward the CRP of the associated MET. The value of each E-Coded event is based on number of E-Coded events for that MET. Refer to paragraph 1008 for detailed explanation of E-Coded events.

d. Supported MET(s). List all METs that are supported by the training event.

e. Sustainment Interval. This is the period, expressed in number of months, between evaluation or retraining requirements. Skills and capabilities acquired through the accomplishment of training events are refreshed at pre-determined intervals. It is essential that these intervals are adhered to in order to ensure Marines maintain proficiency.

f. Billet. Individual training events may contain a list of billets within the community that are responsible for performing that event. This ensures that the billet's expected tasks are clearly articulated and a Marine's readiness to perform in that billet is measured.

g. Grade. Each individual training event will list the rank(s) at which Marines are required to learn and sustain the training event.

h. Event Description. Provide a description of the event purpose, objectives, goals, and requirements. It is a general description of an

action requiring learned skills and knowledge (e.g. Load the MK 19 Mod 3 Machine Gun).

i. Condition. Describe the condition(s), under which tasks are performed. Conditions are based on a "real world" operational environment. They indicate what is provided (equipment, materials, manuals, aids, etc.), environmental constraints, conditions under which the task is performed, and any specific cues or indicators to which the performer must respond. When resources or safety requirements limit the conditions, this is stated.

j. Standard. The standard indicates the basis for judging effectiveness of the performance. It consists of a carefully worded statement that identifies the proficiency level expected when the task is performed. The standard provides the minimum acceptable performance parameters and is strictly adhered to. The standard for collective events is general, describing the desired end-state or purpose of the event. While the standard for individual events specifically describe to what proficiency level in terms of accuracy, speed, sequencing, quality of performance, adherence to procedural guidelines, etc., the event is accomplished.

k. Event Components. Describe the actions composing the event and help the user determine what must be accomplished and to properly plan for the event.

l. Prerequisite Events. Prerequisites are academic training or other T&R events that must be completed prior to attempting the task. They are lower-level events or tasks that give the individual/unit the skills required to accomplish the event. They can also be planning steps, administrative requirements, or specific parameters that build toward mission accomplishment.

m. Chained Events. Collective T&R events are supported by lower-level collective and individual T&R events. This enables unit leaders to effectively identify subordinate T&R events that ultimately support specific mission essential tasks. When the accomplishment of any upper-level events, by their nature, result in the performance of certain subordinate and related events, the events are "chained." The completion of chained events will update sustainment interval credit (and CRP for E-Coded events) for the related subordinate level events.

n. Related Events. Provide a list of all Individual Training Standards that support the event.

o. References. The training references are utilized to determine task performance steps, grading criteria, and ensure standardization of training procedures. They assist the trainee in satisfying the performance standards, or the trainer in evaluating the effectiveness of task completion. References are also important to the development of detailed training plans.

p. Distance Learning Products (IMI, CBT, MCI, etc.). Include this component when the event can be taught via one of these media methods vice attending a formal course of instruction or receiving MOJT.

q. Support Requirements. This is a list of the external and internal support the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. The list includes, but is not limited to:

- Range(s)/Training Area
- Ordnance
- Equipment
- Materials
- Other Units/Personnel
- Other Support Requirements

r. Miscellaneous. Provide any additional information that assists in the planning and execution of the event. Miscellaneous information may include, but is not limited to:

- Admin Instructions
- Special Personnel Certifications
- Equipment Operating Hours
- Road Miles

2. Community-based T&R manuals have several additional components not found in unit-based T&R manuals. These additions do not apply to this T&R Manual.

1010. NBC TRAINING

1. All personnel assigned to the operating force must be trained in nuclear, biological, and chemical defense (NBCD), in order to survive and continue their mission in this environment. Individual proficiency standards are defined as survival and basic operating standards. Survival standards are those that the individual must master in order to survive NBC attacks. Basic operating standards are those that the individual, and collectively the unit, must perform to continue operations in an NBC environment.

2. In order to develop and maintain the ability to operate in an NBC environment, NBCD training is an integral part of the training plan and events in this T&R Manual. Units should train under NBC conditions whenever possible. Per reference (c), all units must be capable of accomplishing their assigned mission in a contaminated environment.

1011. NIGHT TRAINING

1. While it is understood that all personnel and units of the operating force are capable of performing their assigned mission in "every climate and place," current doctrine emphasizes the requirement to perform assigned missions at night and during periods of limited visibility. Basic skills are significantly more difficult when visibility is limited.

2. To ensure units are capable of accomplishing their mission they must train under the conditions of limited visibility. Units should strive to conduct all events in this T&R Manual during both day and night/limited visibility conditions. When there is limited training time available, night training should take precedence over daylight training, contingent on individual, crew, and unit proficiency.

1012. OPERATIONAL RISK MANAGEMENT (ORM)

1. ORM is a process that enables commanders to plan for and minimize risk while still accomplishing the mission. It is a decision making tool used by Marines at all levels to increase operational effectiveness by anticipating hazards and reducing the potential for loss, thereby increasing the probability of a successful mission. ORM minimizes risks to acceptable levels, commensurate with mission accomplishment.

2. Commanders, leaders, maintainers, planners, and schedulers will integrate risk assessment in the decision-making process and implement hazard controls to reduce risk to acceptable levels. Applying the ORM process will reduce mishaps, lower costs, and provide for more efficient use of resources. ORM assists the commander in conserving lives and resources and avoiding unnecessary risk, making an informed decision to implement a course of action (COA), identifying feasible and effective control measures where specific measures do not exist, and providing reasonable alternatives for mission accomplishment. Most importantly, ORM assists the commander in determining the balance between training realism and unnecessary risks in training, the impact of training operations on the environment, and the adjustment of training plans to fit the level of proficiency and experience of Sailors/Marines and leaders. Further guidance for ORM is found in references (b) and (d).

1013. MARINE CORPS GROUND T&R PROGRAM

1. The Marine Corps Ground T&R Program continues to evolve. The vision for Ground T&R Program is to publish a T&R Manual for every readiness-reporting unit so that core capability METs are clearly defined with supporting collective training standards, and to publish community-based T&R Manuals for all occupational fields whose personnel augment other units to increase their combat and/or logistic capabilities. The vision for this program includes plans to provide a Marine Corps training management information system that enables tracking of unit and individual training accomplishments by unit commanders and small unit leaders, automatically computing CRP for both units and individual Marines based upon MOS and rank (or billet). Linkage of T&R Events to the Marine Corps Task List (MCTL), through the core capability METs, has enabled objective assessment of training readiness in the DRRS.

2. DRRS measures and reports on the readiness of military forces and the supporting infrastructure to meet missions and goals assigned by the Secretary of Defense. With unit CRP based on the unit's training toward its METs, the CRP will provide a more accurate picture of a unit's readiness. This will give fidelity to future funding requests and factor into the allocation of resources. Additionally, the Ground T&R Program will help to ensure training remains focused on mission accomplishment and that training readiness reporting is tied to units' METLs.

AA T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 2

MISSION ESSENTIAL TASKS MATRIX

	<u>PARAGRAPH</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
ASSAULT AMPHIBIAN MISSION ESSENTIAL TASK LIST	2000	2-2

AA T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 2

MISSION ESSENTIAL TASKS MATRIX

2000. ASSAULT AMPHIBIAN MISSION ESSENTIAL TASK LIST. The list below includes the core capability Mission Essential Task List (METL) and the collective events that support each MET. All METS are derived from the Marine Corps Task List (MCTL).

MET#/MISSION ESSENTIAL TASK

MET 1 - MCT 1.1 PROVIDE FORCES	
AAV-CMDC-7201	Maintain a Ground Safety Program
AAV-CMDC-7202	Plan Tactical Operations
AAV-CMDC-7206	Employ Operations Security (OPSEC) Measures
AAV-CSS-7504	Support Maritime Prepositioning Forces (MPF) Operations During Planning and Execution
AAV-CSS-7505	Develop Embarkation Plans
AAV-CSS-7506	Embark Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAVs) onto Strategic Transportation
AAV-CMDC-5201	Employ Operations Security (OPSEC)
AAV-CMDC-5202	Conduct Risk Management
AAV-TAC-5716	Support Infantry Defensive Operations
AAV-TAC-5721	Support Infantry Offensive Operations
MET 2 - MCT 1.3.1 CONDUCT MANEUVER	
AAV-CMDC-7201	Maintain a Ground Safety Program
AAV-CMDC-7202	Plan Tactical Operations
AAV-CMDC-7204	Establish Combat Operations Center (COC)
AAV-CMDC-7206	Employ Operations Security (OPSEC) Measures
AAV-TAC-7701	Occupy an Assembly Area
AAV-TAC-7702	Conduct Quartering Party Operations
AAV-CSS-6501	Conduct Combat Trains Employment
AAV-CMDC-5201	Employ Operations Security (OPSEC)
AAV-CMDC-5202	Conduct Risk Management
AAV-VOPS-5301	Employ Smoke Generation System
AAV-CBTS-5403	React to a Nuclear Biological Chemical (NBC) Attack
AAV-CSS-5501	Conduct Casualty Evacuation Operations
AAV-TAC-5701	Employ Column Formation

AAV-TAC-5702	Employ Vee Formation
AAV-TAC-5703	Employ Wedge Formation
AAV-TAC-5704	Employ Line Formation
AAV-TAC-5705	Employ Echelon Formation
AAV-TAC-5706	Employ Traveling Movement Technique
AAV-TAC-5707	Employ Traveling Overwatch Technique
AAV-TAC-5708	Employ Bounding Overwatch Technique
AAV-TAC-5709	Employ Coil Formation
AAV-TAC-5710	Employ Herringbone Formation
AAV-TAC-5711	Conduct Tactical Road March
AAV-TAC-5712	Conduct a Tactical Halt
AAV-TAC-5713	Conduct Immediate Action Drills
AAV-TAC-5714	Conduct Actions on Contact
AAV-TAC-5715	Cross a Danger Area
AAV-TAC-5718	Conduct Deliberate Occupation of a Battle Position
AAV-TAC-5719	Conduct a Disengagement/Withdrawal from the Enemy
AAV-TAC-5720	Conduct a Delay
AAV-TAC-5721	Support Infantry Offensive Operations
AAV-TAC-5722	Conduct Attack Position Activities
AAV-TAC-5723	Support a Mechanized Patrol
AAV-TAC-5724	Conduct Dismount Point Activities
AAV-TAC-5725	Conduct a Spoiling Attack
AAV-TAC-5726	Conduct Overwatch/Support by Fire
AAV-TAC-5727	Conduct Reconnaissance by Fire
AAV-TAC-5728	Conduct a Bypass
AAV-TAC-5729	Conduct a Linkup
AAV-TAC-5730	Conduct Passage of Lines
AAV-TAC-5733	Support Military Operations on Urban Terrain (MOUT)
AAV-CMDC-4201	Conduct Command Section Operations
AAV-VOPS-4301	Tow Start an AAV
AAV-VOPS-4302	Tow AAV on Land
AAV-VOPS-4303	Recover Disabled AAV
AAV-TAC-4701	Conduct a Route Reconnaissance
AAV-CMDC-3201	Control Radio Communications
AAV-VOPS-3303	Operate an Assault Amphibious Vehicle (AAV) on Land
AAV-VOPS-3305	Employ Terrain Driving Techniques
AAV-CSS-3501	Refuel an Assault Amphibious Vehicle (AAV)
AAV-TAC-3701	Displace to Alternate/Supplementary Positions
MET 3 - MCT 1.3.2 CONDUCT AMPHIBIOUS OPERATIONS	
AV-CMDC-7201	Maintain a Ground Safety Program

AAV-CMDC-7202	Plan Tactical Operations
AAV-CMDC-7204	Establish Combat Operations Center (COC)
AAV-CMDC-7206	Employ Operations Security (OPSEC) Measures
AAV-CSS-7505	Develop Embarkation Plans
AAV-CSS-7508	Conduct Contact and Recovery Team Operations
AAV-CSS-7509	Conduct Maintenance Support
AAV-AMPH-7601	Assist in Developing the Landing Plan
AAV-AMPH-7602	Analyze Landing Plan
AAV-CSS-6502	Conduct Maintenance and Recovery Support Operations
AAV-AMPH-6601	Conduct Surf Survival Training
AAV-CMDC-5201	Employ Operations Security (OPSEC)
AAV-CMDC-5202	Conduct Risk Management
AAV-CBTS-5403	React to a Nuclear Biological Chemical (NBC) Attack
AAV-CSS-5501	Conduct Casualty Evacuation Operations
AAV-AMPH-5601	Prepare Platoon for Debarkation from Amphibious Shipping
AAV-AMPH-5602	Conduct Waterborne Ship-to-Shore Movement
AAV-AMPH-5603	Conduct Amphibious Demonstration
AAV-AMPH-5604	Participate in Amphibious Assault
AAV-AMPH-5605	Participate in Amphibious Raid
AAV-AMPH-5606	Conduct Amphibious Withdrawal
AAV-AMPH-5607	Conduct Amphibious Breaching
AAV-TAC-5719	Conduct a Disengagement/Withdrawal from the Enemy
AAV-TAC-5728	Conduct a Bypass
AAV-TAC-5731	Conduct Riverine Operations
AAV-TAC-5732	Cross a River
AAV-CMDC-4201	Conduct Command Section Operations
AAV-AMPH-4601	Conduct Evacuation of Personnel from Disabled/Sinking AAV
AAV-AMPH-4602	Recover Disabled AAV in the Water Using Other AAVs
AAV-CMDC-3201	Control Radio Communications
AAV-CBTS-3401	Employ the MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System
AAV-AMPH-3601	Perform Assault Amphibious Vehicle (AAV) Crew Water Operations Qualification
AAV-AMPH-3602	Operate an Assault Amphibious Vehicle (AAV) in Water
AAV-AMPH-3603	Conduct Emergency Procedures Afloat
MET 4 - MCT 1.4.2 CONDUCT BREACHING OPERATIONS	
AAV-CMDC-7201	Maintain a Ground Safety Program
AAV-CMDC-7202	Plan Tactical Operations
AAV-CMDC-7204	Establish Combat Operations Center (COC)
AAV-CMDC-7206	Employ Operations Security (OPSEC) Measures
AAV-CSS-7509	Conduct Maintenance Support
AAV-CSS-6502	Conduct Maintenance and Recovery Support Operations

AAV-CMDC-5201	Employ Operations Security (OPSEC)
AAV-CMDC-5202	Conduct Risk Management
AAV-VOPS-5301	Employ Smoke Generation System
AAV-CBTS-5401	Breach an Obstacle
AAV-CBTS-5402	Participate in Deliberate Breach
AAV-CBTS-5403	React to a Nuclear Biological Chemical (NBC) Attack
AAV-AMPH-5607	Conduct Amphibious Breaching
AAV-TAC-5726	Conduct Overwatch/Support by Fire
AAV-CMDC-4201	Conduct Command Section Operations
AAV-CMDC-3201	Control Radio Communications
AAV-VOPS-3303	Operate an Assault Amphibious Vehicle (AAV) on Land
AAV-CBTS-3401	Employ the MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System
MET 5 - MCT 1.6.1 CONDUCT OFFENSIVE OPERATIONS	
AAV-CMDC-7201	Maintain a Ground Safety Program
AAV-CMDC-7202	Plan Tactical Operations
AAV-CMDC-7203	Develop Scheme of Intelligence Support
AAV-CMDC-7204	Establish Combat Operations Center (COC)
AAV-CMDC-7206	Employ Operations Security (OPSEC) Measures
AAV-CSS-7507	Conduct Logistics Trains Operations
AAV-CSS-7508	Conduct Contact and Recovery Team Operations
AAV-CSS-7509	Conduct Maintenance Support
AAV-CSS-6501	Conduct Combat Trains Employment
AAV-CSS-6502	Conduct Maintenance and Recovery Support Operations
AAV-CMDC-5201	Employ Operations Security (OPSEC)
AAV-CMDC-5202	Conduct Risk Management
AAV-VOPS-5301	Employ Smoke Generation System
AAV-CBTS-5401	Breach an Obstacle
AAV-CBTS-5402	Participate in Deliberate Breach
AAV-CBTS-5403	React to a Nuclear Biological Chemical (NBC) Attack
AAV-CSS-5501	Conduct Casualty Evacuation Operations
AAV-AMPH-5602	Conduct Waterborne Ship-to-Shore Movement
AAV-AMPH-5603	Conduct Amphibious Demonstration
AAV-AMPH-5604	Participate in Amphibious Assault
AAV-AMPH-5605	Participate in Amphibious Raid
AAV-TAC-5701	Employ Column Formation
AAV-TAC-5702	Employ Vee Formation
AAV-TAC-5703	Employ Wedge Formation
AAV-TAC-5704	Employ Line Formation
AAV-TAC-5705	Employ Echelon Formation
AAV-TAC-5714	Conduct Actions on Contact

AAV-TAC-5715	Cross a Danger Area
AAV-TAC-5721	Support Infantry Offensive Operations
AAV-TAC-5722	Conduct Attack Position Activities
AAV-TAC-5724	Conduct Dismount Point Activities
AAV-TAC-5725	Conduct a Spoiling Attack
AAV-TAC-5726	Conduct Overwatch/Support by Fire
AAV-TAC-5727	Conduct Reconnaissance by Fire
AAV-TAC-5728	Conduct a Bypass
AAV-TAC-5733	Support Military Operations on Urban Terrain (MOUT)
AAV-GNRY-4159	Conduct AAV Gunnery Table IX
AAV-CMDC-4201	Conduct Command Section Operations
AAV-AMPH-4601	Conduct Evacuation of Personnel from Disabled/Sinking AAV
AAV-CMDC-3201	Control Radio Communications
AAV-VOPS-3301	Conduct Hasty Demolition of an Assault Amphibious Vehicle (AAV) to Prevent Enemy Use
AAV-VOPS-3302	Start an Assault Amphibious Vehicle (AAV) Engine From Outside Power Source
AAV-VOPS-3303	Operate an Assault Amphibious Vehicle (AAV) on Land
AAV-VOPS-3304	Evacuate Wounded Crewmember from Each Crew Station
AAV-VOPS-3305	Employ Terrain Driving Techniques
AAV-CBTS-3401	Employ the MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System
AAV-CSS-3501	Refuel an Assault Amphibious Vehicle (AAV)
AAV-AMPH-3602	Operate an Assault Amphibious Vehicle (AAV) in Water
MET 6 - MCT 1.6.4 CONDUCT DEFENSIVE OPERATIONS	
AAV-CMDC-7201	Maintain a Ground Safety Program
AAV-CMDC-7202	Plan Tactical Operations
AAV-CMDC-7203	Develop Scheme of Intelligence Support
AAV-CMDC-7204	Establish Combat Operations Center (COC)
AAV-CMDC-7206	Employ Operations Security (OPSEC) Measures
AAV-CSS-7503	Conduct Resupply Operations
AAV-CSS-7507	Conduct Logistics Trains Operations
AAV-CSS-7508	Conduct Contact and Recovery Team Operations
AAV-CSS-7509	Conduct Maintenance Support
AAV-TAC-7704	Conduct Rear Area Operations
AAV-CSS-6501	Conduct Combat Trains Employment
AAV-CSS-6502	Conduct Maintenance and Recovery Support Operations
AAV-CMDC-5201	Employ Operations Security (OPSEC)
AAV-CMDC-5202	Conduct Risk Management
AAV-VOPS-5301	Employ Smoke Generation System
AAV-CBTS-5403	React to a Nuclear Biological Chemical (NBC) Attack
AAV-CSS-5501	Conduct Casualty Evacuation Operations

AAV-TAC-5709	Employ Coil Formation
AAV-TAC-5710	Employ Herringbone Formation
AAV-TAC-5713	Conduct Immediate Action Drills
AAV-TAC-5716	Support Infantry Defensive Operations
AAV-TAC-5717	Defend a Battle Position
AAV-TAC-5718	Conduct Deliberate Occupation of a Battle Position
AAV-TAC-5719	Conduct a Disengagement/Withdrawal from the Enemy
AAV-TAC-5720	Conduct a Delay
AAV-TAC-5726	Conduct Overwatch/Support by Fire
AAV-TAC-5727	Conduct Reconnaissance by Fire
AAV-TAC-5733	Support Military Operations on Urban Terrain (MOUT)
AAV-GNRY-4159	Conduct AAV Gunnery Table IX
AAV-CMDC-4201	Conduct Command Section Operations
AAV-AMPH-4601	Conduct Evacuation of Personnel from Disabled/Sinking AAV
AAV-TAC-4702	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization
AAV-GNRY-3156	Conduct AAV Gunnery Table VI
AAV-GNRY-3157	Conduct AAV Gunnery Table VII
AAV-GNRY-3158	Conduct AAV Gunnery Table VIII
AAV-CMDC-3201	Control Radio Communications
AAV-VOPS-3301	Conduct Hasty Demolition of an Assault Amphibious Vehicle (AAV) to Prevent Enemy Use
AAV-VOPS-3302	Start an Assault Amphibious Vehicle (AAV) Engine From Outside Power Source
AAV-VOPS-3303	Operate an Assault Amphibious Vehicle (AAV) on Land
AAV-VOPS-3304	Evacuate Wounded Crewmember from Each Crew Station
AAV-CSS-3501	Refuel an Assault Amphibious Vehicle (AAV)
AAV-TAC-3701	Displace to Alternate/Supplementary Positions
MET 7 - MCT 1.6.5 CONDUCT TACTICAL OPERATIONS	
AAV-CMDC-7201	Maintain a Ground Safety Program
AAV-CMDC-7202	Plan Tactical Operations
AAV-CMDC-7204	Establish Combat Operations Center (COC)
AAV-CMDC-7206	Employ Operations Security (OPSEC) Measures
AAV-CBTS-7401	Conduct Immediate Decontamination
AAV-CBTS-7402	Conduct Operational Decontamination
AAV-CBTS-7403	Conduct Thorough Decontamination
AAV-CSS-7501	Conduct Logistic Operations Center (LOC) Operations
AAV-CSS-7502	Plan Combat Service Support (CSS) Operations
AAV-CSS-7503	Conduct Resupply Operations
AAV-CSS-7507	Conduct Logistics Trains Operations
AAV-CSS-7508	Conduct Contact and Recovery Team Operations
AAV-CSS-7509	Conduct Maintenance Support

AAV-TAC-7701	Occupy an Assembly Area
AAV-TAC-7702	Conduct Quartering Party Operations
AAV-TAC-7703	Conduct Local Security of the Assembly Area
AAV-TAC-7704	Conduct Rear Area Operations
AAV-CSS-6501	Conduct Combat Trains Employment
AAV-CSS-6502	Conduct Maintenance and Recovery Support Operations
AAV-CMDC-5201	Employ Operations Security (OPSEC)
AAV-CMDC-5202	Conduct Risk Management
AAV-VOPS-5301	Employ Smoke Generation System
AAV-CBTS-5403	React to a Nuclear Biological Chemical (NBC) Attack
AAV-CSS-5501	Conduct Casualty Evacuation Operations
AAV-AMPH-5606	Conduct Amphibious Withdrawal
AAV-TAC-5701	Employ Column Formation
AAV-TAC-5702	Employ Vee Formation
AAV-TAC-5703	Employ Wedge Formation
AAV-TAC-5704	Employ Line Formation
AAV-TAC-5705	Employ Echelon Formation
AAV-TAC-5711	Conduct Tactical Road March
AAV-TAC-5715	Cross a Danger Area
AAV-TAC-5719	Conduct a Disengagement/Withdrawal from the Enemy
AAV-TAC-5720	Conduct a Delay
AAV-TAC-5723	Support a Mechanized Patrol
AAV-TAC-5724	Conduct Dismount Point Activities
AAV-TAC-5726	Conduct Overwatch/Support by Fire
AAV-TAC-5727	Conduct Reconnaissance by Fire
AAV-TAC-5728	Conduct a Bypass
AAV-TAC-5729	Conduct a Linkup
AAV-TAC-5730	Conduct Passage of Lines
AAV-TAC-5733	Support Military Operations on Urban Terrain (MOUT)
AAV-TAC-5734	Support Roadblock/Checkpoint Operations
AAV-CMDC-4201	Conduct Command Section Operations
AAV-VOPS-4301	Tow Start an AAV
AAV-VOPS-4302	Tow AAV on Land
AAV-VOPS-4303	Recover Disabled AAV
AAV-AMPH-4601	Conduct Evacuation of Personnel from Disabled/Sinking AAV
AAV-AMPH-4602	Recover Disabled AAV in the Water Using Other AAVs
AAV-TAC-4701	Conduct a Route Reconnaissance
AAV-TAC-4702	Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization
AAV-CMDC-3201	Control Radio Communications
AAV-VOPS-3301	Conduct Hasty Demolition of an Assault Amphibious Vehicle (AAV) to Prevent Enemy Use
AAV-VOPS-3302	Start an Assault Amphibious Vehicle (AAV) Engine From Outside Power Source

AAV-VOPS-3303	Operate an Assault Amphibious Vehicle (AAV) on Land
AAV-VOPS-3304	Evacuate Wounded Crewmember from Each Crew Station
AAV-VOPS-3305	Employ Terrain Driving Techniques
AAV-CSS-3501	Refuel an Assault Amphibious Vehicle (AAV)
AAV-TAC-3701	Displace to Alternate/Supplementary Positions
MET 8 - MCT 3.2.4.1 CONDUCT DIRECT FIRE	
AAV-CMDC-7201	Maintain a Ground Safety Program
AAV-CMDC-7202	Plan Tactical Operations
AAV-CMDC-5201	Employ Operations Security (OPSEC)
AAV-CMDC-5202	Conduct Risk Management
AAV-TAC-5721	Support Infantry Offensive Operations
AAV-TAC-5725	Conduct a Spoiling Attack
AAV-TAC-5726	Conduct Overwatch/Support by Fire
AAV-TAC-5733	Support Military Operations on Urban Terrain (MOUT)
AAV-GNRY-4159	Conduct AAV Gunnery Table IX
AAV-CMDC-4201	Conduct Command Section Operations
AAV-GNRY-3156	Conduct AAV Gunnery Table VI
AAV-GNRY-3157	Conduct AAV Gunnery Table VII
AAV-GNRY-3158	Conduct AAV Gunnery Table VIII
AAV-CMDC-3201	Control Radio Communications
MET 9 - MCT 5.3.2 ESTABLISH MEANS TO COMMAND AND CONTROL	
AAV-CMDC-7201	Maintain a Ground Safety Program
AAV-CMDC-7202	Plan Tactical Operations
AAV-CMDC-7204	Establish Combat Operations Center (COC)
AAV-CMDC-7205	Operate Without Communications
AAV-CMDC-7206	Employ Operations Security (OPSEC) Measures
AAV-CMDC-7207	Conduct Passive Electronic Countermeasures
AAV-CSS-7501	Conduct Logistic Operations Center (LOC) Operations
AAV-CMDC-5201	Employ Operations Security (OPSEC)
AAV-CMDC-5202	Conduct Risk Management
AAV-CMDC-4201	Conduct Command Section Operations
AAV-CMDC-3201	Control Radio Communications

AA T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 3

COLLECTIVE TRAINING ASSAULT AMPHIBIAN BATTALION & COMPANY

	<u>PARAGRAPH</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
PURPOSE.	3000	3-2
EVENT CODING	3001	3-2
ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES	3002	3-2
COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY	3003	3-3
INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS BY FUNCTIONAL AREA.	3004	3-5
BATTALION LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS	3005	3-6
COMPANY LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS	3006	3-36

AA T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 3

COLLECTIVE TRAINING ASSAULT AMPHIBIAN BATTALION & COMPANY

3000. PURPOSE. This chapter contains the Battalion and Company level Assault Amphibian unit events, and illustrates the relationship between unit competencies [Mission Essential Tasks (METs)] and unit training (Collective Events). Unit training managers can isolate all training relevant to each MET and devise training to support their competencies as needed. Lastly, this chapter serves as the focal point for Platoon training, detailed in the subsequent chapters.

3001. EVENT CODING. Events in the T&R Manual are depicted with a 12 field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one - Each event starts with "AAV" indicating that the event is for units in the Assault Amphibian Occupational Field.

b. Field two - This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. Functional areas used at the Battalion and Company level are:

CMDC - Command and Control	CBTS - Combat Support
CSS - Combat Service Support	AMPH - Amphibious Operations
TAC - Tactical Operations	

c. Field three - This field provides unit level at which the event is accomplished and numerical sequencing.

3002. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES

1. Commanders should select which collective events under a MET will be E-coded for purposes of recording and calculating Combat Readiness Percentages.

2. Each Event contains a paragraph that describes internal and external Support Requirements the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. Ranges/Training Areas are described in this section with plain-language description. They are also described using the Range/Facility Codes that identify the type of range and/or training area needed to accomplish the Event. Marines can use the codes to find information about available ranges at their geographic location by using the web-based Range/Training Area Management System (see TECOM website). Ultimate use of the Range/Training Area Code is to relate ranges to readiness by identifying those Events that cannot be accomplished at a certain location due to lack of ranges.

3003. COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY

1. **Assault Amphibian Battalion.** The mission of the assault amphibian battalion is to land the surface assault element of the landing force and its equipment in a single lift from assault shipping by amphibious operations to inland objectives, and to conduct mechanized operations and related combat support in subsequent operations ashore. The assault amphibian battalion augments the company's organic logistics capability by providing personnel, medical, resupply, and overflow second and third echelon maintenance. Although primarily employed to mechanize the surface assault elements of a Regimental Landing Team (RLT), assault amphibian battalion elements may be employed in a combat service support role forward of the Forward Line of Troops (FLOT) or in the beach support area. The battalion has the command, staff, and resources necessary to plan and execute mechanized operations as a maneuver control headquarters when augmented with combat and combat support forces. The battalion is comprised of at least two AA companies and an H&S company.

- a. Conducts amphibious operations.
- b. Conducts mechanized operations.
- c. Provides staff and command and control assets to plan and execute mechanized operations.
- d. Conducts combat service support operations.
- e. Conducts mechanized breaching support.
- f. Conducts operations in NBC environment.
- g. Conducts rear area operations.

2. **Assault Amphibian Company.** The mission of the AA company is to land the surface assault element of the landing force and their equipment in a single lift from assault shipping by amphibious operations to inland objectives, and to conduct mechanized operations and related combat support in subsequent operations ashore. The AA company supports mechanized, logistical, command and control, or recovery operations for the infantry battalion or supported unit. The AA company consists of two to five AA platoons and a maintenance platoon or detachment. The AA company consists of the AA company commander who leads the company staff and organic support detachments in support of detached AA platoons.

- a. Conduct amphibious operations.
- b. Conduct mechanized operations.
- c. Conduct offensive operations.
- d. Conduct defensive operations.
- e. Conduct operations in support of mechanized operations.
- f. Employ vehicle and small unit fires.

- g. Conduct operations in an NBC environment.

3. **Assault Amphibian Headquarters and Service (H&S) Company.** H&S Company provides the AA battalion commander and subordinate units combat service support and the means to affect command and control of the battalion. Through its subordinate platoons and sections, the H&S company provides maintenance, communications, administrative, medical, supply and other service support functions to the AA battalion. H&S company includes a headquarters platoon and a general support (GS) platoon which provides support to the battalion logistics train and command and control assets to the battalion and GCE maneuver units. The communications platoon installs, operates, and maintains the communication system for the battalion headquarters and is responsible for repairs through second echelon for all communications equipment organic to the battalion and supports the company communications sections, as required. The battalion maintenance platoon is responsible for third echelon maintenance of all tracked vehicles in the battalion. H&S company also includes supply and motor transport platoons. H&S company is lead by the H&S company commander.

- a. Conduct combat service support operations in support of battalion.
- b. Provide higher echelon support of maintenance for the battalion units.
- c. Provide command and control infrastructure for battalion staff.
- d. Conduct rear area security for battalion support area.
- e. Conduct operations in NBC environment.
- f. Participate in convoy operations.

3004. INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS BY FUNCTIONAL AREA

Event Code	Eval Code	Event	Page
AAV-CMDC-7201		Maintain a Ground Safety Program	3-6
AAV-CMDC-7202		Plan Tactical Operations	3-6
AAV-CMDC-7203		Develop Scheme of Intelligence Support	3-8
AAV-CMDC-7204	Yes	Establish Combat Operations Center (COC)	3-9
AAV-CMDC-7205		Operate Without Communications	3-10
AAV-CMDC-7206		Employ Operations Security (OPSEC) Measures	3-11
AAV-CMDC-7207		Conduct Passive Electronic Countermeasures	3-13
AAV-CBTS-7401		Conduct Immediate Decontamination	3-13
AAV-CBTS-7402		Conduct Operational Decontamination	3-14
AAV-CBTS-7403		Conduct Thorough Decontamination	3-17
AAV-CSS-7501	Yes	Conduct Logistic Operations Center (LOC) Operations	3-19
AAV-CSS-7502	Yes	Plan Combat Service Support (CSS) Operations	3-20
AAV-CSS-7503		Conduct Resupply Operations	3-21
AAV-CSS-7504		Support Maritime Prepositioning Forces (MPF) Operations During Planning and Execution	3-22
AAV-CSS-7505		Develop Embarkation Plans	3-23
AAV-CSS-7506		Embark Assault Amphibious Vehicles (AAVs) onto Strategic Transportation	3-23
AAV-CSS-7507		Conduct Logistics Trains Operations	3-24
AAV-CSS-7508		Conduct Contact and Recovery Team Operations	3-25
AAV-CSS-7509		Conduct Maintenance Support	3-26
AAV-AMPH-7601	Yes	Assist in Developing the Landing Plan	3-29
AAV-AMPH-7602		Analyze Landing Plan	3-30
AAV-TAC-7701		Occupy an Assembly Area	3-31
AAV-TAC-7702		Conduct Quartering Party Operations	3-32
AAV-TAC-7703		Conduct Local Security of the Assembly Area	3-33
AAV-TAC-7704		Conduct Rear Area Operations	3-34
AAV-CSS-6501		Conduct Combat Trains Employment	3-36
AAV-CSS-6502		Conduct Maintenance and Recovery Support Operations	3-36
AAV-AMPH-6601		Conduct Surf Survival Training	3-38

3005. BATTALION LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

AAV-CMDC-7201: Maintain a Ground Safety Program

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 3 months

DESCRIPTION: The Assault Amphibian battalion maintains and publishes ground safety requirements and guidelines to reduce mishaps and accidents.

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters. All necessary unit personnel, equipment, and references are available.

STANDARD: The battalion provides comprehensive guidance and details to the unit to create and follow a ground safety program in order to avoid injury without hindering mission accomplishment and in accordance with applicable ground safety orders. The unit collects relevant information and correctly assesses risk status. All personnel are informed of and understand the risk factors. All potential safety problems are identified and either reduced or eliminated.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Identify requirements for safety related programs.
2. Develop a ground safety plan.
3. Identify potential hazards.
4. Identify techniques employed to prevent mishaps.
5. Identify responsibilities of the safety manager to prevent mishaps.
6. Direct safety training of personnel to prevent mishaps.
7. Identify the requirements to report and record mishaps.
8. Monitor safety procedures at the commodity level.

REFERENCES:

1. CFR 29 Code of Federal Regulations - Labor
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCO 5100.19 MC Traffic Safety Program (DRIVESAFE)
4. MCO P5090.2 Environmental Compliance and Protection Manual
5. TM 10209-10/1 Use and Care of Hand Tools & Measuring Tools

AAV-CMDC-7202: Plan Tactical Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and has received an OPORD, WARNO, or FRAGO to conduct an operation at the location and time specified. The order includes all applicable overlays and or graphics. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, subordinate, and supporting elements. The unit is provided

guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit plans operations as part of the Marine Corps Planning Process (MCP) in accordance with appropriate references, standing operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. This process is abbreviated as necessary given the time available and the tactical situation. The unit S-3 section issues a WARNO to staff alerting them of pending planning process. The unit staff prepares for mission analysis by gathering necessary tools. The unit commander and staff complete a quick initial assessment determining time available from mission receipt to mission execution. The unit commander issues planning guidance to the staff. The unit commander and staff conduct mission analysis. The unit commander approves the restated mission. The unit issues WARNOs as necessary during the planning process. The unit staff develops courses of action (COAs) for analysis and comparison. The unit staff compares feasible COAs and identifies one that has highest probability of success against most likely enemy COA and most dangerous enemy COA. The unit staff briefs the selected COA and develops a plan that supports the higher commander's intent.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The S-3 and staff section leaders gain and maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit commander and staff receive an order or anticipate a new mission and begin the MCP; the unit executive officer (XO) is the time keeper for the MCP and coordinates and synchronizes activities of all staff officers.
3. Unit commander identifies what is to be displayed as the common operational picture (COP).
4. Unit staff ensures that the COP is updated and maintained during the MCP.
5. Unit S-3 section issues a WARNO to staff alerting them of a pending tactical operation and the planning process.
6. Unit XO coordinates staff actions required to ensure staff estimates are current and staff elements have necessary mission analysis tools.
7. Unit staff prepares for mission analysis by gathering necessary tools.
8. Unit commander and staff complete quick initial assessment.
9. Unit commander determines whether time permits conduct of a full or an abbreviated (time-constrained environment) MCP.
10. Unit commander issues his initial guidance.
11. Unit commander and staff deploy R&S assets early in the planning process but not before determining the initial R&S requirements.
12. Unit S-3 section issues the WARNO 1 to subordinate and supporting units.
13. Unit XO coordinates dispatch of liaison personnel as directed.
14. Unit commander and staff conduct mission analysis; each staff officer analyzes the mission and order for his area of expertise and or responsibility.
15. Unit commander approves restated mission.
16. Unit commander develops his initial intent; during mission analysis, the commander begins his visualization and develops his initial intent for the operation.
17. Unit commander issues the commander's guidance.

18. Unit S-3 section issues a WARNO 2 to subordinate and supporting elements immediately after the unit commander provides his guidance.
19. Unit commander and staff perform the following functions during the rest of the planning process: review periodically all available facts and assumptions for new or changed information, assess impact of changes on the plan, and make necessary adjustments.
20. Unit staff, upon receipt of commander's guidance, develops COAs for analysis and comparison.
21. Unit staff conducts course of action analysis (wargaming) for each COA.
22. Unit staff conducts an (internal) wargame briefing; this briefing is OPTIONAL and is normally given to the XO.
23. Unit staff compares feasible COAs and identifies one that has highest probability of success against most likely enemy COA and most dangerous enemy COA.
24. Unit S-3 presents the decision briefing.
25. Unit commander approves a COA.
26. Unit S-3 section issues WARNO with essential information so subordinate elements can refine their plans.
27. Unit staff refines the COA based on the commander's decision and final guidance.
28. Unit staff prepares the order or plan by turning it into a clear, concise concept of operations, a scheme of maneuver, and the required fire support.
29. Unit commander reviews and approves orders before the staff reproduces and briefs them.
30. Unit staff reproduces, briefs, and distributes order.
31. Unit begins preparing for operations and conducts a rehearsal.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3120.8A Organization of FMF for Combat
 2. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
 3. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
-

AAV-CMDC-7203: Develop Scheme of Intelligence Support

SUPPORTED MET(S): 5, 6

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and receives an operations order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct operations at the location and time specified. The order includes all applicable overlays and or graphics. The S-2 section is established and provides support to operations. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit develops the scheme of intelligence support as required for amphibious, mechanized, and riverine operations. The S-2 section plans, coordinates, and participates in creating orders. The S-2 section prepares,

updates, and maintains the intelligence estimate. The S-2 section processes, analyzes, and disseminates information and tracks the current battle. The S-2 section identifies and analyzes current and future problems. The S-2 supervises the S-2 section and personnel. The S-2 section coordinates, supervises, and enforces the reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S) plan. The S-2 participates in the target selection process. The S-2 section coordinates and supervises military intelligence, counterintelligence, and security activities. The S-2 section assists in preparing deception plans. The S-2 section determines map requirements and requisitions maps as necessary. The S-2 section considers rules of engagement (ROE) during planning.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct terrain analysis.
2. Conduct analysis of weather.
3. Conduct threat analysis.
4. Develop Modified Combined Operations Overlay (MCOO).
5. Determine AA unit informational requirements.
6. Establish reporting procedures.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 21-26 Map Reading and Land Navigation
2. FM 5-33 Terrain Analysis
3. MCRP 2-12A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
4. MCRP 2-25A Reconnaissance Reports Guide
5. MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Symbols
6. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
7. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
8. MCWP 4-11 Tactical Level Logistics
9. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process

AAV-CMDC-7204: Establish Combat Operations Center (COC)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 9

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and is required to establish the command post (CP). A reconnaissance of the new location is conducted, the site secured, and the CP is moved. All necessary personnel and equipment are available. The battalion has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit establishes the CP in accordance with the standing operating procedures (SOP), the order, or higher commander's guidance. CP personnel establish local area security and a communications network. CP personnel complete communication checks and assume control of the operation. Displace the command post as required in order to establish the combat operations center and to exercise command and control of the battalion.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Organize Combat Operation Center (COC).
2. Establish COC staffing with executive or primary staff, special staff, liaison personnel, and supporting personnel.
3. Organize personnel, equipment, and vehicles for 24 hour/all weather operations.
4. Determine location based on defensible position with good communications aspects.
5. Identify alternate COC site and route in the event that the COC must displace quickly.
6. Prepare plans for the establishment of alternate COC.
7. Ensure strict OPSEC/COMSEC during displacement.
8. Employ active and passive security measures.
9. Establish traffic control measures to limit access and movement in the vicinity of the COC.
10. Establish remote antenna farm.
11. Establish unit journal.
12. Establish message handling procedures within the COC.
13. Establish and maintain unit status board.
14. Coordinate with Logistics Operation Center.

REFERENCE:

1. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

EQUIPMENT: Command post tents, general purpose tents, tables, chairs, map boards, and radio support.

AAV-CMDC-7205: Operate Without Communications

SUPPORTED MET(S): 9

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters. All necessary unit S-6 personnel and communications or data transfer equipment are available. The unit loses all radio communications while performing the mission during high tempo operations for a period of 2-4 hours. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit conducts operations without radio and/or digital connectivity in accordance with standing operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit accomplishes all mission requirements and completes the operation without radio communications.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Establish "no communications plan" as part of OPORD/FRAGO.
2. Employ alternate control methods in the absence of radio communications.
3. Continue mission in accordance with commander's intent maintaining focus on the desired end state.

REFERENCES :

1. FM 21-60 Visual Signals
 2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
-

AAV-CMDC-7206: Employ Operations Security (OPSEC) Measures

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 9

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and must maintain operations security (OPSEC) to deny the enemy information about friendly activities taking place in the area of operations (AO). All command posts (CPs) are operational and information is passed between higher, adjacent, subordinate, and supporting elements. The enemy has the capability to detect the unit visually, audibly, and electronically. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit employs OPSEC measures in accordance with standing operating procedures (SOP), the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit identifies and eliminates or controls indicators which are exploited by hostile intelligence organizations. The unit practices active and passive noise, light, litter, and communications measures to deny friendly information to enemy forces. The unit complies with the ROE and ROI.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit develops an OPSEC plan that addresses active and passive noise, light, litter, and communications measures to deny friendly information to enemy forces.
3. Identify indicators which can be exploited by hostile intelligence organizations.
4. Develop a deception plan when planning missions.
5. Unit prepares for OPSEC.
6. Brief subordinates on the OPSEC plan and its importance to mission success.
7. Refine the plan based on continuously updated intelligence.
8. Conduct extensive reconnaissance and surveillance (R&S).
9. Unit executes the OPSEC plan.
10. Enforce measures that protect friendly information.
11. Prohibit fraternization with local civilians.
12. Make sure maps do not contain the friendly order of battle.
13. Conduct inspections and gives briefings to ensure that personnel do not carry details of military activities in personal materials (letters, diaries, notes, drawings, sketches, or photographs).

14. Enforce safeguards for weapons, ammunition, sensitive items, and classified documents.
15. Ensure all planning areas and positions are sanitized after use or before unit elements depart their areas.
16. Man and perform surveillance from observation posts (OPs).
17. Conduct counter reconnaissance patrols if possible.
18. Destroy enemy reconnaissance elements when encountered.
19. Conduct stand-to procedures.
20. Establish local security and specific levels of alert based on the factors of mission, enemy, terrain, troops, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC).
21. Use camouflage to conceal individuals, equipment, supplies, and positions.
22. Cover all reflective surfaces with non-reflective material such as cloth, mud, or camouflage stick.
23. Use terrain and vegetation for concealment.
24. Avoid footpaths, trails, and or roads where possible.
25. Erase tracks leading into positions.
26. Control movement.
27. Use the proper movement formation and movement technique.
28. Enforce radio discipline.
29. Ensure subordinate elements change frequencies and call signs IAW signal operating instructions (SOI) and SOP.
30. Ensure subordinate elements use: varied transmission schedules and lengths, establish formats to expedite transmissions, encode messages or use secure voice, brevity codes when possible, the lowest power settings possible, and maintain radio silence as directed.
31. Ensure subordinate elements avoid transmission patterns.
32. Ensure subordinate elements understand action to take if jamming is suspected.
33. Continue to operate, disconnect the antenna, switch to the highest power, relocate the radio, use directional antennas, turn squelch off, use messenger and wire whenever possible when in static positions, and use the radio in the quiet, message mode.
34. Transmit an arranged number of taps or use the PUSH-TO-TALK switch in the same manner.
35. Enforce litter discipline.
36. Collect and back-haul trash during logistics runs during stationary periods.
37. Carry trash until it can be disposed of securely.
38. Enforce light and noise discipline.
39. Ensure subordinate elements conceal lights necessary for planning or reading a map.
40. Enforce information assurance.
41. Unit leaders assess OPSEC measures.
42. Monitor the effectiveness of the OPSEC plan.
43. Monitor subordinate compliance with the OPSEC plan.
44. Direct adjustments as necessary.

REFERENCES :

1. DoDD 2000.12 DoD Antiterrorism/Force Protection (AT/FP) Program
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 2-1 Intelligence Operations
4. MCWP 2-6 Counterintelligence
5. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

6. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
 7. MCWP 6-22 Communications and Information Systems
-

AAV-CMDC-7207: Conduct Passive Electronic Countermeasures

SUPPORTED MET(S): 9

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and receives an OPORD or FRAGO to conduct a mission at the location and time specified. The order includes all applicable overlays and or graphics. Communication systems are operational and passing information in accordance with SOP. All information systems are accredited to process and store SECRET data. Security guidelines and procedures for all information systems are distributed down to the user level. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit conducts passive electronic countermeasures in accordance with standing operating procedures, the appropriate references, the order, and higher commander's guidance, in order to defeat enemy electronic warfare measures.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Minimize electronic communications.
2. Employ wire communications whenever possible.
3. Employ encryption methods whenever possible.
4. Notify net control of detection of enemy use of friendly frequencies or procedures.
5. Employ countermeasures when enemy jamming occurs.
6. Employ countermeasure on the SINCGARS radios.

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 2. MCWP 6-22 Communications and Information Systems
 3. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

AAV-CBTS-7401: Conduct Immediate Decontamination

SUPPORTED MET(S): 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters. The enemy effectively employs chemical weapons against the unit resulting in contamination. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has

communications with higher, adjacent, subordinate, and supporting elements. Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. This task is performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit conducts immediate decontamination in accordance with standing operating procedures, OPORD, and higher commander's guidance. The unit performs task to react to a chemical attack. The unit coordinates for operational decontamination. The unit decontaminates without sustaining additional casualties to personnel or damage to equipment and without spreading contamination. The unit maintains situational awareness by monitoring communications.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Coordinate selection of hasty decontamination site with higher headquarters.
2. Prepare hasty decontamination site.
3. Operate hasty decontamination site.
4. Personnel remove gross contamination from individual protective over garments, combat gear, and weapons with sticks or other improvised devices.
5. Personnel decontaminate individual protective gloves, hood, overboots, combat gear, and weapon.
6. Decontaminated weapons are washed with water, dried, and lubricated.
7. Contaminated protective covers covering essential equipment are removed, decontaminated, or disposed.
8. Assigned operators/crew members decontaminate their vehicles and/or crew served weapons.
9. Reduce MOPP if decontamination efforts are adequate as determined by radiation detector kits.
10. Close and mark hasty decontamination site.

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
2. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
3. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
4. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
5. MCWP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
6. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS

AAV-CBTS-7402: Conduct Operational Decontamination

SUPPORTED MET(S): 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A decontamination operation that consists of two techniques, the mission-oriented protective posture (MOPP) gear exchange and the vehicle/equipment wash-down. Decontamination is conducted on an individual or unit and restricted to specific parts of operationally essential equipment, material, or working areas in order to minimize contact, limit transfer hazards, and to sustain operations. This may include

decontamination of the individual beyond the scope of immediate decontamination, as well as decontamination of mission-essential spares and limited terrain decontamination.

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters. The enemy effectively employs chemical weapons against the unit resulting in contamination. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, subordinate, and supporting elements. Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. This task is performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit conducts operational decontamination in accordance with standing operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit performs task to react to a chemical attack. The unit coordinates for operational decontamination. The unit moves to the decontamination site and conducts operational decontamination while maintaining security.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit reacts to chemical attack and reports contamination to higher headquarters.
2. Report location of the contaminated unit, time the unit became contaminated, number of vehicles and equipment, by type, that are contaminated, and type of contamination.
3. Coordinate with higher headquarters commander for relief from current mission.
4. Unit commander and staff determine the extent of contamination and establish decontamination priorities.
5. Unit commander or designated staff coordinates operational decontamination support from higher headquarters.
6. Coordinate decontamination site.
7. Ensure site has good overhead concealment, good drainage, is off the main route but within easy access for vehicles, large enough to handle vehicle wash-down and mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) gear exchange, and has adequate available water source.
8. Unit establishes communications with unit decontaminating equipment team.
9. Unit dispatches nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) personnel and advance party (including logistics support) to prepare decontamination site.
10. Establish communications with NBC decontamination teams.
11. Establish site security.
12. Linkup with NBC decontamination team at decontamination site.
13. Establish vehicle washdown site, in coordination with SOP.
14. Prepare MOPP gear exchange site at a clean area upwind from vehicle washdown.
15. Ensure the logistics section or the higher headquarters NBC team obtains additional equipment for the MOPP gear exchange as required.
16. Unit elements conduct tactical movement to the decontamination site and prepare for operational decontamination.
17. Establish and maintain local security IAW SOP or commander's guidance.
18. Prepare vehicles for washdown.
19. Unit performs vehicle decontamination.
20. Ensure vehicle hatches are closed and secured.
21. Follow guidance of site officer, noncommissioned officer in charge, or

- equipment crew in moving vehicles to and through decontamination site.
22. Subordinate unit personnel assist decon crew in decontaminating vehicles as required.
 23. Move vehicles, if applicable, to the designated holding area upwind from decontamination site as directed by the officer or noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC).
 24. Prevent spread of NBC contamination.
 25. Under supervision of the unit NBC officer and NBC NCO, site officer or NCOIC, or decontamination team, unit conducts MOPP gear exchange.
 26. Unit completes decontamination activities.
 27. Mount vehicles in designated holding area and move to post decontamination assembly area. Note: Alternate drivers may be used to move vehicles to post decontamination assembly area while primary drivers conduct MOPP gear exchange.
 28. Follow additional guidance of officer in charge (OIC) or NCOIC as required.
 29. Ensure that the decon crew covers, marks, and departs contaminated area.
 30. Unit commander reports completion of decontamination to higher headquarters.
 31. Unit continues operations as directed.
 32. Unit reacts to chemical attack and reports contamination to higher headquarters.
 33. Report location of the contaminated unit, time the unit became contaminated, number of vehicles and equipment, by type, that are contaminated, and type of contamination.
 34. Coordinate with higher headquarters commander for relief from current mission.
 35. Unit commander and staff determine the extent of contamination and establish decontamination priorities.
 36. Unit commander or designated staff coordinates operational decontamination support from higher headquarters.
 37. Coordinate decontamination site.
 38. Ensure site has good overhead concealment, good drainage, is off the main route but within easy access for vehicles, large enough to handle vehicle wash-down and mission-oriented protection posture (MOPP) gear exchange, and has adequate available water source.
 39. Unit establishes communications with unit decontaminating equipment team.
 40. Unit dispatches nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) personnel and advance party (including logistics support) to prepare decontamination site.
 41. Establish communications with NBC decontamination teams.
 42. Establish site security.
 43. Linkup with NBC decontamination team at decontamination site.
 44. Establish vehicle washdown site, in coordination with SOP.
 45. Prepare MOPP gear exchange site at a clean area upwind from vehicle washdown.
 46. Ensure the logistics section or the higher headquarters NBC team obtains additional equipment for the MOPP gear exchange as required.
 47. Unit elements conduct tactical movement to the decontamination site and prepare for operational decontamination.
 48. Establish and maintain local security IAW SOP or commander's guidance.
 49. Prepare vehicles for washdown.
 50. Unit performs vehicle decontamination.
 51. Ensure vehicle hatches are closed and secured.
 52. Follow guidance of site officer, noncommissioned officer in charge, or

- equipment crew in moving vehicles to and through decontamination site.
53. Subordinate unit personnel assist decon crew in decontaminating vehicles as required.
 54. Move vehicles, if applicable, to the designated holding area upwind from decontamination site as directed by the officer or noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC).
 55. Prevent spread of NBC contamination.
 56. Under supervision of the unit NBC officer and NBC NCO, site officer or NCOIC, or decontamination team, unit conducts MOPP gear exchange.
 57. Unit completes decontamination activities.
 58. Mount vehicles in designated holding area and move to post decontamination assembly area. Note: Alternate drivers may be used to move vehicles to post decontamination assembly area while primary drivers conduct MOPP gear exchange.
 59. Follow additional guidance of officer in charge (OIC) or NCOIC as required.
 60. Ensure that the decon crew covers, marks, and departs contaminated area.
 61. Unit commander reports completion of decontamination to higher headquarters.
 62. Unit continues operations as directed.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 3. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
 4. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
 5. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
 6. MCWP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
-

AAV-CBTS-7403: Conduct Thorough Decontamination

SUPPORTED MET(S): 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Decontamination carried out by a unit, with external support, to reduce contamination on personnel, equipment, materiel or working areas to the lowest possible levels. Thorough decontamination permits the partial or total removal of individual protective equipment and facilitates the continuation of operations with minimum degradation. Thorough decontamination involves detailed troop decontamination (DTD) and detailed equipment decontamination (DED) and is normally conducted as part of reconstitution or during breaks in combat operations. This may include terrain decontamination beyond the scope of operational decontamination.

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters. The enemy effectively employs chemical weapons against the unit resulting in contamination. Higher headquarters establishes a decontamination site with service support personnel. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, subordinate, and supporting elements. Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during

limited visibility conditions. This task is performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit conducts thorough decontamination in accordance with higher headquarters standing operating procedures (SOP), the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit coordinates for thorough decontamination and moves to the decontamination site and conducts decontamination operations.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit reacts to chemical attack and reports contamination to higher headquarters.
3. Report location of the contaminated unit(s), time the unit(s) became contaminated, number of vehicles and equipment, by type, that are contaminated, and type of contamination.
4. Coordinate with higher headquarters commander for relief from current mission.
5. Unit commander and staff determine the extent of contamination and establish decontamination priorities.
6. Unit commander or designated staff coordinates thorough decontamination support from higher headquarters.
7. Coordinate decontamination site.
8. Unit establishes communications with higher headquarters' decontaminating equipment team.
9. Unit dispatches nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) personnel and advance party (including logistics support) to decontamination site.
10. Establish communications with higher headquarters NBC staff and decon team as necessary.
11. Link up with higher headquarters NBC staff and decon team at decontamination site.
12. Ensure the logistics section or the higher headquarters NBC team obtains additional equipment for the MOPP gear exchange as required.
13. Unit subordinate elements conduct tactical movement to the decontamination site and prepare for thorough decontamination.
14. Prepare for MOPP gear exchange and vehicle washdown.
15. Unit performs vehicle decontamination.
16. Ensure vehicle hatches are closed and secured.
17. Follow guidance of site officer, noncommissioned officer in charge (NCOIC), or decon crew, in moving vehicles to and through decontamination site.
18. Assist decon crew in decontaminating vehicles as required.
19. Move vehicles to the designated holding area upwind from decontamination site as directed by the officer or NCOIC.
20. Prevent spread of NBC contamination.
21. Under supervision of the unit NBC officer and NBC NCO, site officer or NCOIC, or decontamination team, unit conducts MOPP gear exchange.
22. Unit completes decontamination activities.
23. Mount vehicles in designated holding area and moves to post decontamination assembly area. Note: Alternate drivers may be used to move vehicles to post decontamination assembly area while primary drivers conduct MOPP gear exchange.
24. Follow additional guidance of officer in charge (OIC) or NCOIC as required.

25. Unit commander reports completion of decontamination to higher headquarters.
26. Unit continues operations as directed.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 3. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
 4. MCWP 3-37.1 Chemical Operations Principles and Fundamentals
 5. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
 6. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
 7. MCWP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
 8. MCWP 3-41.1 Rear Area Operations
 9. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
-

AAV-CSS-7501: Conduct Logistic Operations Center (LOC) Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): 7, 9

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit conducts logistics operations in accordance with standing operating procedures, the appropriate field manual, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit S-4 establishes the combat trains' command post as the Rear CP in conjunction with the S-1. The S-4 section plans, coordinates, and participates in creating orders. The unit S-4 section prepares, updates, and maintains the logistics estimate and processes, analyzes, and disseminates information. The unit S-4 section monitors the execution of decisions. The unit S-4 section identifies and analyzes current and future problems. The unit S-4 section monitors tactical operations to provide appropriate and uninterrupted supplies and services to the unit. The unit S-4 enforces ROE and ROI during execution.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Determine location based on defensible position with good communication aspects.
2. Organize Logistics Operation Center (LOC).
3. Establish LOC staffing with executive or primary staff, special staff, liaison personnel, and supporting personnel.
4. Organize personnel, equipment, and vehicles for 24 hour/all weather operations.
5. Rehearse movement to alternate LOC site and route in the event that the LOC must displace quickly.
6. Review plans for the establishment of alternate LOC per unit SOP.

7. Maintain strict OPSEC/COMSEC during displacement.
8. Employ active and passive security measures.
9. Enforce traffic control measures to limit access and movement in the vicinity of the LOC.
10. Maintain remote antenna farm.
11. Maintain unit journal.
12. Enforce message handling procedures within the LOC.
13. Maintain unit status board.
14. Coordinate combat service support operations.
15. Coordinate with Combat Operations Center (COC).

CHAINED EVENTS:

AAV-CSS-6501

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
5. MCWP 4-11 Tactical Level Logistics
6. MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations
7. MCWP 4-11.7 MAGTF Supply Operations
8. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process

MISCELLANEOUS:

EQUIPMENT HOURS: 24 hours operation of generator or AAVC7A1 per day.

AAV-CSS-7502: Plan Combat Service Support (CSS) Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): 7

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit plans combat service support operations in accordance with standing operating procedures, the appropriate field manual, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit S-4 establishes the combat trains' command post as the Rear CP in conjunction with the S-1. The S-4 section plans, coordinates, and participates in creating orders. The unit S-4 section prepares, updates, and maintains the logistics estimate and processes, analyzes, and disseminates information. The unit S-4 section monitors the execution of decisions. The unit S-4 section identifies and analyzes current and future problems. The unit S-4 section monitors tactical operations to provide appropriate and uninterrupted supplies and services to

the unit. The unit S-4 enforces ROE and ROI during execution.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Develop scheme of support by phase for the operation.
2. In coordination with the operations officer, establish control measures for each of the following Combat Service Support functions for each phase, including options for NBC "clean"/not contaminated and "dirty"/contaminated situations.
3. Establish vehicle recovery teams.
4. Establish maintenance contact teams.
5. Establish resupply convoys and their escorts.
6. Establish NBC decontamination teams and locations.
7. Conduct resupply operations from logistics trains.
8. Operate Unit Maintenance Collection Points (UMCP).
9. Direct recovery, repair, and return of vehicles to units.
10. Direct medical activities.
11. Process Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs).
12. Coordinate Morale, Welfare, and Recreation support.

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 3. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
 4. MCWP 4-11 Tactical Level Logistics
 5. MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations
 6. MCWP 4-11.7 MAGTF Supply Operations
-

AAV-CSS-7503: Conduct Resupply Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and must conduct resupply operations. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit requests supplies/services necessary to restore it to fully mission capable status. It receives supplies/services as available and conducts distribution as necessary to company elements. The battalion completes resupply operations within the time specified in the OPORD/FRAGO or by the battalion commander.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Plan and conduct local security.
2. Plan and execute a method of resupply (tail gate or service station).
3. Determine and direct priorities of resupply by unit, element, and item

- supplied.
4. Conduct resupply operations without compromising local security or detection by the enemy.
 5. Enforce all safety precautions.

CHAINED EVENTS:

AAV-CSS-6501

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
 3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 4. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
 5. MCWP 4-11 Tactical Level Logistics
 6. MCWP 4-11.7 MAGTF Supply Operations
 7. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

AAV-CSS-7504: Support Maritime Prepositioning Forces (MPF) Operations During Planning and Execution

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian battalion is located at home station and receives an order to conduct MPF operations. The unit command post is established. The gaining theater command or higher headquarters provides a deployment message indicating ultimate destination and deployability criteria. The unit headquarters communicates with higher headquarters, installation operations center, installation transportation office, and all other appropriate headquarters, supporting organizations, and subordinate units. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions.

STANDARD: The unit conducts MPF activities in accordance with standing operating procedures (SOP), the order, and higher commander's guidance. Support activity teams are identified and established to prepare personnel for deployment. A rear detachment is established to support non-deploying Marines and families. The unit observes operations security (OPSEC). The unit conducts planning to execute the 5 phases of MPF operations.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Participate in MPF planning.
2. Participate in unit marshalling and movement operations.
3. Participate in arrival and assembly operations.
4. Participate in regeneration operations.

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 2. NWP 22-10 MPF Operations
 3. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

AAV-CSS-7505: Develop Embarkation Plans

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 3

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian battalion is located at home station and receives a movement order. The unit command post is established. The gaining theater command or higher headquarters provides a deployment message indicating ultimate destination and deployability criteria. The unit headquarters communicates with higher headquarters, installation operations center, installation transportation office, and all other appropriate headquarters, supporting organizations, and subordinate units. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions.

STANDARD: The unit plans embarkation activities in accordance with standing operating procedures (SOP), the order, and higher commander's guidance. Support activity teams are identified and established to prepare personnel for deployment. A rear detachment is established to support non-deploying Marines and families. The unit observes operations security (OPSEC).

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Establish liaison with the Ground Combat Element (GCE) Embarkation Officer or the Team Embarkation Officer (TEO).
2. Determine logistical requirements for AA unit in order to support the operations plan and order.
3. Review special requirements for AA unit based on the type of transportation selected for each movement phase.
4. Prepare written plans and appropriate electronic embarkation data.
5. Submit plans and requirements to higher headquarters.
6. Submit list of materials required to complete embarkation preparation.
7. Determine personnel to conduct embarkation and identify any training shortfalls.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 55-9 Unit Air Movement Planning
2. LFM 03 Amphibious Embarkation
3. MCRP 3-31B Amphibious Ships and Landing Craft Data Book
4. MCRP 4-13.1A Movement of Units in Air Force Aircraft
5. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
6. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
7. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
8. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS

AAV-CSS-7506: Embark Assault Amphibious Vehicles (AAVs) onto Strategic Transportation

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian battalion is located at home station and receives a movement order. The unit command post is established. The gaining theater command or higher headquarters provides a deployment message indicating ultimate destination and deployability criteria. The unit headquarters communicates with higher headquarters, installation operations center, installation transportation office, and all other appropriate headquarters, supporting organizations, and subordinate units. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions.

STANDARD: The unit conducts embarkation activities in accordance with standing operating procedures (SOP), the order, and higher commander's guidance. Support activity teams are identified and established to prepare personnel for deployment. A rear detachment is established to support non-deploying Marines and families. The unit observes operations security (OPSEC).

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Supervise coordination with the Departure Airfield Control Group (DACG) and with the Air Force command and control ground personnel.
2. Establish liaison with higher headquarters and staffs as required.
3. Embarkation Officer is provided with list of vehicles and equipment to be embarked. Include a detailed listing of any ammunition, pyrotechnics, POL, hazardous materials or items requiring to be secured (communications equipment or weapons) to be embarked.
4. Prepare personnel, vehicles, and equipment for embarkation in accordance with instructions from the ships personnel and special regulations governing the materials to be embarked.
5. Move personnel, vehicles, equipment, and materials to embarkation points.
6. Manifest all personnel, vehicles, cargo, and equipment and give a copy of the manifest to the embarkation personnel.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

AAV-CSS-7505

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
4. MCWP 4-11 Tactical Level Logistics
5. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
6. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS

AAV-CSS-7507: Conduct Logistics Trains Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): 5, 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters. During continuous tactical operations the commander directs the conduct of resupply activities. The unit has a unit SOP with all required report formats. Enemy contact is

not expected. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit requests supplies/services necessary to restore it to fully mission capable status. It receives supplies/services as available and conducts distribution as necessary to company elements. The unit completes the resupply operations within the time specified in the OPORD/FRAGO or by the commander.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Determine the CSS requirements for recovery and repair, equipment evacuation, supply, and EPW processing operations.
2. Organize the trains based on the requirements and the threat analysis.
3. Control movement of the trains on the battlefield in conjunction with the S-3 section.
4. Perform command and control functions.
5. Conduct LOGPAC.
6. Conduct mail pick-up and delivery and delivery of personnel replacements.
7. Conduct combat reporting.

CHAINED EVENTS:

AAV-CSS-6501

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
4. MCWP 4-11 Tactical Level Logistics
5. MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations
6. MCWP 4-11.7 MAGTF Supply Operations

AAV-CSS-7508: Conduct Contact and Recovery Team Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 5, 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and requires contact and recovery team support. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit conducts contact team and recovery support in accordance with standing operating procedures (SOP), the appropriate references, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit S-4 establishes the combat trains' command post as the Rear CP. The S-4 section plans, coordinates, and dispatches maintenance and recovery support. The unit S-4 section updates the logistics estimate based on recovery operations. The unit S-4 section

identifies and analyzes current and future problems and advises the commander. The unit S-4 section monitors tactical operations to provide appropriate and uninterrupted maintenance and recovery support to the unit.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Determine maintenance, diagnostic, and supervisory needs of unit.
2. Task organize contact/recovery team.
3. Contact/recovery team has mobility and security based on threat analysis.
4. Contact/recovery team has references, special allowance tools, and diagnostic equipment suitable for anticipated operations.
5. Coordinate with local friendly unit for passage of lines, for both leaving and returning.
6. Coordinate with local friendly unit for fire support during movement.
7. Coordinate for frequencies, call signs, recognition signals, and authentication procedures with local friendly unit and unit requesting support.
8. Conduct combat reporting.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
 3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 4. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
 5. MCWP 4-11 Tactical Level Logistics
 6. MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations
 7. MCWP 4-11.7 MAGTF Supply Operations
 8. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
 9. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

AAV-CSS-7509: Conduct Maintenance Support

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4, 5, 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit conducts maintenance support in accordance with standing operating procedures (SOP), the appropriate references, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The unit S-4 establishes the combat trains command post as the Rear CP. The S-4 section plans, coordinates, and dispatches maintenance and recovery support. The unit S-4 section updates the logistics estimate based on recovery operations. The unit S-4 section identifies and analyzes current and future problems and advises the commander. The unit S-4 section monitors tactical operations to provide appropriate and uninterrupted

maintenance to the unit.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The S-4 and maintenance section leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Unit S-4 section establishes the combat trains as the Rear CP in conjunction with the S-1.
3. Identify staff working areas that facilitate immediate access of staff personnel to all required information.
4. Unit S-4 section participates in the Marine Corps Planning Process (MCP).
5. Conduct mission analysis.
6. Provide commander with input on maintenance and recovery support issues that affect the unit mission
7. Receive commander's planning guidance after briefing mission analysis.
8. Prepare and update the logistics estimate.
9. Unit S-4 section conducts planning; reviews mission, task organization, and concept of operations for all subordinate elements in the unit; reviews higher headquarters' CSS plans; identifies branches and sequels; determines density of equipment of each subordinate unit; determines mission related consumption rates; plans for unit maintenance collection points (UMCPs); and identifies and analyzes current and future problems.
10. Identify and analyze current and future problems.
11. The S-4 section, in conjunction with the headquarters company, maintains the current status of equipment readiness in the unit.
12. Maintain consolidated unit weapons combat power status board.
13. Monitor maintenance and recovery operations to evaluate the capability to support current operations.
14. Provide the commander and staff with evaluation of maintenance conditions and their impact on current or future unit operations.
15. Recommend maintenance priorities to the unit commander and S-3.
16. Coordinate with higher headquarters maintenance status and unit maintenance priorities.
17. Coordinate with the field trains support personnel and higher headquarters G-4/S-4 and for execution of weapons system replacement operations plan.
18. The unit performs UMCP activities.
19. UMCPs are coordinated with medical collection points, located forward and location and movement is coordinated with the combat trains, are accessible and directions to the different maintenance areas are marked.
20. UMCP sites have "dirty" maintenance area for contaminated vehicles.
21. Maintenance assets are task organized and positioned to provide coverage for all subordinate elements.
22. Guidelines for recovery from company train areas and UMCP are established to provide for forward repair and to prevent enemy interference with repair and recovery.
23. Contact/recovery teams are dispatched to repair and recover forward damaged vehicles beyond company maintenance capabilities within 30 minutes of notification.
24. Repairs are conducted in accordance with appropriate TM and commander's guidance.
25. All vehicles that cannot be repaired at units within the established guidelines (time, type of damage, etc.) are evacuated to the UMCP.
26. All vehicles that cannot be repaired at UMCP with the established guidelines are evacuated to the DS maintenance support collection point or

- field trains.
27. The unit recovers, repairs, and returns non-mission capable equipment.
 28. Non-mission capable equipment is diagnosed and appropriate action initiated within one hour.
 29. Recovery/repair operations of non-mission capable equipment are conducted as quickly as possible.
 30. Repaired vehicles/equipment are moved forward on the next LOGPAC if repaired in the field trains.
 31. Repaired vehicles/systems are picked up by companies within one hour if repaired in the UMCP (crews stay with vehicles).
 32. Repaired/replacement vehicles come forward prepared to fight (combat loaded).
 33. Unit S-4 section tracks tactical operations to provide the appropriate and uninterrupted maintenance and recovery support to the unit based on current and anticipated logistics requirement.
 34. Plan and coordinate transportation and movement of vehicles.
 35. Review and analyze all unit plans and orders for transportation impact.
 36. Coordinate with higher elements for additional transportation assets, if required.
 37. Assist the S-3 plans element in planning and preparing tactical and administrative motor marches, and prepares administrative movement orders and march tables.
 38. Identify transportation assets available in the unit.
 39. Coordinate routes, traffic control, and timetables with the G-4, unit support staff, and higher headquarters' support command staff.
 40. Coordinate with higher movement control elements when additional assets are required and organic assets are unavailable or inappropriate for use.
 41. Monitor and coordinate emergency recovery with the S-3.
 42. Unit S-4 section tracks the status of supplies.
 43. Ensure accurate maintenance records are maintained.
 44. Track the requisition, acquisition, storage, and distribution of parts.
 45. Perform coordination with higher headquarters G-4 for procurement of repair parts.
 46. Coordinate with augmenting units to identify requirements for nonstandard supplies or repair parts.
 47. Unit S-4 analyzes and clearly articulates all logistical information that can affect the mission, particularly commander's critical information requirements (CCIR).
 48. Record actions taken in staff journals.
 49. Use information to provide battle updates and briefings.
 50. Unit S-4 integrates risk management into maintenance and recovery support operations.

CHAINED EVENTS:

AAV-CSS-6502

RELATED EVENTS:

1833-CSS-2503	1833-CSS-2515	1833-CSS-2506
1833-CSS-2501	1833-CSS-2505	1803-CSS-1502
1803-CSS-2501	1803-CSS-2503	1803-CSS-2502
1803-CSS-1503	1803-CSS-1501	1833-CSS-2502

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCO 4400.82_ MIMMS Controlled Item Management Manual

3. MCRP 4-11.4A Battle Damage Assessment and Repair
 4. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 5. MCWP 4-11 Tactical Level Logistics
 6. MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations
 7. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
 8. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
 9. UM 4700.5 MIMMS Field Procedures Manual
-

AAV-AMPH-7601: Assist in Developing the Landing Plan

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian battalion is in receipt of the MAGTF concept of operations and has an approved plan of attack. The landing can occur during the day, at night, or periods of limited visibility.

STANDARD: The battalion commander ensures that the landing plan supports accomplishment of the mission. The landing plan must provide for troop and equipment embarkation and debarkation and delivery of the assaulting elements in the desired formations, over the selected beaches, at the time set by the commander. Flexibility is preserved through the selective scheduling and subsequent cross decking (if required), of on-call waves so that the reserve and other critical combat support elements may be brought ashore, as required, by either surface or air lift. The assault schedule and supporting landing craft and amphibious vehicle assignment tables/helicopter wave and serial assignment tables should provide for the rapid buildup of combat power ashore. Additionally, forward air controller's, and naval surface fire support (NSFS) spot teams must be included with the assault elements to direct fires against appropriate targets.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct mission analysis of supported unit's operations order.
2. Determine assault amphibian lift requirements for assault elements, scheduled waves, on-call waves, and nonscheduled waves.
3. Review Amphibious Vehicle Availability Table to determine the number and periods of availability for each type of AAV assigned to the operation.
4. Determine landing force lift requirements for the ship-to-shore movement in coordination with a review of the Amphibious Vehicle Availability Table, Helicopter Availability Table, and the Landing Craft Availability Table.
5. Consider enemy capabilities to counter surface and/or air assaults.
6. Allow flexibility of on-call and nonscheduled waves.
7. Assign elements to one of five categories in order to indicate their relative priority for landing and to facilitate control of the ship-to-shore movement.
8. Allocate assets for use by subordinate elements, and ensure that the proposed Landing Diagram, Assault Schedule, and Landing Sequence Table are developed concurrently and are mutually compatible.
9. Develop Serial Assignment Table based on task organization for the landing.

10. Develop Landing Craft and Amphibious Vehicle Assignment Table ensuring it is coordinated with affected units.
11. Develop Helicopter Employment and Assault Landing Table as well as Helicopter Wave and Serial Assignment Table. Ensure the HEALT HSWAT are coordinated with Air Component Element and appropriate Command Element.
12. Provide input for Approach Schedule.
13. Develop Debarkation Schedule in coordination with Naval personnel.

RELATED EVENTS:

1803-AMPH-1601 1803-CMDC-1227

REFERENCES:

1. JCS PUB 3-02 Joint Doctrine for Amphibious Operations
2. JCS PUB 3-02.1 Joint Doctrine for Landing Force Operations
3. LFM 03 Amphibious Embarkation
4. MCRP 3-31B Amphibious Ships and Landing Craft Data Book
5. MCRP 4-11.3D The Naval Beach Group
6. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
7. MCWP 3-31.3 Surf Zone Operations
8. MCWP 3-31.5 Ship-to-Shore Movement
9. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
10. MCWP 5-11 Amphibious Task Force Planning
11. MCWP 5-11.2 The Amphibious Task Force Plan

AAV-AMPH-7602: Analyze Landing Plan

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian battalion is in receipt of the MAGTF concept of operations and has an approved plan of attack. The landing can occur during the day, at night, or periods of limited visibility.

STANDARD: The battalion inspects each applicable landing plan document, determines Amphibious Vehicle Employment Plan, and provides Landing Force staff with required information to facilitate landing plan operations.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Reconcile the Landing Plan with the scheme of maneuver ashore.
2. Examine the Landing Plan Diagram and extract the AAV-borne scheduled waves of the assault.
3. Examine the Approach Schedule and extract the wave schedules.
4. Analyze the Landing Craft and Amphibious Vehicle Assignment Schedule and verify the boat team assignments.
5. Analyze the Serial Assignment Table to determine the group of troop units to be landed on a specified beach at the same time.
6. Analyze the Landing Sequence Table to determine the priority of landing of nonscheduled serials.
7. Analyze the Assault Schedule to determine the composition and timing of waves landing over designated beaches.
8. Analyze the Amphibious Vehicle Availability Table to determine the type, number and ship location of amphibious vehicles which are available to the

- landing force.
9. Provide the Landing Force and Amphibious Task Force staff members with input for the Amphibious Vehicle Employment Plan.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

AAV-AMPH-7601

RELATED EVENTS:

1803-AMPH-1601

REFERENCES:

1. FM 21-26 Map Reading and Land Navigation
 2. FM 90-13-1 Combined Arms Breaching Operations
 3. JCS PUB 3-02 Joint Doctrine for Amphibious Operations
 4. JCS PUB 3-02.1 Joint Doctrine for Landing Force Operations
 5. LFM 03 Amphibious Embarkation
 6. MCRP 2-12A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
 7. MCRP 3-31B Amphibious Ships and Landing Craft Data Book
 8. MCRP 4-11.3D The Naval Beach Group
 9. MCRP 4-11.4A Battle Damage Assessment and Repair
 10. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
 11. MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Symbols
 12. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 13. MCWP 3-17.3 MAGTF Breaching Operations
 14. MCWP 3-31.1 Supporting Arms in Amphibious Operations
 15. MCWP 3-31.2 Mine Warfare
 16. MCWP 3-31.3 Surf Zone Operations
 17. MCWP 3-31.5 Ship-to-Shore Movement
 18. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
 19. MCWP 5-11 Amphibious Task Force Planning
 20. MCWP 5-11.2 The Amphibious Task Force Plan
-

AAV-TAC-7701: Occupy an Assembly Area

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and receives an OPORD or FRAGO to move to an assembly area (AA) and prepare for future operations at a time specified. The order includes all applicable overlays and or graphics. The unit is given a general area in which to select the exact location of its AA. Resupply and maintenance support are available. Enemy contact is possible. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

(ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4. Given a route and general vicinity of assembly area.

STANDARD: The battalion quartering party establishes and marks route to the assembly area, all obstacles along the route, and unit positions prior to the arrival of the main body. The unit employs passive and active operations security (OPSEC) measures to deny the enemy any indications of friendly plans such as intentions, force composition, or unit identity and locations. The unit maintains situational awareness and the main body is not surprised by the enemy. The quartering party completes preparations as specified in the OPOD and IAW the commander's intent.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Issue Warning Order to Quartering party personnel.
2. Coordinate with unit S-3 for details on the location and requirements for the Battalion Support Area, and fire support to cover the movement to and from the survey of the site.
3. Coordinate with unit S-4 for required personnel and equipment for the Quartering Party.
4. Task organize Quartering Party.
5. Conduct tactical road march from current location to planned site.
6. Establish security element and conduct patrol of area to determine level of enemy activity in the immediate area.
7. Conduct site survey.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. MCWP 4-11 Tactical Level Logistics
4. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process

MISCELLANEOUS:

EQUIPMENT HOURS: 4 minutes per mile traveled per vehicle (15 mph rate of march).

AAV-TAC-7703: Conduct Local Security of the Assembly Area

SUPPORTED MET(S): 7

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and is required to conduct security within its assembly area. The situation may require security in an area with an enemy and/or civilian presence. Contact is possible. Additional maneuver, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) assets are available to the battalion upon request. The unit establishes communications with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with the standing operating procedure. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of

interaction (ROI). Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The battalion denies the enemy/threat from influencing friendly actions within the area or using it for their own purposes, and protects designated high-value asset(s). The battalion maintains continuous surveillance to provide early warning of enemy/threat approach and reaction time to the protected asset. The battalion destroys or detains enemy/threat forces before they can impede/interdict operations or damage high-value asset(s). All operations adhere to the ROE and ROI without injury to friendly civilians. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage due to fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Analyze patrol order from higher.
2. Coordinate with Camp Commandant.
3. Task organize patrol based on estimate of the situation (METT-TC).
4. Issue warning order to patrol group.
5. Conduct equipment checks prior to departing friendly lines.
6. Coordinate with actual element for passage of lines for departure and return.
7. Issue OPORD to patrol and conduct rehearsals.
8. Conduct security patrols.
9. Debrief patrols.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
 3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 4. MCWP 3-41.1 Rear Area Operations
-

AAV-TAC-7704: Conduct Rear Area Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian battalion is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and receives an OPORD or FRAGO to conduct security within its higher headquarters assigned area of operation (AO), or around the location of a high-value asset. The situation may require occupation and defense of an area from the enemy/threat, civilians on the battlefield (COB), or taking actions to destroy or detain forces already present. High-value assets may have no organic defense or security capability. The order includes all applicable overlays or graphics. Contact is possible. Additional maneuver, combat support (CS), and combat service support (CSS) assets are available to the battalion upon request. The unit establishes communications with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with the standing operating procedure (SOP). The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and civilians are present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task

are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The battalion denies the enemy/threat from influencing friendly actions within the area or using it for their own purposes, and/or protects the designated high-value asset(s). The battalion maintains continuous surveillance to provide early warning of enemy/threat approach and reaction time to the protected asset. The battalion destroys or detains enemy/threat forces before they can impede/interdict operations or damage/destroy high-value asset(s). All operations adhere to the ROE and ROI without injury to friendly civilians. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage due to fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Identify likely threat objectives and landing areas.
2. Identify known or suspected unconventional threat.
3. Identify likely avenues of main attack or penetration.
4. Identify likely ambush sites along MSRs.
5. Plan contains an OPLAN prepared for each priority mission; provisions for decentralized coordination, rehearsals and reconnaissance; requirements for rules of engagement, recognizing allied units, and enforcing civilian control policies.
6. The battalion commander and staff plan for directed rear area security tasks.
7. The battalion prepares and coordinates for security/quick reaction force mission.
8. Coordination is conducted within 24 hours and maintained with all units the battalion is ordered to support.
9. Commander's defensive plans of the units in the sector/zone of possible commitment are coordinated, reviewed, and modified, as needed.
10. Routes, boundaries, convoy schedules, identification procedures, frequencies, call signs, obstacles, rules of engagement, and other information are exchanged.
11. The battalion reacts rapidly to FRAGO to execute a mission.
12. Initiate movement within 15 minutes for offensive operations.
13. The battalion coordinates movement with the organization whose area it is moving through.
14. Minimum coordination includes information on routes and times.
15. Movement is rapid while providing for limited security.
16. The battalion plans and performs MSR clearing and security.
17. The battalion finds and neutralizes all mines from the MSR within six hours of emplacement.
18. No convoys are ambushed.
19. The battalion plans and performs defense of units.
20. The battalion plans and reacts to an attack of a unit in its AO.
21. The battalion destroys or fixes the attacking element depending on size.
22. The battalion continues operations.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. MCWP 3-41.1 Rear Area Operations
4. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
5. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

3006. COMPANY LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

AAV-CSS-6501: Conduct Combat Trains Employment

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 5, 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: During continuous tactical operations the company commander receives an OPORD/FRAGO directing the company to conduct routine resupply within 90 minutes of the arrival of the LOGPAC, or he determines that routine or emergency resupply is necessary. The company has a unit SOP with all required report formats. Enemy contact is not expected. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company requests supplies/services necessary to restore it to fully mission capable status. It receives supplies/services as available and conducts distribution as necessary to company elements. The company completes the resupply operations within the time specified in the OPORD/FRAGO or by the company commander.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Determine the CSS requirements for combat train units.
2. Task organize the combat trains based on the requirements and threat analysis.
3. Control movement of the combat trains on the battlefield in conjunction with the supported unit's S-3 section.
4. Perform command and control functions as necessary.
5. Conduct combat reporting, as required.

CHAINED EVENTS:

AAV-CSS-5501 AAV-CSS-3501

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
5. MCWP 4-11 Tactical Level Logistics
6. MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations
7. MCWP 4-11.7 MAGTF Supply Operations
8. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
9. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS

AAV-CSS-6502: Conduct Maintenance and Recovery Support Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4, 5, 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: The company is conducting operations as part of a battalion task force and has sustained sufficient vehicle damage to require on-site repair in order to continue the mission. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The company conducts maintenance and supply operations in accordance with standing operating procedures (SOP), the appropriate references, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The company commander establishes the company trains consisting of maintenance, supply, communications, and medical support personnel. The company trains may be augmented with CSS personnel from the Battalion. The company trains provide limited, immediate organic support and coordinate all maintenance and supply requirements accordingly. All damaged equipment is repaired to an operating status or evacuated to the Battalion S-4 for higher echelon repair. The Company XO update the logistics estimate based on maintenance/recovery operations, identifies and analyzes current and future problems, and advises the company commander. The company trains monitor tactical operations to provide appropriate and uninterrupted maintenance and recovery support to the unit.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The company commander organizes the company combat trains.
2. Company trains personnel gain and maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
3. The company commander receives a vehicle damage report.
4. Vehicle commanders determine whether or not damage is beyond crew troubleshooting capabilities.
5. Vehicle commanders provide condition, location, and circumstances of damage to the platoon sergeant.
6. Estimate support requirements necessary to initiate recovery and repair.
7. Platoon notifies maintenance personnel of damaged vehicle.
8. Organize maintenance effort based on priorities established in the SOP and the nonoperational conditions report.
9. Maintenance team moves to the vehicle breakdown site using covered and concealed routes.
10. Move damaged vehicles or equipment to secure areas when it is subject to hostile fire.
11. Use smoke screens and camouflage to obscure the removal of the damaged equipment from enemy observation.
12. Crew and maintenance personnel inspect disabled vehicles for safety hazards.
13. Check for radioactive or chemical contamination.
14. Check for damaged ammunition.
15. Make sure abandoned vehicles are checked for booby traps prior to recovery.
16. Expeditiously remove and treat casualties.
17. Determine maintenance requirements.
18. Determine man-hours, equipment, special tools, and repair parts necessary for repair.

19. Determine when on-site maintenance is not feasible and higher-echelon maintenance is necessary.
20. Report vehicle repair needs and status to the Battalion Maintenance Chief.
21. Unit recovers equipment.
22. The maintenance chief coordinates recovery/repair.
23. Unit uses self or like-vehicle recovery.
24. Unit recovery operations use covered and concealed routes whenever possible.
25. Recovered vehicles are moved to secure locations in order to conduct repairs.
26. Unit conducts repairs
27. Conduct repairs on-site when possible.
28. Accomplish repairs within 2 hours unless otherwise ordered by the company commander.
29. Crew assists the maintenance team conducting repairs.
30. When the repairs exceed the 2 hour timeline, evacuate equipment to the UMCP IAW SOP.
31. Remove usable parts, weapons, sensitive items, personal gear, and equipment.
32. Destroy or render ineffective, all equipment, sensitive items, or information and weapons that must be left with the vehicle.
33. Destruction or disabling will be accomplished only on command order.
34. Company commander reports operational status to battalion CP.
35. Report daily IAW unit SOP or operations order.
36. Provide updates to higher headquarters when necessary.

RELATED EVENTS:

1833-CSS-2515	1833-CSS-2506	1833-CSS-2505
1803-CSS-2507	1803-CSS-2503	1803-CSS-2502
1803-CSS-2501		

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCRP 4-11.4A Battle Damage Assessment and Repair
3. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
4. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
5. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
6. MCWP 4-11 Tactical Level Logistics
7. MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations
8. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
9. UM 4700.5 MIMMS Field Procedures Manual

AAV-AMPH-6601: Conduct Surf Survival Training

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian company is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and must conduct surf survival training. All necessary unit personnel, MCIWS swimmers, safety craft and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher,

adjacent, and subordinate elements.

STANDARD: Personnel are trained according to levels commensurate with their identified skill level and per the references. All personnel are trained with no safety incidents.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Plan the training.
2. Consider number of troops to be trained.
3. Consider number of MCIWS swimmers available to act as safety swimmers.
4. Consider time of year and normal water temperatures and tidal conditions experienced.
5. Consider time required to brief, transport, and recover the unit to be trained.
6. Coordinate with AA battalion S-3 and supported unit.
7. Establish teams of ten swimmers to be embarked onto the escort AAVs.
8. Pair weak swimmers with strong swimmers.
9. Identify weak swimmers with white t-shirts or suitable markings.
10. Verify that rosters/manifest lists are generated for each boat team and are left with the OIC of the exercise ashore during each cycle.
11. Establish safety craft in the water other than the escort AAVs (rafts, small boats) to pick up weak or injured swimmers during the transit.
12. Post the MCIWS swimmers on the safety craft with proper water rescue devices.
13. Corpsmen with backboards and resuscitation equipment will be posted on each safety craft.
14. Brief units surf survival training to include: correct use of the life jacket, actions in the event of a disabled AAV, actions in the event of a sinking AAV, how to exit the AAV, and how to enter the water.
15. Brief units surf survival training to include: the importance of the buddy system, basic swimming strokes, and actions in the event of injury or fatigue during the exercise.
16. Pair weak swimmers with strong swimmers.
17. Conduct surf observation report prior to commencement of training.
18. Transmit surf report to AA Battalion S-3, prior to commencement of water operations.
19. Verify that water escort AAVs are positioned so that they do not drift into swimmers as they swim through the surf zone and to the beach.
20. Monitor all phases of the training, being especially watchful for potential safety threats to personnel and equipment.

CHAINED EVENTS:

AAV-AMPH-5602

RELATED EVENTS:

1833-AMPH-2609

1833-AMPH-2606

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 1500.52B W/CH1 Marine Corps Combat Water Survival Training
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

EQUIPMENT: Lifejackets

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. Participating Marines need to be qualified as CWS-2 swimmers prior to training.
2. No more than ten swimmers in the water for every one MCIWS trained escort swimmer.

AA T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 4

COLLECTIVE TRAINING ASSAULT AMPHIBIAN PLATOON

	<u>PARAGRAPH</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
PURPOSE.	4000	4-2
EVENT CODING	4001	4-2
ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES	4002	4-2
COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY	4003	4-2
INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS BY FUNCTIONAL AREA.	4004	4-4
PLATOON LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS	4005	4-6

AA T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 4

COLLECTIVE TRAINING ASSAULT AMPHIBIAN PLATOON

4000. PURPOSE. This chapter contains all Platoon level Assault Amphibian unit events (5000 Level). Unit training managers can isolate all training relevant to platoons and devise training to support their competencies as needed.

4001. EVENT CODING. Events in the T&R Manual are depicted with a 12 field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one - Each event starts with "AAV" indicating that the event is for units in the Assault Amphibian Occupational Field.

b. Field two - This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. Functional areas used at the Platoon level are:

CMDC - Command and Control	VOPS - Vehicle Operations
CBTS - Combat Support	CSS - Combat Service Support
AMPH - Amphibious Operations	TAC - Tactical Operations

c. Field three - This field provides unit level at which the event is accomplished and numerical sequencing.

4002. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES. Each Event may contain a paragraph that describes internal and external Support Requirements the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. Ranges/Training Areas are described in this section with plain-language description. They are also described using the Range/Facility Codes that identify the type of range and/or training area needed to accomplish the Event. Marines can use the codes to find information about available ranges at their geographic location by using the web-based Range/Training Area Management System (see TECOM website). Ultimate use of the Range/Training Area Code is to relate ranges to readiness by identifying those Events that cannot be accomplished at a certain location due to lack of ranges.

4003. COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY

1. **Assault Amphibian Platoon.** The mission of the AA platoon is to land the surface assault element of the landing force and their equipment in a single lift from assault shipping by amphibious operations to inland objectives, and to conduct mechanized operations and related combat support in subsequent operations ashore. The AA platoon consists of 12 AAVP7A1 and is organized into four (4) sections of three vehicles. The platoon is lead by the AA platoon commander who directly advises the infantry company commander on AAV employment.

- a. Provide fire support and maneuverability for supported unit.
- b. Conduct amphibious operations.
- c. Conduct mechanized operations.
- d. Conduct offensive operations.
- e. Conduct defensive operations.
- f. Employ AA platoon fires.
- g. Conduct operations in NBC environment.

2. **Assault Amphibian Platoon, Mine Countermeasure.** The mission of Mine Countermeasure (MCM) platoon is to provide breaching capability to the breach commander. The AA MCM platoon is composed of 24 AAVP7A1/RAM RSs with crews, with 12 MK154 LMC Mod 0 Kits organized into four sections. The MCM platoon is lead by the platoon commander who supports the breach commander.

- a. Conduct breaching operations.
- b. Conduct amphibious operations.
- c. Conduct mechanized operations.
- d. Conduct defensive operations.
- e. Employ AA MCM platoon fires.
- f. Conduct operations in NBC environment.

4004. INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS BY FUNCTIONAL AREA

Event Code	Eval Code	Event	Page
AAV-CMDC-5201		Employ Operations Security (OPSEC)	4-6
AAV-CMDC-5202		Conduct Risk Management	4-7
AAV-VOPS-5301		Employ Smoke Generation System	4-8
AAV-CBTS-5401		Breach an Obstacle	4-9
AAV-CBTS-5402	Yes	Participate in Deliberate Breach	4-10
AAV-CBTS-5403		React to a Nuclear Biological Chemical (NBC) Attack	4-11
AAV-CSS-5501	Yes	Conduct Casualty Evacuation Operations	4-12
AAV-AMPH-5601		Prepare Platoon for Debarkation from Amphibious Shipping	4-12
AAV-AMPH-5602	Yes	Conduct Waterborne Ship-to-Shore Movement	4-13
AAV-AMPH-5603		Conduct Amphibious Demonstration	4-15
AAV-AMPH-5604		Participate in Amphibious Assault	4-16
AAV-AMPH-5605		Participate in Amphibious Raid	4-17
AAV-AMPH-5606	Yes	Conduct Amphibious Withdrawal	4-18
AAV-AMPH-5607		Conduct Amphibious Breaching	4-19
AAV-TAC-5701		Employ Column Formation	4-20
AAV-TAC-5702		Employ Vee Formation	4-21
AAV-TAC-5703		Employ Wedge Formation	4-22
AAV-TAC-5704		Employ Line Formation	4-22
AAV-TAC-5705		Employ Echelon Formation	4-23
AAV-TAC-5706		Employ Traveling Movement Technique	4-24
AAV-TAC-5707		Employ Traveling Overwatch Technique	4-25
AAV-TAC-5708		Employ Bounding Overwatch Technique	4-25
AAV-TAC-5709		Employ Coil Formation	4-26
AAV-TAC-5710		Employ Herringbone Formation	4-27
AAV-TAC-5711		Conduct Tactical Road March	4-28
AAV-TAC-5712		Conduct a Tactical Halt	4-29
AAV-TAC-5713		Conduct Immediate Action Drills	4-30
AAV-TAC-5714		Conduct Actions on Contact	4-30
AAV-TAC-5715		Cross a Danger Area	4-31
AAV-TAC-5716	Yes	Support Infantry Defensive Operations	4-32
AAV-TAC-5717		Defend a Battle Position	4-33
AAV-TAC-5718		Conduct Deliberate Occupation of a Battle Position	4-34
AAV-TAC-5719		Conduct a Disengagement/Withdrawal from the Enemy	4-36
AAV-TAC-5720		Conduct a Delay	4-37
AAV-TAC-5721	Yes	Support Infantry Offensive Operations	4-38
AAV-TAC-5722		Conduct Attack Position Activities	4-39
AAV-TAC-5723		Support a Mechanized Patrol	4-40
AAV-TAC-5724		Conduct Dismount Point Activities	4-41
AAV-TAC-5725		Conduct a Spoiling Attack	4-41
AAV-TAC-5726		Conduct Overwatch/Support by Fire	4-42
AAV-TAC-5727		Conduct Reconnaissance by Fire	4-43
AAV-TAC-5728		Conduct a Bypass	4-44
AAV-TAC-5729		Conduct a Linkup	4-45
AAV-TAC-5730		Conduct Passage of Lines	4-46
AAV-TAC-5731		Conduct Riverine Operations	4-47

AAV-TAC-5732		Cross a River	4-47
AAV-TAC-5733		Support Military Operations on Urban Terrain (MOUT)	4-48
AAV-TAC-5734		Support Roadblock/Checkpoint Operations	4-50

4005. PLATOON LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

AAV-CMDC-5201: Employ Operations Security (OPSEC)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 9

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian platoon is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and must maintain operations security (OPSEC) to deny the enemy information about friendly activities taking place in the area of operations (AO). All command posts (CPs) and observation posts (OPs) are operational and information is being passed between higher, adjacent, subordinate, and supporting elements. The enemy has the capability to detect the unit visually, audibly, and electronically. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon employs OPSEC measures in accordance with the standing operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The platoon identifies and eliminates or controls indicators which can be exploited by hostile intelligence organizations. The platoon practices active and passive noise, light, litter, and communications measures to deny friendly information to enemy forces.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Employ deception measures as directed by higher headquarters.
2. Employ wire communications to the fullest extent possible.
3. Identify potential friendly vulnerabilities to enemy intelligence operations.
4. Develop security and deception measures to limit vulnerabilities.
5. Develop counter reconnaissance effort to defeat enemy intelligence activities and establish security elements and patrols.
6. Develop and enforce passive measures to defeat enemy intelligence activities.
7. Conduct movement, CSS operations, and rehearsals during limited visibility as much as possible.
8. Limit movement in, around, and between positions as much as possible.
9. Employ remote transmission sites as appropriate.
10. Develop electronic countermeasures to include alternate frequencies, authentication procedures, and anti-jamming procedures.

RELATED EVENTS:

1833-CMDC-2202

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

AAV-CMDC-5202: Conduct Risk Management

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian platoon is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters and receives an operations order (OPORD) or fragmentary order (FRAGO) to conduct a mission at a specified location and time. The order includes all applicable overlays and or graphics. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon collects relevant information and correctly assesses risk status. All personnel are informed of and understand the risk factors. All potential safety problems are identified and either reduced or eliminated. Fratricide prevention is addressed. The unit complies with the ROE.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Unit leaders gain and or maintain situational understanding using available communications equipment, maps, intelligence summaries, situation reports (SITREPs), and other available information sources.
2. Platoon commander and subordinate leaders identify risks and safety hazards.
3. Identify specified and implied missions or tasks in the OPORD, operation plan (OPLAN), FRAGO, and or ROE; identify all risks associated with specified and implied missions or tasks; integrate safety into every phase of planning process; identify benefits of safety measures to unit's mission versus potential cost of risk or safety hazards; conduct continuous assessment during all phases of operations for safety and risk reduction.
4. Platoon commander and subordinate leaders assess risk or safety hazards identified during operations.
5. Identify previously executed unsafe acts and corrective actions; identify unwarranted risks; compare identified risk to commander's acceptable risk level based on stated objectives; calculate projected loss of equipment and personnel from accidents by reviewing historical records; describe operation in terms of its risk level (extremely high, high, medium, low) using risk assessment matrices (regular and environmental) and the following categories.
6. Compute overall risk factor.
7. Identify aspects of the operation that may be affected by the primary causes of fratricide.
8. Include failures in direct fire control plan, land navigation failures, failures in combat identification, inadequate control measures, failures in reporting and communications, weapons errors, and battlefield hazards.
9. Platoon commander and leaders develop controls and make risk decisions to eliminate or reduce risk and safety hazards.
10. Select course of action (COA) that maximizes the operation and minimizes risk; develop procedures that reduce risk; provide guidance that enhances safety during all phases of operation; prescribe safety and protective equipment that enhance safety and reduce risks.

11. Platoon personnel implement risk control procedures.
12. Practice safety procedures during all mission rehearsals and operations; correct unsafe acts on the spot; report all risk and safety violations to commander and unit safety officer.
13. Platoon commander supervises and evaluates risk management controls.
14. Enforce standards and controls; evaluate effectiveness of controls and adjust and or update as necessary; comply with orders, SOP, commander's guidance, ROE.

REFERENCES :

1. DoDD 2000.12 DoD Antiterrorism/Force Protection (AT/FP) Program
 2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
-

AAV-VOPS-5301: Employ Smoke Generation System

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 4, 5, 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a company/team (CO/TM). During operations the unit comes under direct observation or fire from enemy forces. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon employs smoke generation system IAW the standing operating procedures, OPORD, and higher commander's guidance. The platoon employs smoke screen so the enemy is unable to observe the movement of the unit and displaces out of range of enemy weapons. The platoon complies with the ROE and ROI. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Determine wind speed and direction.
2. Signal commencing smoke generation systems.
3. Coordinate employment of smoke generation system.
4. Signal ceasing smoke generation systems.
5. Determine effect of smoke generation system.

CHAINED EVENTS:

AAV-GNRY-4159

RELATED EVENTS:

1833-VOPS-1317

REFERENCES :

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 3. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

AAV-CBTS-5401: Breach an Obstacle

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian platoon is conducting offensive operations as part of a company/team (CO/TM). The CO/TM encounters an obstacle that must be breached to complete the mission. The platoon is designated as the breach force with other CO/TM elements assigned as the support and assault forces. Engineer support is not available. The obstacle is under enemy observation and within range of enemy fire. Reconnaissance of the obstacle is completed and breach site(s) selected. Smoke is employed to obscure enemy observation of the obstacle. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon moves along covered and concealed routes to the breach site and clears lane through obstacle utilizing MK 154 line charge. The unit sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The unit maintains situational awareness and FM communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Detonate the linear charge electrically from within the AAV.
2. In the event of a misfire or an inability to electrically detonate the linear charge from within the AAV, manually detonate the linear charge.
3. Once suppression and obscuration is employed, conduct tactical movement of the mine countermeasure (MCM) section to the breach site.
4. Employ the MK 154 Mine Clearance System; deploy the linear charge into the obstacle/minfield.
5. Repeat as necessary to provide explosive breaching through the obstacle/minfield.
6. Mark the lane in conjunction with the combat engineers and the supported force's breach plan.
7. Re-arm and Re-fit as necessary in accordance with the supported force's offensive maneuver plan.

CHAINED EVENTS:

AAV-CBTS-3401

RELATED EVENTS:

1833-CBTS-2412

1833-CMDC-2217

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCRP 3-17A Engineer Field Data
 3. MCRP 3-17B Engineer Forms and Reports
 4. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 5. MCWP 3-17.3 MAGTF Breaching Operations
 6. TM 09962A-10/1 Operating Instruction Charts MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System
-

AAV-CBTS-5402: Participate in Deliberate Breach

SUPPORTED MET(S): 4, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian platoon is conducting offensive operations as part of a company/team (CO/TM). The CO/TM encounters an obstacle that must be breached to complete the mission. The platoon is designated as the breach force with other CO/TM elements assigned as the support and assault forces. Engineer support is not available. The obstacle is under enemy observation and within range of enemy fire. Reconnaissance of the obstacle is completed and breach site(s) selected. Smoke is employed to obscure enemy observation of the obstacle. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4. The unit is ordered to support a unit participating in a breach of enemy obstacles that cannot be bypassed. Security is provided for the unit.

STANDARD: The platoon moves along covered and concealed routes to the breach site and clears, proofs, and marks lanes through the obstacle. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness and FM communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Analyze the mission, enemy, troops and fire support available, time, space, and logistics (METT-TC).
2. Identify the type of breaching operation (assault or covert) and the number of lanes required to allow the passage of the Ground Combat Element (GCE) and Combat Service Support Element (CSSE).
3. Identify intelligence requirements to the S-2/G-2.
4. Identify and evaluate potential breach sites.
5. Conduct reconnaissance to the lowest level possible.
6. Conduct threat analysis of enemy forces covering the breach site and possible reserves.
7. Task organize engineer personnel and equipment within the assault breach force.
8. Plan, prioritize, and recommend fire support requirements to support the plan.
9. Develop battle drills (individual/unit) to rehearse the breach of a complex obstacle.
10. Support force establishes overwatch position.
11. Breach force establishes breach site security.
12. Breach force conducts breach.
13. Assault force moves through breach and destroys enemy forces capable of sealing breach site to include local counterattacks.
14. Conduct combat reporting as appropriate.
15. Hand over control of the breach to follow on forces.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

AAV-CBTS-5401

CHAINED EVENTS:

AAV-CBTS-3401

RELATED EVENTS:

1833-CMDC-2217 1833-CBTS-2412 1803-CMDC-1210
1803-CMDC-1221

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. MCWP 3-17.3 MAGTF Breaching Operations

AAV-CBTS-5403: React to a Nuclear Biological Chemical (NBC) Attack

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a company/team (CO/TM). NBC weapons are used in the area of operations and the platoon must respond immediately to the attack when the unit's automatic chemical agent alarm system(s) sounds, detector paper changes color, and/or a Marine displays symptoms of chemical/biological agent poisoning. Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. This task is performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: Platoon members react to the chemical or biological attack within time standards and give the appropriate alarm. All unmasked Marines put on their protective masks and other MOPP gear. They assume MOPP 4 within 8 minutes and close all vehicle hatches. The platoon initiates use of the M256/M256A1 chemical agent detector kits to determine the type of agent. As soon as mission, enemy, terrain and weather, troops and support available, time available, and civil considerations (METT-TC) permits, the platoon conducts unmasking procedures. The platoon suffers no casualties as a result of heat injury or improper preparation.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The platoon prepares for a chemical/biological attack.
2. Crewmen recognize and react to a chemical/biological hazard.
3. Put on protective mask within 15 seconds.
4. Alert the remainder of the platoon and company/team.
5. Within 8 minutes, assume MOPP 4, then close all vehicle hatches.
6. Administer self-aid and buddy-aid to crewmen with symptoms of chemical/biological agent poisoning.
7. Ensure individual crewmen decontaminate their skin.
8. Conduct operator's spraydown and decontamination of equipment as necessary.
9. Initiate continuous monitoring with M256/M256A1 detection kits, and submit NBC-1 and follow-up reports as needed.
10. Continue the mission.
11. Monitor for chemical/biological agents; as the situation warrants, initiate actions to reduce MOPP levels and discontinue agent monitoring.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management

2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 3. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
 4. MCWP 3-37.2 NBC Protection
 5. MCWP 3-37.3 NBC Decontamination
 6. MCWP 3-37A NBC Field Handbook
-

AAV-CSS-5501: Conduct Casualty Evacuation Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 5, 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian platoon is conducting continuous operations as part of a company/team (CO/TM) which sustains casualties during combat. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon treats and evacuates casualties in accordance with standing operating procedures (SOP), the order, and higher commander's guidance. The platoon administers the proper lifesaving measures to stabilize casualties and evacuates casualties to the higher headquarters casualty collection point.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Local personnel stabilize and prioritize casualties.
2. Transfer of the casualties by combat or log trains is coordinated at designated collection points.
3. Casualties are evacuated under supervision of a corpsman to collection points.
4. Local unit provides security for casualty movement and evacuation based on threat analysis.
5. Local unit guides helicopters or vehicles into collection point and supervises transfer.

CHAINED EVENTS:

AAV-AMPH-4601

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 3. MCWP 4-11 Tactical Level Logistics
 4. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

AAV-AMPH-5601: Prepare Platoon for Debarkation from Amphibious Shipping

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 3 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian platoon is embarked aboard amphibious shipping and is in receipt of order to conduct debarkation operations. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon accomplishes all pre-water operation checks and pre-launch timelines in accordance with standing operating procedures (SOP), the appropriate references, the order, and higher commander's guidance. All embarked personnel are accounted for with no safety incidents.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct proper pre-water operation checks and services of AAVs.
2. Conduct proper communications checks.
3. Issue ammunition and pyrotechnics to AAVs.
4. Ungripe the vehicles according to guidance from the ship's crew.
5. Conduct safety orientation and issue life jackets to embarked personnel and crew.
6. Embark troops.
7. Position AAVs for launch under guidance from ship's well deck personnel.
8. Place vehicles into water operating mode.
9. Conduct splash team operations.

RELATED EVENTS:

1833-AMPH-2604 1833-CSS-2513

REFERENCES:

1. LFM 03 Amphibious Embarkation
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCRP 3-31B Amphibious Ships and Landing Craft Data Book
4. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White St	1 per crew
L311 Signal, Illumination Ground Red Star	1 per crew

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

AAV-AMPH-5602: Conduct Waterborne Ship-to-Shore Movement

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 3 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian platoon is embarked aboard amphibious shipping and is in receipt of order to conduct waterborne ship-to-shore

movement operations. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with Primary Control Ship, supporting fire agencies, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon launches from amphibious shipping, crosses the LD, moves through the boat lane and touches down within 50 meters of center beach in proper formation. The unit accomplishes ship-to-shore movement under the guidance of the Primary Control Ship's Combat Information Center and in accordance with the established timeline and standing operating procedures.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Maneuver AAVs into required tactical wave formations per the landing plan after leaving the ship.
2. Monitor communications with Primary Control Ship (PCS) and other AAVs in wave.
3. Monitor internal communications.
4. AAVs maintain proper formation and interval.
5. AAVs guide on wave commander.
6. AAVs maintain rate of march according to guidance from PCS or Global Positioning System (GPS) in order to achieve touchdown on time.
7. Conduct emergency operations/vehicle recovery, if required.
8. Conduct changes to waterborne formation outside the surf zone, as required.
9. Control the sequence and employment of mine clearance systems from the surf zone through the high water mark and other beach obstacles.
10. Move AAVs into cleared lanes.
11. AA unit leaders report their waves' touchdown.
12. Employ vehicle screening systems.
13. Signal lifting or shifting of supporting fires.

RELATED EVENTS:

1833-CMDC-1209 1833-AMPH-2604 1833-AMPH-2606
1833-AMPH-2605

REFERENCES:

1. JCS PUB 3-02 Joint Doctrine for Amphibious Operations
2. JCS PUB 3-02.1 Joint Doctrine for Landing Force Operations
3. LFM 03 Amphibious Embarkation
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-31.3A Over the Horizon Surface Operations
6. MCRP 3-31B Amphibious Ships and Landing Craft Data Book
7. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
8. MCWP 3-31.3 Surf Zone Operations
9. MCWP 3-31.5 Ship-to-Shore Movement
10. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC

Quantity

L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White St 1 per crew
L311 Signal, Illumination Ground Red Star 1 per crew

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

AAV-AMPH-5603: Conduct Amphibious Demonstration

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The platoon is conducting amphibious operations and is ordered to conduct an amphibious demonstration. The unit establishes communications with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with the standing operating procedure (SOP). The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon commander identifies a plan for the demonstration incorporating fires, movement of maneuver forces, smoke, and communication equipment to support the deception plan. The water movement follows the landing plan from launch from amphibious shipping to re-embarkation on amphibious shipping. The platoon maneuvers to initiate the demonstration based on the commander's OPORD/FRAGO and intent. The amphibious demonstration is clearly visible to the enemy without being transparently deceptive in nature and causes the enemy force to commit. The unit completes the demonstration with no friendly unit suffering casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Execute landing plan from preparation phase through launch from amphibious shipping.
2. Conduct waterborne movement in accordance with landing plan.
3. Conduct embarkation of amphibious shipping in accordance with the references.

RELATED EVENTS:

1833-AMPH-2605 1833-CMDC-1209

REFERENCES:

1. JCS PUB 3-02 Joint Doctrine for Amphibious Operations
2. JCS PUB 3-02.1 Joint Doctrine for Landing Force Operations
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-31.3A Over the Horizon Surface Operations
5. MCRP 3-31B Amphibious Ships and Landing Craft Data Book
6. MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Symbols
7. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
8. MCWP 3-31.1 Supporting Arms in Amphibious Operations
9. MCWP 3-31.3 Surf Zone Operations
10. MCWP 3-31.5 Ship-to-Shore Movement

11. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
12. MCWP 5-11 Amphibious Task Force Planning
13. MCWP 5-11.2 The Amphibious Task Force Plan

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White St	1 per crew
L311 Signal, Illumination Ground Red Star	1 per crew

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

AAV-AMPH-5604: Participate in Amphibious Assault

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian platoon is ordered to conduct an amphibious assault from amphibious shipping and support the company/team (CO/TM) with inland objectives. The CATF issues the order to land the landing force. Assault amphibious vehicles, landing craft, and helicopter operational readiness rates are equal to the numbers anticipated in the final version of the MAGTF landing plan developed after the final rehearsal. Close, continuous, and detailed coordination among the CATF, MAGTF, ACE, GCE, and CSSE staff members, as well as unit commanders has occurred throughout the entire planning process. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon conducts waterborne ship-to-shore movement with an embarked infantry unit and supports subsequent infantry offensive operations ashore. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness and FM communications.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Execute landing plan from preparation phase through launch from amphibious shipping.
2. Conduct waterborne ship-to-shore movement.
3. Assault designated objective in accordance with landing plan.
4. Conduct mechanized operations ashore in order to seize immediate objectives of assault landing.

RELATED EVENTS:

1833-CMDC-2202	1833-CMDC-1209	1833-AMPH-2606
1833-AMPH-2605	1833-CBTS-2411	

REFERENCES:

1. JCS PUB 3-02 Joint Doctrine for Amphibious Operations
2. JCS PUB 3-02.1 Joint Doctrine for Landing Force Operations
3. LFM 03 Amphibious Embarkation

4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-31.3A Over the Horizon Surface Operations
6. MCRP 3-31B Amphibious Ships and Landing Craft Data Book
7. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
8. MCWP 3-31.1 Supporting Arms in Amphibious Operations
9. MCWP 3-31.3 Surf Zone Operations
10. MCWP 3-31.5 Ship-to-Shore Movement
11. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
12. MCWP 5-11 Amphibious Task Force Planning
13. MCWP 5-11.2 The Amphibious Task Force Plan
14. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White St	1 per crew
L311 Signal, Illumination Ground Red Star	1 per crew

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

AAV-AMPH-5605: Participate in Amphibious Raid

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian platoon is embarked on amphibious shipping and receives an OPORD/FRAGO directing it to participate in an amphibious raid on a specified target/objective at a given location and time. The raid will occur in daylight or darkness and may be beyond supporting distance of the unit. The order includes all applicable overlays or graphics. The platoon has the necessary elements and equipment to perform the specific purpose of the raid and to sustain itself during the operation. The unit establishes communications with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with the standing operating procedure (SOP). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon conducts the amphibious raid with an embarked infantry unit, supports subsequent infantry offensive operations ashore, and conducts a planned withdrawal to amphibious shipping. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Execute landing plan from preparation phase through launch from amphibious shipping.
2. Conduct waterborne ship-to-shore movement enroute to raid objective.
3. Conduct mechanized operations ashore in support of raid force.
4. Conduct planned withdrawal of raid force.

RELATED EVENTS:

1833-CMDC-1209	1833-CBTS-2411	1833-AMPH-2604
1833-AMPH-2606	1833-AMPH-2605	

REFERENCES:

1. FM 90-13-1 Combined Arms Breaching Operations
2. JCS PUB 3-02 Joint Doctrine for Amphibious Operations
3. JCS PUB 3-02.1 Joint Doctrine for Landing Force Operations
4. LFM 03 Amphibious Embarkation
5. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
6. MCRP 3-31B Amphibious Ships and Landing Craft Data Book
7. MCRP 4-11.3D The Naval Beach Group
8. MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Symbols
9. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
10. MCWP 5-11 Amphibious Task Force Planning
11. MCWP 5-11.2 The Amphibious Task Force Plan

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White St	1 per crew
L311 Signal, Illumination Ground Red Star	1 per crew

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

AAV-AMPH-5606: Conduct Amphibious Withdrawal

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian platoon receives an OPORD/FRAGO directing it to conduct an amphibious withdrawal. The withdrawal will occur in daylight or darkness and may be beyond supporting distance of the unit. The order includes all applicable overlays or graphics. The platoon has the necessary elements and equipment to perform the specific purpose of the withdrawal and to sustain itself during the operation. The unit establishes communications with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with the standing operating procedure (SOP). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon establishes a hasty defense, embarks supported infantry, and provides continuous security until all AAVs and embarked personnel retrograde to amphibious shipping. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Emphasize security as focus of effort as well as the accountability of personnel and equipment.

2. Coordinate with covering force.
3. Develop movement plan for elements; plan should minimize traffic congestion and delay at embarkation points.
4. Develop logistics/resupply plan that provides for as much self sufficiency as possible to allow CSS assets to load first.
5. Plan for evacuation of casualties, personnel, and vehicles.
6. Conduct pre-water operation checks.
7. Complete withdrawal to amphibious shipping with minimal loss of personnel and equipment.

RELATED EVENTS:

1833-CMDC-2202 1833-AMPH-2604 1833-AMPH-2606
1833-CBTS-2411

REFERENCES:

1. FM 90-13-1 Combined Arms Breaching Operations
2. JCS PUB 3-02 Joint Doctrine for Amphibious Operations
3. JCS PUB 3-02.1 Joint Doctrine for Landing Force Operations
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
6. MCRP 3-31.3A Over the Horizon Surface Operations
7. MCRP 3-31B Amphibious Ships and Landing Craft Data Book
8. MCRP 4-11.3D The Naval Beach Group
9. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
10. MCWP 3-31.2 Mine Warfare
11. MCWP 3-31.3 Surf Zone Operations
12. MCWP 3-31.5 Ship-to-Shore Movement
13. MCWP 5-11 Amphibious Task Force Planning
14. MCWP 5-11.2 The Amphibious Task Force Plan

AAV-AMPH-5607: Conduct Amphibious Breaching

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian platoon is embarked on amphibious shipping and receives an OPORD/FRAGO directing it to conduct a breach of enemy mines and obstacles on the assault beach. The breach will occur in daylight or darkness and may be beyond supporting distance of the unit. The order includes all applicable overlays or graphics. The platoon has the necessary elements and equipment to perform the breach and to sustain itself during the operation. The unit establishes communications with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with the standing operating procedure (SOP). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon conducts the amphibious breach in accordance with supported force's breach plan, landing plan, and higher headquarters operations order. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Mark lane.
2. Conduct combat reporting.
3. Coordinate breach with Amphibious Task Force and Landing Force, as appropriate.
4. Following launch from amphibious shipping, breaching elements move to selected breach site.
5. Deploy MK 154 elements in accordance with breach plan.
6. First element establishes breach.
7. Second element proofs or expands breach, as appropriate.
8. Chase vehicles act as proofing vehicles, when appropriate.

RELATED EVENTS:

1833-CMDC-1209	1803-CMDC-1218	1833-CBTS-2412
1803-AMPH-1605	1833-AMPH-2605	1833-AMPH-2606
1833-CBTS-2411		

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. MCWP 3-17.3 MAGTF Breaching Operations
4. TM 09962A-10/1 Operating Instruction Charts MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This event can be conducted with non-live fire rehearsals, live fire rehearsal with inert charge, or live fire with charge. There are limited training areas available for live fire with charge.

AAV-TAC-5701: Employ Column Formation

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 5, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian platoon is conducting tactical operations either independently or as part of a company/team (CO/TM) and receives an OPORD/FRAGO directing it to conduct tactical movement. The platoon commander issues the order to employ the column formation. The order includes graphic control measures for movement. Enemy contact may or may not be expected during movement. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon moves in column formation on the route or axis of advance specified. The platoon adjusts the route/axis, formation, and movement technique in response to the changing probability of enemy contact and the tactical situation (METT-TC factors), as necessary. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Direct the unit to employ the column (linear or staggered) formation during a tactical road march.
2. Establish the lead element, rate of march, and catch up speeds.
3. Establish vehicle interval based on the terrain being covered.
4. Maintain control of the formation, ensuring mutual support between the elements and outboard orientation of weapons.
5. Maintain the formation until the unit completes the movement or the situation changes.

RELATED EVENTS:

1803-CMDC-1221 1833-CMDC-2217

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
-

AAV-TAC-5702: Employ Vee Formation

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 5, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian platoon is conducting tactical operations either independently or as part of a company/team (CO/TM) and receives an OPORD/FRAGO directing it to conduct tactical movement. The platoon commander issues the order to employ the vee formation. The order includes graphic control measures for movement. Enemy contact may or may not be expected during movement. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon moves in a vee formation on the axis of advance specified. The platoon adjusts the axis, formation, and movement technique in response to the changing probability of enemy contact and the tactical situation (METT-TC factors), as necessary. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Direct the unit to employ the vee formation.
2. Establish the lead element, rate of march, and catch up speeds.
3. Establish vehicle interval based on the terrain being covered.
4. Maintain control of the formation, ensuring mutual support between the elements and outboard orientation of weapons.
5. Maintain the formation until the unit completes the movement or the situation changes.

RELATED EVENTS:

1803-CMDC-1221 1833-CMDC-2217

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management

2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

AAV-TAC-5703: Employ Wedge Formation

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 5, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian platoon is conducting tactical operations either independently or as part of a company/team (CO/TM) and receives an OPORD/FRAGO directing it to conduct tactical movement. The platoon commander issues the order to employ the wedge formation. The order includes graphic control measures for movement. Enemy contact may or may not be expected during movement. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon moves in a wedge formation on the axis of advance specified. The platoon adjusts the axis, formation, and movement technique in response to the changing probability of enemy contact and the tactical situation (METT-TC factors), as necessary. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Direct the unit to employ the wedge formation.
2. Establish the lead element, rate of march, and catch up speeds.
3. Establish vehicle interval based on the terrain being covered.
4. Maintain control of the formation, ensuring mutual support between the elements and outboard orientation of weapons.
5. Maintain the formation until the unit completes the movement or the situation changes.

RELATED EVENTS:

1803-CMDC-1221 1833-CMDC-2217

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
-

AAV-TAC-5704: Employ Line Formation

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 5, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian platoon is conducting tactical operations either independently or as part of a company/team (CO/TM) and receives an OPORD/FRAGO directing it to conduct tactical movement. The platoon commander issues the order to employ the line formation. The order includes graphic control measures for movement. Enemy contact may or may not be expected

during movement. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon moves in a line formation on the axis of advance specified. The platoon adjusts the axis, formation, and movement technique in response to the changing probability of enemy contact and the tactical situation (METT-TC factors), as necessary. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Direct the unit to employ the line formation during a movement.
2. Establish the lead element, rate of march, and catch up speeds.
3. Establish vehicle interval based on the terrain being covered.
4. Maintain control of the formation, ensuring mutual support between the elements and outboard orientation of weapons.
5. Maintain the formation until the unit completes the movement or the situation changes.

RELATED EVENTS:

1803-CMDC-1221 1833-CMDC-2217

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

AAV-TAC-5705: Employ Echelon Formation

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 5, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian platoon is conducting tactical operations either independently or as part of a company/team (CO/TM) and receives an OPORD/FRAGO directing it to conduct tactical movement. The platoon commander issues the order to employ the echelon formation. The order includes graphic control measures for movement. Enemy contact may or may not be expected during movement. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon moves in an echelon formation on the axis of advance specified. The platoon adjusts the axis, formation, and movement technique in response to the changing probability of enemy contact and the tactical situation (METT-TC factors), as necessary. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Direct the unit to employ the echelon formation during a movement to contact.
2. Establish the lead element, rate of march, and catch up speeds.

3. Establish vehicle interval based on the terrain being covered.
4. Maintain control of the formation, ensuring mutual support between the elements and outboard orientation of weapons.
5. Maintain the formation until the unit completes the movement or the situation changes.

RELATED EVENTS:

1803-CMDC-1221 1833-CMDC-2217

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
-

AAV-TAC-5706: Employ Traveling Movement Technique

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian platoon is conducting tactical operations either independently or as part of a company/team (CO/TM) and receives an OPORD/FRAGO directing it to conduct tactical movement. The platoon commander issues the order to employ traveling movement technique. The order includes graphic control measures for movement. Enemy contact may or may not be expected during movement. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon employs traveling movement technique on the axis of advance specified. The platoon adjusts the axis, formation, vehicle interval, rate of march, and movement technique in response to the changing probability of enemy contact and the tactical situation (METT-TC factors), as necessary. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Direct the unit to employ the traveling movement technique.
2. Establish the rate of march and catch up speeds.
3. Establish vehicle interval based on the terrain being covered.
4. Maintain control of the formation, ensuring mutual support between the elements and outboard orientation of weapons.
5. Maintain the formation until the situation requires a change.

RELATED EVENTS:

1833-TAC-2704 1803-CMDC-1221 1833-CMDC-2217

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
-

AAV-TAC-5707: Employ Traveling Overwatch Technique

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian platoon is conducting tactical operations either independently or as part of a company/team (CO/TM) and receives an OPORD/FRAGO directing it to conduct tactical movement. The platoon commander issues the order to employ traveling overwatch movement technique. The order includes graphic control measures for movement. Enemy contact may or may not be expected during movement. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon employs traveling overwatch movement technique on the axis of advance specified. The platoon adjusts the axis, formation, vehicle interval, rate of march, and movement technique in response to the changing probability of enemy contact and the tactical situation (METT-TC factors), as necessary. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Direct the unit to employ the traveling overwatch movement technique.
2. Establish the rate of march and catch up speeds.
3. Establish vehicle interval based on the terrain being covered.
4. Establish lead element and supporting element(s) within the unit.
5. Maintain control of the formation, ensuring mutual support between the elements and outboard orientation of weapons.
6. Maintain the formation until the situation requires a change.

RELATED EVENTS:

1833-TAC-2704

1803-CMDC-1221

1833-CMDC-2217

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

AAV-TAC-5708: Employ Bounding Overwatch Technique

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian platoon is conducting tactical operations either independently or as part of a company/team (CO/TM) and receives an OPORD/FRAGO directing it to conduct tactical movement. The platoon commander issues the order to employ bounding overwatch movement technique. The order includes graphic control measures for movement. Enemy contact may or may not be expected during movement. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon employs bounding overwatch movement technique on the axis of advance specified. The platoon adjusts the axis, formation, vehicle interval, rate of march, and movement technique in response to the changing probability of enemy contact and the tactical situation (METT-TC factors), as necessary. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Direct the unit to employ the bounding overwatch technique (successive or alternate).
2. Establish the lead element in an overwatch position, direct the size of the elements to bound (i.e. by vehicle, section, or platoon).
3. Direct the next element in the formation to bound to the next covered and concealed position based on the terrain being covered.
4. When the bounding unit is set and has established overwatch on the probable enemy position, it must indicate to the other elements that it is "set" so that they can begin the next bound.
5. When informed that the first bounding element is set, the next element to bound takes the most concealed and covered route to its next overwatch position, establishes overwatch, and indicates that it is "set" to the rest of the unit.
6. Units must employ the most covered and concealed route to their next position, maintain mutual support during their movement, and determine their most likely next position and route to that position while covering the movement of the bounding unit.
7. Continue with the movement technique until enemy contact is made or the situation changes.

RELATED EVENTS:

1833-TAC-2704 1803-CMDC-1221 1833-CMDC-2217

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

AAV-TAC-5709: Employ Coil Formation

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 6

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian platoon is conducting tactical operations either independently or as part of a company/team (CO/TM) and receives an OPORD/FRAGO directing it to conduct tactical movement. The order includes graphic control measures for movement. The unit conducts a halt and the platoon commander issues the order to employ the coil formation. Enemy contact may or may not be expected during movement. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon executes a halt and immediately transitions into a coil formation. The platoon ensures appropriate interval is maintained to provide mutual support between the unit's elements. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Determine a defensible position with adequate cover, concealment, and area along the route of march to halt the unit.
2. Direct lead element of unit to halt near the far end of the position and orient on the direction of march.
3. Elements of the unit establish themselves in a circular position based on unit SOP and their position within the formation, with the lead element being at the "12 o'clock" position, determining their interval based on the terrain available.
4. The formation should resemble a circle, within the limits of the terrain, with all elements oriented outward to ensure complete security.
5. Unit resumes the original formation and direction of march.

RELATED EVENTS:

1833-TAC-2704 1803-CMDC-1221 1833-CMDC-2217

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

AAV-TAC-5710: Employ Herringbone Formation

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 6

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian platoon is conducting tactical operations either independently or as part of a company/team (CO/TM) and receives an OPORD/FRAGO directing it to conduct tactical movement. The order includes graphic control measures for movement. The unit conducts a short halt and the platoon commander issues the order to employ the herringbone formation. Enemy contact may or may not be expected during movement. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon executes a short halt and immediately transitions into a herringbone formation. The platoon ensures appropriate interval is maintained to provide mutual support between the unit's elements. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Determine a defensible position with adequate cover and concealment along the route of march to halt the unit.
2. Direct lead element of unit to halt near the far end of the position and

- orient on the direction of march.
3. Elements of the unit maintain their interval and orient outboard based on their position within the formation according to unit SOP.
 4. The formation should resemble a staggered column, within the limits of the terrain, with the trace elements oriented toward the rear of the column to ensure complete security.
 5. Unit resumes the original formation and direction of march.

RELATED EVENTS:

1833-TAC-2704 1803-CMDC-1221 1833-CMDC-2217

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCRP 4-11.3F Convoy Operations Handbook
 3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
-

AAV-TAC-5711: Conduct Tactical Road March

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian platoon receives an OPORD/FRAGO complete with supporting graphics to conduct a tactical road march independently or as part of a company/team (CO/TM). The order specifies the arrival time at the start point (SP) as well as the march speed, interval, and order of march. All planning and preparations are complete, including reconnaissance to determine the time-distance factor to the SP. Enemy contact is not expected. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon moves through the start point (SP), checkpoints, and release point (RP) at times specified in the OPORD/FRAGO. The platoon moves IAW OPORD/FRAGO and completes movement to the designated location. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire and maintains situational awareness by monitoring communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Develop and issue a FRAGO/OPORD to the unit.
2. Initiate unit movement.
3. Pass and report start, intermediate check points and release points at stated time, speed, interval, and order of march.
4. Maintain weapons orientation, air watch, and mutual support.
5. Maintain command and control.
6. Unit arrives at the Release Point at the stated time and reports to higher headquarters.
7. Conduct tactical halts.

RELATED EVENTS:

1833-TAC-2704 1833-CMDC-2217 1833-CMDC-1209
1803-VOPS-1318 1803-CMDC-1221 1803-CMDC-1218
1833-CMDC-2202

REFERENCES :

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCRP 4-11.3F Convoy Operations Handbook
 3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
-

AAV-TAC-5712: Conduct a Tactical Halt

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian platoon is conducting tactical operations either independently or as part of a company/team (CO/TM) and receives an OPORD/FRAGO directing it to conduct tactical movement. The order includes graphic control measures for movement. The platoon commander issues the order to conduct a tactical halt based on METT-TC factors. Enemy contact may or may not be expected during the movement and halt. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon executes a tactical halt in a defensible position that provides cover and concealment and security. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Determine a defensible position with adequate cover and concealment to halt the unit.
2. Advise point element to halt at the farthest point in the position and establish security.
3. Direct the appropriate security formation based on the terrain and threat situation.
4. For short halts, dismount two to three embarked Marines to cover the AAV crews while they conduct At Halt Operations Checks.
5. For long halts dismount the entire embarked unit and deploy them as security for the AAV crews while they conduct At Halt checks.
6. Every third or every other vehicle will conduct at halt operations checks, including raising the plenums, while the other vehicles provide security.
7. The vehicles will alternate raising their plenums. A vehicle will lower its plenums immediately upon completion of those at halt operations checks under the plenums in order to allow the rest of the unit to conduct their checks.
8. Vehicles discovering maintenance concerns will pass them through the chain of command for action by maintenance personnel.
9. When all checks are completed, the embarked personnel will return to the vehicles. Accountability of all personnel is essential.
10. AAVs resume the march formation and continue with the mission.

RELATED EVENTS:

1833-TAC-2704

1803-VOPS-1318

1833-GNRY-1123

REFERENCES :

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCRP 4-11.3F Convoy Operations Handbook
 3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
-

AAV-TAC-5713: Conduct Immediate Action Drills

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 6

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian platoon is conducting tactical operations independently or as part of a company/team (CO/TM). It makes contact with an enemy force by receipt of direct/indirect fires, air attack, or direct observation. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon employs appropriate fire and movement techniques in response to enemy action. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Employ M257 Grenade Launchers against enemy direct fire to screen vehicle positions from enemy observation.
2. Employ actions against enemy air attack by moving vehicles out of the enemy impact area without traveling along the enemy's axis of attack.
3. Employ actions against enemy indirect fire by moving vehicles out of the enemy impact area.
4. Employ actions against enemy ambush by maneuvering vehicles away or against the enemy.
5. Employ change formation drills to minimize time that unit is vulnerable to enemy attack.

RELATED EVENTS:

1833-CMDC-2217

1833-VOPS-1317

1803-CMDC-1221

REFERENCES :

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
-

AAV-TAC-5714: Conduct Actions on Contact

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian platoon is conducting tactical operations independently or as part of a company/team (CO/TM). It makes contact with an enemy force by receipt of direct/indirect fires, direct observation, or from reports sent to, or coming from higher headquarters. Some iterations of this

task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon identifies and reports the enemy unit or position. The platoon returns fire and suppresses enemy forces. The platoon reports the enemy and friendly situation and avoids decisive engagement and sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. React to contact with enemy forces to the front.
2. Return fire in direction of contact.
3. Alert the rest of the unit/element.
4. Report contact to higher headquarters.
5. Deploy the unit's firepower to establish suppression on enemy positions.
6. Prepare to conduct bypass, hasty attack, or assume a hasty defense.

RELATED EVENTS:

1833-CMDC-2217 1803-CMDC-1221 1833-CMDC-1207

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

AAV-TAC-5715: Cross a Danger Area

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 5, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian platoon is operating in a tactical environment independently or as part of a company/team (CO/TM) and is required to cross a danger area. The platoon commander directs the unit to cross the danger area. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon crosses the danger area, maintains security, ensures mutual support between elements, and minimizes exposure to enemy observation and fires. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Establish near side security.
2. Direct an element to cross, conduct reconnaissance of area on far side large enough for entire unit to establish position in, and establish far side security.
3. Upon confirmation by far side security unit, direct the movement of unit across danger area. Keep dust signature and exposure time to a minimum.
4. Establish original march formation after all elements have crossed danger area.

RELATED EVENTS:

1833-TAC-2704 1803-CMDC-1221 1833-CMDC-2217

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

AAV-TAC-5716: Support Infantry Defensive Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 6

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a company team and receives an OPORD/FRAGO directing it to defend an area of operations (AO). Enemy contact is not expected prior to the "defend NLT" time specified in the OPORD or FRAGO. The order includes all applicable overlays and graphics. Indirect fires, engineer, intelligence, and air defense (AD) assets are available upon request. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit establishes communications with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with the standing operating procedure (SOP). The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon defends in accordance with SOP, the order, and higher commander's guidance and intent. The unit reconnoiters, occupies and defends from mutually supporting positions before the defend "not later than (NLT)" time specified in the order. The unit adjusts positions as necessary to cover target reference points (TRPs), engagement areas (EAs), and sectors of fire. The unit complies with the ROE and ROI.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Employ obstacles (natural and man made) to disrupt, delay, block, or canalize enemy movement in coordination with fire support to destroy his reconnaissance elements and defeat his main attack.
2. Establish vehicle fighting positions to include fire sketch. At a minimum establish Target Reference Points (TRPs) by vehicle, element, and unit when conducting the hasty defense of a battle position.
3. Employ vehicle weapons to engage enemy troops and vehicles in accordance with engagement criteria established in the OPORD/FRAGO.
4. Displace to alternate, supplementary, and subsequent positions in accordance with disengagement criteria established in the OPORD/FRAGO.
5. Conduct local counterattacks.
6. Conduct combat reporting.
7. Conduct consolidation and reorganization.
8. Conduct resupply, recovery, and evacuation operations.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

AAV-TAC-5717

RELATED EVENTS:

1833-TAC-2703	1833-TAC-2704	1833-CBTS-2411
1833-CMDC-1209	1833-CMDC-2202	1833-CMDC-2217

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS

AAV-TAC-5717: Defend a Battle Position

SUPPORTED MET(S): 6

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian platoon completes occupation of a battle position as part of a company/team (CO/TM) defense or in preparation for a perimeter defense. The platoon commander prepares a platoon fire plan on overlay and receives displacement criteria from the commander. The platoon observes an advancing enemy, or is alerted to an enemy unit by a digital or FM SPOTREP from the company commander or another element. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon establishes primary, alternate, and supplementary positions based on METT-TC. The unit establishes and rehearses routes between positions, employs camouflage, develops vehicle range cards and unit fire plan sketches, installs wire communications between vehicles, and enforces noise and light discipline, in accordance with the defensive scheme contained in the operations order and standing operating procedures.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Enforce light and noise discipline.
2. Prepare the fire plan sketch.
3. Establish vehicle position within perimeter.
4. Identify alternate and supplementary positions in accordance with guidance from element commander.
5. Mark primary positions for use in day and night. Positions must be marked so that vehicle can depart to conduct rehearsals and maintenance and return to the same position in order to use the same range card.
6. Rehearse movement to alternate and supplementary positions, marking both for use in day and night conditions and producing range cards for each position.
7. Camouflage primary position. Make maximum use of natural resources, employing camouflage net, as necessary.
8. Install wire communications between vehicles as directed. Wire should run left to right, higher to lower. Bury all wires to avoid getting them caught in the suspension when vehicles move.

RELATED EVENTS:

1833-TAC-2703	1833-TAC-2704	1803-VOPS-1302
1803-CMDC-1210	1833-GNRY-1123	1833-TAC-1703

REFERENCES :

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 3. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

AAV-TAC-5718: Conduct Deliberate Occupation of a Battle Position

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 6

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian platoon is conducting tactical operation as part of a company team (CO/TM) and is directed to conduct a deliberate occupation of a battle position (BP). The platoon commander may or may not have conducted a ground reconnaissance of the BP with the CO/TM commander. Using overlays, the platoon commander prepares a tentative platoon fire plan for the position and designated tentative vehicle positions, sectors of fire, TRPs, EAs, obstacles, and routes based on the ground or map reconnaissance. Enemy contact is not likely prior to the "defend NLT" time specified in the OPORD/FRAGO. Sufficient time is available to conduct a deliberate occupation. The CO/TM commander specifies a time and location to conduct coordination between elements. Engineer assets may or may not be available. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon moves into the BP, avoids detection by the enemy, and establishes security. The platoon commander and VCs reconnoiter the BP. The platoon commander finalizes the plan and completes coordination with adjacent units. The platoon completes the occupation by the "defend NLT" time stated in the OPORD/FRAGO. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Platoon performs tactical movement to a hide position behind the BP.
2. Use covered and concealed routes to the maximum extent possible.
3. Use the most advantageous formation and movement technique.
4. Maintain weapons orientation to provide all around security.
5. Platoon occupies a hide position behind the BP.
6. Execute herringbone formation.
7. Establish local security, with OPs emplaced as necessary (the platoon may have to coordinate with dismounted infantry for OP support).
8. Occupy individual vehicle hide positions (designated by the platoon commander using voice/visual signals) and perform simultaneous shutdown.
9. Platoon commander designates and briefs the reconnaissance group (the reconnaissance group usually consists of VCs and a security element).
10. Outline reconnaissance procedures, including required equipment, routes, security measures, and displacement plan.
11. Brief reconnaissance group on information that is already known about the BP.
12. Outline security and maintenance procedures.
13. Designate elements to provide overwatch for the reconnaissance group, if

- applicable.
14. Establish a contingency plan for actions to be taken if the reconnaissance group does not return by a specified time, or if enemy contact occurs during the reconnaissance element's absence.
 15. Platoon reconnaissance group moves to the BP.
 16. Use covered and concealed routes to the maximum extent possible.
 17. Maintain local security.
 18. Platoon commander (with reconnaissance group) reconnoiters BP and EAs and marks key locations in AO.
 19. Move to a vantage point that allows the group to view the BP from the enemy's perspective, if possible.
 20. Walk the EA (if time is available, if not drive the EA).
 21. Mark TRPs in the EA.
 22. Move to vantage point within the BP that affords a clear view of platoon's AO, if possible.
 23. Identify locations of existing obstacles and tentative positions for reinforcing obstacles.
 24. Point out terrain that corresponds to the platoon's and CO/TM's graphic control measures (EA, TRPs, BPs, routes between BPs).
 25. Brief the CO/TM scheme of maneuver.
 26. Designate primary and supplementary firing positions and sectors of fire to cover the EA.
 27. Designate covered and concealed routes between primary and supplementary firing positions.
 28. Designate OP positions to provide observation of the avenues of approach into the platoon's sector and route back to the BP.
 29. Brief VCs on the platoon scheme of defense (to include trigger point, break point and disengagement plan).
 30. Mark key locations in the BP and EA using daylight and limited visibility materials and records ten-digit grid coordinates for these locations.
 31. Designate overlapping sectors of fire and observation.
 32. Verify location of adjacent units' vehicles and primary, alternate, and supplementary BPs and firing positions.
 33. Identify dead space.
 34. Determine location and types of obstacles.
 35. Confirm indirect fire targets.
 36. Exchange SOI information.
 37. Coordinate routes into and out of the BP and routes to subsequent BPs.
 38. Platoon occupies the BP.
 39. Start vehicles simultaneously following FM communications command or visual signals from the platoon commander.
 40. Move along designated covered and concealed routes and occupy individual vehicle hide positions behind the primary fighting positions.
 41. Complete sketch cards (hard-copy) and forward one copy per vehicle to the platoon commander.
 42. Back down into designated individual vehicle hide positions behind primary fighting positions, and shut the vehicles down individually.
 43. Platoon commander consolidates sketch cards and finalizes the platoon fire plan.
 44. Identify: individual AAV positions; platoon sector or EA; TRPs; range lines, trigger points, break points, and other key terrain features; locations of OPs and obstacles; indirect fire targets, including FPF (if allocated), and dead space.
 45. Record appropriate marginal information, including (as required) engagement criteria, effective range of available weapon systems, fire

- pattern, and disengagement criteria.
46. Platoon commander informs the company/team commander that the BP is occupied and reports "ESTABLISHED".
 47. Submit the completed fire plan (by messenger or digital transmission).
 48. Platoon commander updates platoon on any changes to the occupation plan.
 49. Initiate necessary actions to be made as a result of coordination.
 50. Direct platoon to conduct vehicle maintenance, as necessary.
 51. Platoon commander supervises improvement of the BP.
 52. Coordinate with engineer assets (if available).
 53. Supervise digging of firing positions, using engineers, if available.
 54. Inspect dug-in firing positions and escort engineers to the next AAV when finished.
 55. Direct the platoon to camouflage vehicles and equipment.
 56. Verify clear fields of fire.
 57. Direct the platoon to establish wire communications.
 58. Direct employment of chemical alarms, obstacles, and prestock ammunition and supplies.
 59. Platoon performs rehearsals (the extent and complexity of platoon rehearsals will depend on the time available and the tactical situation; the platoon may conduct rehearsals by itself or in conjunction with the CO/TM).
 60. Perform special rehearsals (individual/crew tasks), map rehearsals, key leader rehearsals, sand table, terrain model rehearsals, force-on-force rehearsals, or a rehearsal with all crews observing a designated vehicle as it moves in the EA.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 3. MCWP 3-17 Engineer Operations
 4. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual
-

AAV-TAC-5719: Conduct a Disengagement/Withdrawal from the Enemy

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a company/team (CO/TM) and is in contact with enemy elements. The company/team commander orders the platoon to disengage/withdrawal, specifies a route for the disengagement/withdrawal and a location to which the platoon is to move. Another element may or may not be available to cover platoon movement. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon breaks contact with the enemy and moves to the designated point where neither the enemy nor the platoon can engage the other with direct fire. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The platoon commander issues a FRAGO.
2. Designate the location to which the platoon will move.
3. Designate the route to the new location (using GPS or way points as applicable).
4. Designate the order of march.
5. Platoon disengages/withdrawals from enemy contact with another platoon providing overwatch.
6. Perform tactical movement to the predesignated location.
7. Use appropriate formation and movement technique.
8. Maintain weapons orientation toward the enemy and engage enemy elements, as necessary.
9. Use on-board smoke salvos as appropriate, to screen movement.
10. Occupy the new position and establish local security.
11. Platoon disengages/withdrawals from enemy contact without overwatch support.
12. Designate one section to lead the movement (maneuver section) and the other to provide overwatch (overwatch section).
13. Begin disengagement/withdrawal with overwatch section remaining in place and provide direct (including smoke) to suppress, destroy, and/or screen the enemy.
14. Perform tactical movement to the designated location, with the maneuver section keeping weapons oriented toward the enemy and engaging enemy forces, as necessary.
15. The maneuver section smoke salvos, as appropriate.
16. Disengage/withdrawal the overwatch section at the appropriate time.
17. Occupy the new position and establish local security.
18. Platoon commander completes disengagement/withdrawal actions.
19. Send a report of completion of disengagement to the commander.
20. Direct reorganization activities as required to prepare platoon for future operations.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
-

AAV-TAC-5720: Conduct a Delay

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a company/team (CO/TM). Enemy forces have advanced in sufficient force to meet disengagement criteria IAW the OPORD/FRAGO, or the CO/TM commander has ordered displacement to a subsequent or alternate position due to a change of mission. The platoon's movement may or may not be overwatched. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon executes the delay and conducts displacement and hasty occupation of the subsequent/alternate BP. The platoon defends or provides overwatch for the remainder of the CO/TM IAW the commander's intent. The

platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Platoon commander orders platoon to displace.
2. Designate an overwatch element if the displacement is not covered.
3. If in a defensive position initiate final protective fires (FPF), if allocated.
4. Use FM voice command or visual signals to order the platoon to begin displacement.
5. Platoon displaces while overwatched by another element.
6. Back down into hide positions, keep weapons oriented in the direction of last enemy contact, and turn toward the subsequent/alternate BP.
7. Use on-board smoke salvos IAW METT-TC.
8. Perform tactical movement to the subsequent/alternate BP, using covered and concealed routes and keep all weapons oriented in the direction of last enemy contact.
9. Enter subsequent/alternate BP from the rear or flank.
10. If the platoon displaces not overwatched by another element: use overwatch section to observe and/or engage the enemy as necessary; back maneuver section down into a hide position, and keep weapons oriented in the direction of last enemy contact, and begin movement toward the subsequent/alternate BP; back overwatch section down into a hide position once the maneuver section is under way, keep weapons oriented in the direction of the last enemy contact, and begin movement toward the subsequent/alternate BP; perform tactical movement on covered and concealed routes to the subsequent/alternate BP; use on-board smoke salvos IAW METT-TC; enter subsequent/alternate BP from the flank or rear.
11. Platoon performs a hasty occupation of the subsequent/alternate BP
12. As time permits, the platoon performs additional steps of a deliberate occupation.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
-

AAV-TAC-5721: Support Infantry Offensive Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): 1, 2, 5, 8

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a company/team and receives an OPORD/FRAGO to support a hasty attack, deliberate attack, attack of a strongpoint, reconnaissance in force, feint, demonstration, mechanized raid, or counterattack. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon supports the infantry with fire and maneuver which results in the destruction, capture, or withdrawal of enemy forces. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The

platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Acknowledge receipt of the higher headquarters warning order and initiate planning.
2. Issue warning order to subordinate units.
3. Develop and issue the unit operations order.
4. Establish liaison with higher, adjacent, and supporting units, as appropriate request direct liaison, when appropriate.
5. Conduct rehearsals as time permits and coordinate rehearsals with supported unit.
6. Conduct leader's reconnaissance as time permits.
7. Coordinate passage of lines, if required.
8. Conduct forward passage of lines with unit in contact with enemy force.
9. Conduct movement to and conduct attack position activities.
10. Cross line of departure.
11. Conduct movement to and conduct dismount point activities.
12. Initiate preparatory fires if included in the operations order.
13. Provide support by fire.
14. Conduct other mission as assigned by the operations order.
15. Conduct breach of enemy obstacle belt, as necessary.
16. Assault enemy objectives.
17. Prepare for enemy counterattack.
18. Prepare for follow on mission.
19. Conduct combat reporting as required.
20. Conduct preparation for combat, to include pre-combat checks and pre-combat inspections.
21. Embark dismounted supported unit, if applicable.
22. Conduct consolidation and reorganization on the objective.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

AAV-TAC-5722

RELATED EVENTS:

1833-TAC-2701	1833-CMDC-1209	1803-CMDC-1221
1803-CMDC-1218	1833-CMDC-2217	1833-CMDC-2202

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

AAV-TAC-5722: Conduct Attack Position Activities

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a company/team and receives an OPORD/FRAGO to support an attack. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon is prepared administratively, logistically, and tactically to support infantry offensive operations. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Following passage of friendly lines, move to a covered and concealed position.
2. Account for all elements of the unit.
3. Conduct vehicle and equipment checks to determine mechanical casualties during the movement to the attack position. Conduct corrective maintenance and reorganization as necessary.
4. Conduct weapons checks as the situation allows.
5. Begin movement toward the objective.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
-

AAV-TAC-5723: Support a Mechanized Patrol

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian platoon is performing tactical operations as part of a company/team (CO/TM). The platoon receives an OPORD/FRAGO and supporting overlays to conduct a mechanized patrol. The platoon completes coordination in person or via communications with the infantry commander. The enemy situation is vague but contact is possible. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon positions its vehicles as directed and provides effective protection to the front, flanks, and/or rear of the patrol. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Issue warning order.
2. Submit patrol plan to higher headquarters.
3. Issue approved patrol order to unit and conduct rehearsals.
4. Conduct coordination with forward unit prior to departure.
5. Conduct passage of lines.
6. Execute patrol order.
7. Conduct combat reporting.
8. Return to friendly position.
9. Conduct after operations checks and services.
10. Debrief the patrol.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

AAV-TAC-5711

RELATED EVENTS:

1833-TAC-2701 1803-CBTS-2410 1803-CMDC-1221
1833-CMDC-2217

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 3. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual
-

AAV-TAC-5724: Conduct Dismount Point Activities

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 5, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian platoon is conducting tactical operations independently or as part of a company/team (CO/TM) and receives an order to dismount infantry forces. Enemy contact may or may not be expected during movement. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon dismounts infantry at time and place specified in the order or on the infantry commander's direction. The platoon supports dismounted infantry maneuver with no friendly casualties or equipment damage due to fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Move the unit into a covered and concealed position just beyond enemy observation and fire from the unit's objective using the appropriate security formation.
2. Account for all elements of the unit prior to initiating the assault.
3. Provide observation and supporting fires for embarked troops as they organize for the assault.
4. Conduct any final coordination or reorganization necessary.
5. Initiate assault with supporting fires, as appropriate.
6. Dismount embarked troops.
7. Displace to attack by fire/support by fire positions in accordance with the operations order.

RELATED EVENTS:

1833-TAC-2701

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 3. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual
-

AAV-TAC-5725: Conduct a Spoiling Attack

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 5, 8

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a company/team (CO/TM) and receives an OPORD/FRAGO to conduct a spoiling attack. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon conducts a spoiling attack in accordance with standing operating procedures, the order, and the company commander's intent. The unit maneuvers quickly to overcome the enemy before he can react and prevents or degrades his ability to conduct a hostile attack while in the process of forming or assembling for an attack. The unit complies with the rules of engagement.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Attack enemy before he begins final attack formation.
2. Coordinate fires and movement with higher headquarters and adjacent units.
3. Plan for counterattack.

RELATED EVENTS:

1833-CMDC-2217
1833-CMDC-1209

1803-CMDC-1218

1803-CMDC-1221

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
-

AAV-TAC-5726: Conduct Overwatch/Support by Fire

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a company/team and receives an OPORD/FRAGO to conduct overwatch/support by fire for moving friendly elements. Enemy contact is possible. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon occupies a position from which it can provide overwatch/support by fire for the supported element. The platoon suppresses or destroys enemy elements that could affect accomplishment of the supported element's mission. The platoon maintains communications with the supported unit and warns it of lapses in overwatch coverage. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Identify/designate tentative overwatch/SBF positions, TRPs, sectors of fire, CO/TM objective, moving element routes, and/or orientation on likely enemy positions.
2. Platoon commander alerts AAV personnel and issues the FRAGO/OPORD for the overwatch/support by fire mission.
3. Identify covered and concealed routes to be used during movement to overwatch/SBF position.
4. Verify signal to lift and shift fires.
5. Annotate essential graphic control measures in overlays and send to the platoon.
6. Platoon performs tactical movement to and occupies overwatch/SBF position.
7. Maintain orientation on and overwatch of the supported element's battle space during movement.
8. Adjust movement to maintain correct interval from the supported element based on the terrain and the ability of the platoon's weapon systems to cover the supported element's battle space.
9. Perform hasty occupation of overwatch/SBF position that provides effective weapon standoff, and cover and concealment on likely enemy positions, if appropriate.
10. Platoon performs overwatch from stationary position, as the situation dictates.
11. Scan sectors of fire, as designated by the platoon commander or SOP.
12. Keep supported element informed of the enemy situation.
13. Platoon initiates suppressive fires, if support by fire becomes necessary.
14. Suppressive fires are initiated when the platoon commander issues a platoon fire command or when individual vehicles fire, after observing an enemy element.
15. Adjust suppressive fires, based on the supported unit's movement/signals, to prevent fratricide, as necessary.
16. Move to alternate positions to avoid becoming decisively engaged and/or to maintain effective fires on the enemy, as necessary.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

AAV-TAC-5727: Conduct Reconnaissance by Fire

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 5, 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian platoon is conducting offensive operations in a tactical environment as part of a company/team (CO/TM). Enemy contact is expected or has already occurred, but the enemy situation is vague. The platoon commander directs the unit to develop the situation, using reconnaissance by fire to force the enemy to react. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon causes the enemy to displace using direct fires from the upgunned weapons station, identifies enemy positions from return fire, or determines that there are no enemy forces in the suspected position. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Platoon commander identifies suspected enemy location(s).
2. Target key terrain overwatching choke points or danger areas.
3. Target built-up areas that dominate the surrounding terrain.
4. Target uncleared wooded areas.
5. Designate platoon TRPs, and reports them to CO/TM commander.
6. Platoon occupies an overwatch position.
7. Perform tactical movement to the overwatch location, using the cover and concealment provided by the terrain to protect against enemy fires.
8. Select a position that provides cover and concealment.
9. Begin scanning sectors of fire as designated by the platoon commander.
10. Platoon employs direct fire from UGWS.
11. Execute actions as necessary, if enemy force is not destroyed by initial fires.
12. Platoon commander or platoon sergeant determine if enemy elements are occupying the suspected position.
13. Send SITREP to the company/team commander.
14. Direct the platoon to continue the mission.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 3. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
-

AAV-TAC-5728: Conduct a Bypass

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 5, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian platoon is conducting tactical operations as part of a company/team (CO/TM) and has made contact with an enemy force or obstacle. The platoon initiates actions on contact and is directed by the CO/TM commander to conduct a bypass. The platoon's movement is covered by the remainder of the unit in an overwatch position. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon locates a suitable bypass route affording cover and concealment and/or weapon standoff. The platoon conducts the bypass without becoming decisively engaged by the enemy element. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire and maintains situational awareness by monitoring communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Platoon commander reconnoiters to locate an available route, if the commander did not designate one.
2. Verify bypass affords routes away from enemy positions and obstacles.
3. Verify that terrain along the bypass route will support movement of platoon vehicles.
4. Verify bypass affords covered and concealed positions/routes beyond the enemy positions/obstacles.
5. If the platoon commander does not locate a suitable bypass route, he sends a SITREP to the CO/TM commander and prepares the platoon to take actions as directed.
6. Platoon performs tactical movement along the route.
7. Use most advantageous formation and movement technique.
8. Maintain weapons orientation to provide all around security.
9. Identify and react to enemy forces along the route.
10. Employ smoke salvos to screen movement.
11. Platoon takes appropriate actions, after the completion of the bypass.
12. Assume an overwatch/support by fire role to allow follow-on units to bypass, if so ordered.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 3. MCWP 3-17 Engineer Operations
-

AAV-TAC-5729: Conduct a Linkup

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian platoon is conducting tactical operations independently or as part of a company/team (CO/TM) and is ordered to conduct a linkup and coordination with another unit. This can be an adjacent or moving unit while the platoon is stationary or a stationary unit while the platoon is on the move. Contact points are either given to the platoon commander as grid coordinates or depicted on the platoon's operational graphics. Control measures and tentative indirect fire targets are determined by the company commander or platoon commander. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon conducts linkup with the other unit at the time and place specified in the OPORD/FRAGO, and completes all necessary coordination. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Establish liaison as appropriate.
2. Exchange frequencies, call signs, recognition signals, and obstacle plans as appropriate.
3. Stationary force assumes responsibility for fire support and local security during linkup.

4. Moving force conducts tactical road march to stationary forces' position.
5. Stationary force provides guides and coordinates linkup.
6. Moving force assumes prearranged position.
7. Moving force uses guides and quartering party.

RELATED EVENTS:

1833-CMDC-2202 1833-TAC-2701

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
-

AAV-TAC-5730: Conduct Passage of Lines

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: A passage of lines is an operation where a force moves forward or rearward through another force's combat positions with the intention of moving into or out of contact with the enemy.

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian platoon is conducting tactical operations independently or as part of a company/team (CO/TM) and receives an OPORD and supporting overlays to conduct a forward or rearward a passage of lines. Contact is possible; enemy forces could include disruption, battle, support zone forces, or asymmetrical threat. The unit establishes communications with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with the standing operating procedures. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon conducts the passage of lines at the time and place specified in the OPORD or FRAGO with no compromise of security. The platoon completes the passage of lines as specified with no friendly casualties or equipment damage due to fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Establish liaison with stationary/moving unit as appropriate.
2. Coordinate for use of guides.
3. Moving unit approaches establishes contact with stationary unit.
4. Stationary unit provides guides through their barriers in order to expedite movement.
5. Stationary unit alerts elements of approach of friendly unit, status becomes weapons tight.
6. Stationary unit controls movement and is responsible for coordinating responses to enemy action.
7. Moving unit announces when all elements are cleared of stationary position.
8. Moving and stationary units coordinate and shift responsibilities of engagement area at designated time or event.

RELATED EVENTS:

1833-CBTS-2411 1833-CMDC-2202

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
-

AAV-TAC-5731: Conduct Riverine Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian platoon is conducting tactical operations independently or as part of a company/team (CO/TM) and receives an OPORD/FRAGO directing it to conduct riverine operations. The order includes graphic control measures for movement. Enemy contact may or may not be expected during movement. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon moves on the axis of advance specified in the OPORD/FRAGO. The platoon uses formations and techniques of movement as specified in the order, the commander's guidance and/or unit SOP. The platoon adjusts the axis, formation and movement technique in response to the changing probability of enemy contact and changes in the tactical situation (METT-TC factors), as necessary. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Determine river current speed and direction.
2. Conduct terrain analysis.
3. Employ Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures, prescribed in the reference for riverine operations.
4. Employ control measures required for mechanized forces in riverine operations.
5. Determine CSS requirements for riverine operations, coordinate combat service support.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

AAV-TAC-5732

RELATED EVENTS:

1803-CMDC-1210 1803-CMDC-1221 1833-CMDC-2217

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 3. MCWP 3-17.1 River-Crossing Operations
 4. MCWP 3-35.4 Doctrine for Navy/Marine Corps Joint Riverine Operations
-

AAV-TAC-5732: Cross a River

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian platoon is conducting tactical operations independently or as part of a company/team (CO/TM) and receives an OPORD/FRAGO directing it to cross a river. The order includes graphic control measures for movement. Enemy contact may or may not be expected during movement. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon moves on the route or axis of advance specified in the OPORD/FRAGO and executes river crossing. The platoon uses formations and techniques of movement as specified in the order, the commander's guidance and/or unit SOP. The platoon sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The platoon maintains situational awareness by monitoring FM communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Establish far-side security.
2. Complete river crossing and prepare for follow-on orders or further actions.
3. Determine river current speed and direction.
4. Conduct terrain analysis.
5. Establish near side security.
6. Conduct pre-water-op checks.
7. In a permissive environment, use a splash team to initiate river crossing. In a non-permissive environment, conduct combat splash.

RELATED EVENTS:

1833-TAC-2704 1803-CMDC-1210 1803-CMDC-1221
1833-CMDC-2217

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. MCWP 3-17.1 River-Crossing Operations

AAV-TAC-5733: Support Military Operations on Urban Terrain (MOUT)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 5, 6, 7, 8

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian platoon is conducting tactical operations in an urban environment as part of a company/team (CO/TM). The unit receives an OPORD/FRAGO directing it to support operations in a built-up area at the location and time specified. The built-up area may be a very small village (10 or fewer buildings), in a lateral strip area (along a road), or a concentration of structures/facilities. The order includes all applicable

overlays and graphics. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. Contact is possible. The unit establishes communications with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with the standing operating procedures (SOP). The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The platoon supports tactical operations in the urban built-up area IAW the SOP, OPORD, and higher commander's guidance. The platoon task organizes according to mission needs and employs all available assets against the enemy to isolate and secure the objective(s). The unit complies with the ROE and ROI. No friendly unit suffers casualties or equipment damage as a result of fratricide.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Advise supported unit commander on capabilities and limitations of AAVs in urban terrain.
2. The platoon commander, in coordination with the supported infantry unit leaders, conducts a physical or map reconnaissance, based on METT-TC, of the routes to be used by the CO/TM in the built-up area.
3. Identify primary and supporting routes.
4. Identify approach routes to the built-up area.
5. Identify restrictive locations along the route that may provide ambush positions.
6. Identify dominating structures along the route.
7. Identify routes out of the built-up area.
8. Coordinate locations within the built-up area and along routes of movement for rally points.
9. Evaluate the situation, including the following factors: building types (including layout and construction materials); subsurface entry and exit points and avenues of approach; and requirements for special equipment and materials.
10. Task organize the platoon to support the needs of the CO/TM assault and breach forces (may require platoon to support tactical operations at the section level).
11. If time allows, conduct detailed rehearsals with infantry units to ensure understanding of tactical requirements, local security for AAVs, danger areas, AAV strengths and limitations in MOUT, ammunition performance, movement techniques, direct fire control and marking techniques, and CSS requirements etc.
12. The AAV platoon provides overwatch as the support force in order to protect the assault force during movement to the built-up area.
13. The AAV platoon utilizes UGWS and vehicle hulls to create breach holes into buildings for dismounted forces.
14. Employ AAVs in support by fire (SBF) positions to destroy or suppress any known enemy positions, and cover high-speed avenues of approach.
15. Use covered and concealed routes that do not mask friendly suppressive fires.
16. Establish sectors of fire and direct fire responsibilities for AAVs along the surface (ground, street, and water) level.
17. The CO/TM commander may direct the AAV platoon to conduct the following urban offensive operations: neutralize enemy positions with machine gun fire, destroy obstacles across streets, force entry of infantry into

- buildings, emplace supporting fires as directed by the infantry, and establish roadblocks and barricades.
18. The CO/TM commander may employ the AAV platoon for the following urban defensive operations: on the edge of the city in mutually supporting positions, on key terrain on the flanks of towns and villages, in positions from which they can cover barricades and obstacles by fire, and as part of the reserve.
 19. Monitor the flow of battle to prevent potential fratricide situations.
 20. Send updated SITREPs as necessary during the operation.
 21. AAV platoon consolidates and reorganizes to prepare for future missions.
 22. Treat and evacuate casualties; secure and process enemy prisoners of war (EPW), as required.
 23. Continue operations as directed.

RELATED EVENTS:

1833-TAC-2701 1803-CMDC-1210 1833-TAC-2704

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 3. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain (MOUT)
-

AAV-TAC-5734: Support Roadblock/Checkpoint Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: While conducting stability or support operations as part of a company/team (CO/TM), the platoon receives an OPORD/FRAGO to support a roadblock/checkpoint in conjunction with infantry elements. The platoon has translator support and the local police may assist in the operation of the roadblock/checkpoint. Required construction materials, tools and transportation assets are available. The platoon has guidance provided by the rules of engagement (ROE), status of forces agreement (SOFA), and rules of interaction (ROI). Civilians, governmental agencies, nongovernmental organizations (NGO), and local and international media may be present in the area. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The roadblock/checkpoint is supported at the established location and time specified in the OPORD/FRAGO. The platoon is prepared to use incremental force proportionate to the threat to support the roadblock/checkpoint. The platoon complies with the ROE/ROI, higher headquarters order, and any other applicable special orders.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Review and brief entire platoon on current situation, including: political/social climate among the local populace, behavior toward civilians, and applicable ROE/ROI.
2. Determine location, duration, and purpose of the roadblock/checkpoint.
3. Request civil police to conduct female searches with MP oversight, if possible.
4. Request additional assets required to establish and operate the

- roadblock/checkpoint.
5. Organize the platoon to support the roadblock/checkpoint, to include: vehicle search area, female search area, obstacle barriers, overwatch areas, reaction force, and detention areas.
 6. Establish communication signals to alert the platoon to civil disturbance or other hostile actions.
 7. Select most advantageous tactical site to support the roadblock/checkpoint.
 8. Position roadblock/checkpoint support elements in depth.
 9. Position support elements to channel traffic into the checkpoint (if applicable).
 10. Cover roadblock with observation and direct fire weapons.
 11. Platoon conducts rehearsals IAW SOP.
 12. Employ specific limitations on use of lethal force to stop a charging vehicle or fleeing pedestrian.
 13. Perform vehicle and personnel searches using approved methods.
 14. Conduct questioning and/or appropriate search.
 15. Conduct apprehension and detention of civilian personnel.
 16. Platoon maintains security for the roadblock/checkpoint.
 17. Position an element in concealed location at an appropriate distance from the roadblock/checkpoint to prevent escape of any vehicle or person attempting to turn back upon sighting the roadblock/checkpoint.
 18. Establish rest area for platoon personnel near the search area so platoon personnel can be assembled quickly as a reaction force.
 19. Develop measures for protecting platoon personnel from possible explosives.
 20. Ensure fields of fire of the close-in security element are not masked.
 21. Use sentries and patrols to prevent possible ambushes.
 22. Establish OPs as required to maintain observation of areas that could influence the roadblock/checkpoint.
 23. Ensure personnel do not deploy beyond the range of the platoon's quick reaction force (QRF) capability.
 24. Platoon reacts to hostile elements and/or actions IAW ROE/ROI/SOFA/SOP requirements.
 25. Fire warning shots to deter personnel or vehicles attempting to flee or breach the roadblock/checkpoint.
 26. Control fleeing civilians using minimum force as required.
 27. Use necessary force to disarm evading military or paramilitary forces.
 28. Attack to disable all vehicles attempting to flee or breach the roadblock/checkpoint.
 29. Destroy vehicles that return or initiate fires.
 30. Destroy vehicles that persist in attempting to flee or breach the roadblock/checkpoint.
 31. Administer first aid to casualties.
 32. Send SPOTREPs and SITREPs to higher headquarters as needed.

REFERENCES :

1. FM 3-06 Urban Operations
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. MCWP 3-33 Military Operations Other Than War (MOOTW)
5. MCWP 3-35.3 Military Operations on Urbanized Terrain (MOUT)
6. NAVMC 3500.87 Infantry Training & Readiness Manual

AA T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 5

COLLECTIVE TRAINING ASSAULT AMPHIBIAN SECTION & CREW

	<u>PARAGRAPH</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
PURPOSE.	5000	5-2
EVENT CODING	5001	5-2
ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES	5002	5-2
COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY	5003	5-2
INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS BY FUNCTIONAL AREA.	5004	5-5
SECTION LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS.	5005	5-6
CREW LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS	5006	5-13

AA T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 5

COLLECTIVE TRAINING ASSAULT AMPHIBIAN SECTION & CREW

5000. PURPOSE. This chapter contains all Section and Crew level Assault Amphibian unit events (4000 and 3000 Levels). Unit training managers can isolate all training relevant to sections and crews and devise training to support their competencies as needed.

5001. EVENT CODING. Events in the T&R manual are depicted with a 12 field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one - Each event starts with "AAV" indicating that the event is for units in the Assault Amphibian Occupational Field.

b. Field two - This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. Functional areas used at the Section and Crew level are:

GNNRY - Gunnery	CMDC - Command and Control
VOPS - Vehicle Operations	CBTS - Combat Support
CSS - Combat Service Support	AMPH - Amphibious Operations
TAC - Tactical Operations	

c. Field three - This field provides unit level at which the event is accomplished and numerical sequencing.

5002. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES. Each Event may contain a paragraph that describes internal and external Support Requirements the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. Ranges/Training Areas are described in this section with plain-language description. They are also described using the Range/Facility Codes that identify the type of range and/or training area needed to accomplish the Event. Marines can use the codes to find information about available ranges at their geographic location by using the web-based Range/Training Area Management System (see TECOM website). Ultimate use of the Range/Training Area Code is to relate ranges to readiness by identifying those Events that cannot be accomplished at a certain location due to lack of ranges.

5003. COLLECTIVE DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY

1. **Assault Amphibian Section.** The mission of the Assault Amphibian (AA) section is to provide combat support to the infantry rifle platoon. The AA section consists of three AAV crews and is led by the AA section leader. He exercises tactical control of his AAVs under the command of the AA platoon commander. Additionally, an AA section may be utilized for supporting units such as the 81mm mortar platoon or an engineer platoon.

- a. Provide fire support and maneuverability for supported unit.
- b. Conduct amphibious operations.
- c. Conduct mechanized operations.
- d. Conduct offensive operations.
- e. Conduct defensive operations.
- f. Employ AA section fires.
- g. Operate in an NBC environment.

2. **Assault Amphibian Section, Command.** The mission of the AA command section is to provide battalion and regimental level staffs with a mechanized command center. The AA command section also provides mutual support for the AAVC7A1 with a secondary vehicle for security and logistical support. The AA command section consists of AAVP7A1/RAM RS and AAVC7A1 vehicles.

- a. Establish AAVC7A1 as command post.
- b. Conduct amphibious operations.
- c. Conduct mechanized operations.
- d. Conduct defensive operations.
- e. Operate in an NBC environment.
- f. Employ AA command section fires.

3. **Assault Amphibian Section, Mine Countermeasure Platoon.** The mission of the AA Mine Countermeasure Section (MCM) is to provide breaching capability to the breach commander. The AA MCM section consists of four AAVP7A1/RAM RS vehicles with crews broken into two teams. The MCM section is lead by the AA MCM section leader.

- a. Conduct breaching operations.
- b. Conduct amphibious operations.
- c. Conduct mechanized operations.
- d. Conduct defensive operations.
- e. Operate in an NBC environment.
- f. Employ AA section fires.

4. **AAV Crew, AAVP7A1/RAM RS.** The mission of the AAVP7A1/RAM RS crew is to support the reinforced infantry squad within the mission of the AA section. The AAV crew is comprised of three personnel: the vehicle crew chief and two crewmen. The AAV crew operates the AAVP7A1. The crew is lead by the vehicle crew chief and operates under the direction of the AA section leader.

- a. Operate the AAV on land and in water with vehicles in section.
- b. Transport embarked personnel and cargo.
- c. Employ the Uppgunned Weapon Station.
- d. Perform PMCS on vehicle.
- e. Operate in an NBC environment.

5. **AAV Crew, AAVP7A1/RAM RS.** The mission of the AAVC7A1 crew is to support the battalion and regimental level headquarters as a mechanized command echelon/fire support coordination center. The AAVC7A1 intercommunications assets provide the embarked troop commander and his staff with the capability to communicate with each other and to remotely operate radio assets from staff positions within the vehicle. The AAVC7A1 weapon is primarily for self-defense. The AAVC7A1 crew is comprised of three personnel: the vehicle crew chief and two crewmen, and is augmented by a communication technician Marine. The crew is lead by the crew chief and operates under the direction of the AA command section leader.

- a. Operate the AAVC7A1 on land and in water with vehicles in section.
- b. Operate the AAVC7A1 communications equipment.
- c. Employ the M240G medium machine gun.
- d. Perform PMCS on vehicle.
- e. Perform PMCS on communications equipment.
- f. Operate in an NBC environment.

6. **AAV Crew, MK 154 LMC Mod 0 Kit.** The mission of the AAVP7A1, with MK 154 LMC Mod 0 kit, crew is to provide breaching capability for the AA Mine countermeasure (MCM) Section. The AAV crew operates the AAVP7A1/RAM RS with the MK 154 LMC Mod 0 kit. The crew is comprised of three personnel: the vehicle crew chief and two crewmen. The crew is lead by the vehicle crew chief and operates under the direction of the AA MCM section leader.

- a. Operate the AAV on land and in water with vehicles in section.
- b. Employ the MK 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System.
- c. Employ the Uppgunned Weapon Station.
- d. Perform PMCS on vehicle.
- e. Perform PMCS on MK-154 LMC Mod 0 equipment.
- f. Operate in an NBC environment.

5004. INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS BY FUNCTIONAL AREA

Event Code	Eval Code	Event	Page
AAV-CMDC-4201		Conduct Command Section Operations	5-6
AAV-VOPS-4301		Tow Start an AAV	5-6
AAV-VOPS-4302		Tow AAV on Land	5-7
AAV-VOPS-4303		Recover Disabled AAV	5-8
AAV-AMPH-4601		Conduct Evacuation of Personnel from Disabled/ Sinking AAV	5-9
AAV-AMPH-4602		Recover Disabled AAV in the Water Using Other AAVs	5-10
AAV-TAC-4701		Conduct a Route Reconnaissance	5-11
AAV-TAC-4702		Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization	5-12
AAV-CMDC-3201		Control Radio Communications	5-13
AAV-VOPS-3301		Conduct Hasty Demolition of an Assault Amphibious Vehicle (AAV) to Prevent Enemy Use	5-13
AAV-VOPS-3302		Start an Assault Amphibious Vehicle (AAV) Engine From Outside Power Source	5-14
AAV-VOPS-3303		Operate an Assault Amphibious Vehicle (AAV) on Land	5-15
AAV-VOPS-3304		Evacuate Wounded Crewmember from Each Crew Station	5-16
AAV-VOPS-3305		Employ Terrain Driving Techniques	5-16
AAV-CBTS-3401		Employ the MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System	5-17
AAV-CSS-3501		Refuel an Assault Amphibious Vehicle (AAV)	5-18
AAV-AMPH-3601	Yes	Perform Assault Amphibious Vehicle (AAV) Crew Water Operations Qualification	5-19
AAV-AMPH-3602	Yes	Operate an Assault Amphibious Vehicle (AAV) in Water	5-20
AAV-AMPH-3603		Conduct Emergency Procedures Afloat	5-21
AAV-TAC-3701		Displace to Alternate/Supplementary Positions	5-22

5005. SECTION LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

AAV-CMDC-4201: Conduct Command Section Operations

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian section is conducting operations as part of a higher headquarters. Section personnel are monitoring the situation and receive an order to conduct a tactical operation. The order includes all applicable overlays and graphics. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The command section coordinates and directs mobility and communications support during tactical operations in accordance with the standing operating procedures, OPORD, and higher commander's intent.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Chase vehicle provides Command Section security.
2. Assist in establishing mobile COC.
3. Assist supported unit staff and commander to task organize AAVC7A1 and chase vehicle.
4. Employ medium machinegun.
5. Assist supported unit staff and commander to communicate with AAVC7A1 communication equipment.

CHAINED EVENTS:

AAV-CMDC-3201

RELATED EVENTS:

1833-CMDC-2202

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

AAV-VOPS-4301: Tow Start an AAV

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian section is conducting tactical operations and is required to tow start a disabled AAV. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit successfully tow starts the AAV in accordance with METT-TC factors, the references, and without injury to personnel. The section maintains situational awareness by monitoring communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct preoperations checks on both vehicles.
2. Prepare the disabled vehicle for tow starting.
3. The tow bar or cables are connected to the bow of the disabled vehicle and the stern of the towing vehicle at the towing eyes.
4. The disabled vehicle is towed at the prescribed speed on a level surface until it starts.
5. When vehicle starts, signal towing vehicle and bring both vehicles to halt.
6. Disconnect tow bar or tow cables.
7. Engage hydrostatic steer unit.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

AAV-VOPS-4302

CHAINED EVENTS:

AAV-VOPS-3303 AAV-VOPS-3301

RELATED EVENTS:

1803-VOPS-1311 1833-VOPS-2302

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

AAV-VOPS-4302: Tow AAV on Land

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian section is conducting tactical operations and is required to tow a disabled AAV. The disabled AAV is capable of being towed and two AAVs or a recovery vehicle capable of towing are present. All crews, tow bars, and collateral equipment are available. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit successfully tows the AAV in accordance with METT-TC factors, the references, and without injury to personnel. The section maintains situational awareness by monitoring communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Connect the tow bar to the forward towing eyes of disabled vehicle and to tow pintle of tow vehicle.
2. When using tow cables, connect one end of the tow cable to the forward

- towing eye of disabled vehicle. Cross connect the other end of the tow cable to aft towing eye of tow vehicle.
3. If brakes on towing vehicle are not working, use a third vehicle connected to the rear of the disabled vehicle to aid in stopping the disabled vehicle.
 4. When towing a vehicle equipped with a bow plane on land, the bow plane must be fully retracted. If the bow plane cannot be retracted from the driver's station, it should be removed from the vehicle before attaching tow cables or tow bar.
 5. Disengage hydrostatic steering unit of disabled vehicle by pulling lever outboard, then aft.
 6. Disengage power takeoff by pulling lever outboard, then forward.
 7. Have organizational maintenance disconnect final drive universal joints.

CHAINED EVENTS:

AAV-VOPS-3305 AAV-VOPS-3303

RELATED EVENTS:

1803-VOPS-1311 1833-VOPS-2302

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS

AAV-VOPS-4303: Recover Disabled AAV

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian section is conducting tactical operations and is required to recover a disabled AAV. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit successfully recovers the AAV in accordance with METT-TC factors, the references, and without injury to personnel. The section maintains situational awareness by monitoring communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Reconnoiter area, establish security as necessary.
2. Estimate the situation.
3. Compute an estimated mechanical advantage for the rigging.
4. Compute the tackle resistance and total resistance.
5. Verify the solution.
6. Orient the personnel and instruct them to assemble the rigging and then move to a safe location.
7. Recheck rigging.
8. Conduct recovery.
9. Tow disabled AAV.

CHAINED EVENTS:

AAV-VOPS-3302

RELATED EVENTS:

1803-VOPS-1311 1833-VOPS-2302

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
 3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
-

AAV-AMPH-4601: Conduct Evacuation of Personnel from Disabled/Sinking AAV

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 5, 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 3 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian section is conducting water operations when an AAV becomes disabled. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The section conducts emergency procedures afloat in accordance with standing operating procedures (SOP), the appropriate references, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The disabled AAV is abandoned and all personnel are embarked onto rescue AAV with no safety incidents.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Disabled/sinking AAV alerts unit of distress.
2. Move rescue AAV to disabled/sinking AAV and hold station to begin evacuation.
3. Evacuate and transfer personnel from disabled/sinking AAV.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

AAV-AMPH-3603

CHAINED EVENTS:

AAV-AMPH-3603 AAV-VOPS-3304

RELATED EVENTS:

1833-VOPS-2302

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White St	1 per crew
L311 Signal, Illumination Ground Red Star	1 per crew

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

AAV-AMPH-4602: Recover Disabled AAV in the Water Using Other AAVs

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 3 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian section is conducting water operations when an AAV becomes disabled. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The section conducts maintenance and recovery support in accordance with standing operating procedures (SOP), the appropriate references, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The disabled AAV is towed to beach or amphibious shipping with no safety incidents.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Crew chief of the disabled AAV completes preparation for towing.
2. Disabled vehicle retracts the bow plane.
3. Driver of towing AAV positions the rescue vehicle in front of the disabled AAV.
4. Crewman hooks two toelines to the sea tow quick release and through the mooring cleats on towing vehicle.
5. Crewchief of the disabled AAV directs his crew to hook the other end of towing lines to mooring cleats on his vehicle.
6. A crewman is stationed at the ramp of the towing vehicle to observe the towed vehicle through the rear vision block.
7. Hatches of both vehicles are secured prior to beginning towing.
8. Vehicle is towed to the high water mark on the beach before releasing the towing lines and attaching the tow cable.
9. Towing lines are removed and tow cables or a tow bar is properly employed to tow the vehicle.
10. Pull sea tow quick-release in the event that the disabled vehicle begins to sink.

CHAINED EVENTS:

AAV-AMPH-3603

RELATED EVENTS:

1833-VOPS-2302

REFERENCES :

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 3. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

AAV-TAC-4701: Conduct a Route Reconnaissance

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian section is conducting tactical operations as the lead element of a larger force and receives an OPORD and supporting overlays to conduct a route reconnaissance. Threat security forces are operating in the area of operations. The unit establishes communications with subordinate, adjacent, and higher headquarters, and is passing information in accordance with (IAW) the standing operating procedure (SOP). Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit collects and reports information on decisive and key terrain and threat forces (squad size or greater), and reconnoiters the assigned route and lateral routes. The unit reports all route information and retains freedom to maneuver.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Assess the serviceability of tunnels, bridges, and fording sites along the route.
2. Assess any key or decisive terrain dominating the route.
3. Report all control points and major events as they develop.
4. Upon return to the supported unit, prepare a route reconnaissance overlay and a compilation of all site surveys conducted.
5. Issue a warning order to the unit upon receipt of the order.
6. Conduct mission analysis.
7. Request any additional information or assets not originally provided in the OPORD.
8. Coordinate with the unit directing the route reconnaissance for frequencies and call signs, pass words, recognition signals, fire support, MEDEVACS, threat information, and passage of friendly lines prior to conducting the reconnaissance.
9. Brief the unit on the mission.
10. Pass the start point (SP) at the designated time, reporting to the supported unit.
11. Assess the trafficability of the route to all classes of vehicles and personnel in accordance with the engineering reports format.

CHAINED EVENTS:

AAV-VOPS-3303

RELATED EVENTS:

1833-CMDC-2217

1833-CMDC-1209

1803-CMDC-1218

1803-CMDC-1210

1803-CMDC-1221

REFERENCES :

1. FM 3-20.98 Reconnaissance Platoon
 2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 3. MCRP 4-11.3F Convoy Operations Handbook
 4. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
-

AAV-TAC-4702: Conduct Consolidation and Reorganization

SUPPORTED MET(S): 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian section is conducting tactical operations as part of a company/team (CO/TM) and either gains an objective or repels an assault on a defensive position. The enemy is defeated and the unit restores defensive positions. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit destroys, captures, or forces all enemy to withdraw and completes consolidation and reorganization within one hour and sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The section maintains situational awareness by monitoring FM communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Establish a hasty defense with security elements.
2. Assess the combat power of each element from the reports submitted.
3. Analyze future follow on operations.
4. Replace key leaders and reestablish the chain of command.
5. Task organize the remaining forces for future operations.
6. Conduct recovery and resupply to include immediate cross leveling of ammunition, supplies, and fuel to provide minimum basic loads an all vehicles.
7. Evacuate friendly and enemy personnel as necessary.
8. Process all captured documents.
9. Destroy or capture any remaining organized resistance to include enemy combat vehicles or drive the enemy from the sector and any key terrain.

RELATED EVENTS:

1833-TAC-2704	1833-CMDC-2217	1803-VOPS-1318
1803-CMDC-1221	1833-CMDC-2202	

REFERENCES :

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

5006. CREW LEVEL COLLECTIVE EVENTS

AAV-CMDC-3201: Control Radio Communications

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 3 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian Crew is conducting operations independently or as part of a higher headquarters. All necessary personnel and communications or data transfer equipment are available. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit controls communications in accordance with standing operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The crew establishes, maintains, and monitors communications systems to support unit operations.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. All elements have the authorized SC frequency, frequency hopping (FH) data and COMSEC instructions input into their radios.
2. Perform NCS duties and open the net.
3. Update FH data using electronic remote fill (ERF), as needed.
4. Conduct late net entry, as needed.
5. Enforce standard radio procedures.
6. Coordinate with supported unit or supported unit communications officer for call signs and frequencies.
7. Distribute daily call signs and frequencies to all stations on net.
8. Establish self as net control, authorizing stations to become operational on net using AAV unit organic communications equipment.
9. Enforce listening silence.
10. Recognize electronic countermeasures (ECM) and implement electronic counter countermeasures (ECCM) under the guidance of the communications officer.

RELATED EVENTS:

1833-CMDC-2202

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
2. MCRP 6-22C Radio Operator's Handbook
3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS

AAV-VOPS-3301: Conduct Hasty Demolition of an Assault Amphibious Vehicle (AAV) to Prevent Enemy Use

SUPPORTED MET(S): 5, 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian crew is conducting tactical operations and is ordered to conduct hasty demolition of a disabled AAV. Enemy contact is expected. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The crew successfully completes hasty demolition of AAV in 15 minutes and METT-TC factors. The crew maintains situational awareness by monitoring communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Establish local security around disabled AAV.
2. Determine amount of time available to conduct repair or salvage operations.
3. If speed is essential or enemy pressure is present prepare vehicle for hasty demolition by: removing all wounded and dead personnel from vehicle, removing any personal weapons and equipment, open ramp and cargo hatches, disable fire suppression system, and clear all radios if time permits.
4. Have all personnel and vehicles move at least 500 meters from disabled AAV.
5. Have designated vehicle(s) fire salvo of MK-19 40mm rounds into troop compartment or throw incendiary hand grenade until onboard ammunition and fuel ignite or explode.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
G900 Grenade, Hand Incendiary Thermite AN	3 per crew

AAV-VOPS-3302: Start an Assault Amphibious Vehicle (AAV) Engine From Outside Power Source

SUPPORTED MET(S): 5, 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian crew is conducting tactical operations and is required to start a disabled AAV from an outside power source. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The crew successfully starts the AAV in accordance with METT-TC factors, the references, and without injury to personnel. The crew maintains situational awareness by monitoring communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. The power source is positioned so that it can reach the disabled AAV with its slave cable.
2. The crew of the disabled AAV checks the reverse polarity indicator light and activates the reset button on the power distribution box.
3. The crew attempts to start the disabled AAV with operational power source operating.
4. With AAV engine operating, the crews disconnect the slave cable and prepare for operations.
5. The disabled AAV is prepared for slave starting.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

AAV-VOPS-3303: Operate an Assault Amphibious Vehicle (AAV) on Land

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 4, 5, 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian crew is conducting tactical operations and is required to operate an AAV on land. All personnel and equipment are available. Enemy contact is possible. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit successfully operates the AAV in accordance with METT-TC factors, the references, and without injury to personnel. The crew maintains control of the vehicle at all times, applies emergency procedures when necessary, and continuously observes the forward terrain for possible enemy targets and likely friendly firing positions. The crew maintains situational awareness by monitoring communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Verify that all cargo is tied down for travel.
2. Check operating systems to ensure vehicle is functioning properly.
3. Perform during operations checks.
4. Observe driving cautions.
5. Perform during operation checks.
6. Perform after operations checks.
7. Perform pre-operations checks.
8. Verify that all personnel are properly seated and wearing helmets and flak jackets.
9. Verify that all hatches are properly secured: ramp is up and dogged; turret, driver, and troop commander hatches are secured; and cargo hatches are secured.
10. Drive the AAV on land.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management

2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

AAV-VOPS-3304: Evacuate Wounded Crewmember from Each Crew Station

SUPPORTED MET(S): 5, 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian crew is conducting tactical operations when a vehicle crewman is wounded. Enemy contact is expected to continue. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The crew successfully evacuates the crewman in accordance with METT-TC factors and the references. The crew maintains control of the vehicle at all times, applies emergency procedures when necessary, and continuously observes the forward terrain for possible enemy targets and likely friendly firing positions. The crew maintains situational awareness by monitoring communications. The wounded crewman is evacuated and receives the appropriate level of medical care. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Stop the vehicle in a covered and concealed position.
2. Determine the extent of the crewman's injuries, administer first aid, and stabilize him.
3. Determine the best method for evacuating the wounded crewmember, either up and through the hatch or down and through the troop compartment.
4. If evacuating him up and through a hatch, have a second crewmember assist from below, while using the helo lifting strap on the crewman's uniform to raise him clear of the hatch. Lower him over the side of the vehicle to the second crewmen waiting to assist.
5. Move the injured crewman to a covered position and continue first aid as appropriate.
6. Evacuate the injured crewman to casualty collection point or call in medevac based on operational situation.

RELATED EVENTS:

1803-TAC-2702

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

AAV-VOPS-3305: Employ Terrain Driving Techniques

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 5, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian crew is conducting tactical operations and is required to operate an AAV on land. The crew employs terrain driving techniques. All personnel and equipment are available. Enemy contact is possible. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit successfully employs terrain driving techniques in accordance with METT-TC factors, the references, and without injury to personnel. The crew maintains control of the vehicle at all times, applies emergency procedures when necessary, and continuously observes the forward terrain for possible enemy targets and likely friendly firing positions. The crew maintains situational awareness by monitoring communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Scan the ground for disturbed earth or out-of-place features that may indicate mines.
2. Use covered and concealed routes.
3. Minimize dust signature.
4. Maintain appropriate interval between vehicles.
5. Avoid silhouetting the vehicles.
6. The AAV crew reverses out of vehicle positions to avoid detection.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
-

AAV-CBTS-3401: Employ the MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 4, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The Mine Countermeasures Crew is conducting offensive operations as part of a company/team (CO/TM). The CO/TM encounters an obstacle that must be breached to complete the mission. The crew is task organized as part of the breach force with other CO/TM elements assigned as the support and assault forces. The unit is ordered to operate the MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System in support of a deliberate breach. Engineer support is not available. The obstacle is under enemy observation and within range of enemy fire. Reconnaissance of the obstacle is completed and breach site(s) selected. Smoke is employed to obscure enemy observation of the obstacle. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The unit moves along covered and concealed routes to the breach site and employs MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System through the obstacle. The unit sustains no personnel or equipment losses due to friendly fire. The unit maintains situational awareness and FM communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Crew removes MK 154 Launcher.

2. Crew performs preventive maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System.
3. Crew installs MK 154 Launcher, Mine Clearance System on AAVP7A1/RAM RS.
4. Crew conducts operational checks of MK 154 Launcher, Mine Clearance System.
5. Crew loads line charges on MK 154 Launcher.
6. Crew operates MK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System.
7. Crew conducts immediate actions for failure of the rocket motor to deploy.
8. Crew conducts immediate actions for failure of the line charge to detonate.
9. Crew unloads line charges from MK 154 Launcher.
10. Crew dismounts MK 22 Rocket Motors, MOD 4 from MK 154 Launcher.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 09962A-10/1 Operating Instruction Charts MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
J143 Rocket Motor, 5-inch MK22 Mod 4	3 per crew

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17710 Multipurpose Training Range (MPTR)

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This event is applicable to Mine Countermeasures vehicles.

AAV-CSS-3501: Refuel an Assault Amphibious Vehicle (AAV)

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 5, 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian crew is conducting operations as part of a company/team (CO/TM) and requires refueling in order to continue the mission. All necessary crew personnel and equipment are available. The crew has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The crew successfully completes refueling operations and maintains security at a level consistent with METT-TC factors. The crew maintains situational awareness by monitoring communications. Time required to plan and implement is increased when operating in MOPP 4.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct service station refueling.

2. Conduct tailgate refueling.
3. All local safety requirements are observed at the refueling point.
4. The vehicle is ground guided from the fuel source and prepared for further service.

REFERENCES :

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 3. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

AAV-AMPH-3601: Perform Assault Amphibious Vehicle (AAV) Crew Water Operations Qualification

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 3 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian crew is conducting water operations from amphibious shipping. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The crew follows all orders from the Wave Commander and conducts three launches, to include at least 1 static launch and 1 underway launch and a launch of either type. All qualifications result in safe waterborne operation of the AAV from launch from amphibious shipping to landing on shore, in accordance with standing operating procedures (SOP), the appropriate references, the order, and higher commander's guidance.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Prepare AAV for debarkation from amphibious shipping.
2. Debark from amphibious shipping in accordance with guidance from ship's well-deck personnel.
3. Conduct static launch from amphibious shipping in accordance with guidance from ship's well-deck personnel.
4. Conduct underway launch from amphibious shipping during daylight in accordance with guidance from ship's well-deck personnel.
5. Conduct underway launch from amphibious shipping during darkness in accordance with guidance from ship's well-deck personnel.
6. Operate AAV in the Water.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

AAV-AMPH-3602

REFERENCES :

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. Credit for completion of this event may be given by a commanding officer.
 2. Evaluation for event must come from qualified evaluator outside chain of command.
 3. The AAV crew will not get credit until all components are completed.
-

AAV-AMPH-3602: Operate an Assault Amphibious Vehicle (AAV) in Water

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3, 5

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 3 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian crew is conducting water operations. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The vehicle has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The crew follows all orders from the Wave Commander resulting in safe waterborne operation of the AAV from launch from amphibious shipping to landing on shore, in accordance with standing operating procedures (SOP), the appropriate references, the order, and higher commander's guidance.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Perform pre-water operations checks and services.
2. Prepare the vehicle for waterborne operation.
3. On signal from the Splash Team or well-deck personnel, drive the AAV into the water.
4. Open hatches at the discretion of the vehicle commander.
5. Deploy the bow plane.
6. Drive the AAV through the water; employ the track drive in addition to the water drive according to hydrography of the area.
7. Operate the vehicle in the reverse and pivot modes.
8. Retract the bow plane when approaching the ship, surf zone, or landing beach.
9. Drive the AAV out of the water.
10. Conduct after operations checks and services.

RELATED EVENTS:

1833-CMDC-2202

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White St	1 per crew
L311 Signal, Illumination Ground Red Star	1 per crew

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

AAV-AMPH-3603: Conduct Emergency Procedures Afloat

SUPPORTED MET(S): 3

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 3 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian crew is conducting water operations when the AAV becomes disabled. All necessary unit personnel and equipment are available. The unit has communications with higher, adjacent, and subordinate elements. The unit is provided guidance on the rules of engagement (ROE) and rules of interaction (ROI). Coalition forces and noncombatants may be present in the operational environment. Some iterations of this task are conducted during limited visibility conditions. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The crew conducts emergency procedures afloat in accordance with standing operating procedures (SOP), the appropriate references, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The disabled AAV is abandoned with no safety incidents.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Conduct the procedures for a disabled AAV in the water.
2. Conduct the procedures for a sinking AAV.

RELATED EVENTS:

1833-VOPS-2302

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
L312 Signal, Illumination Ground White St	1 per crew
L311 Signal, Illumination Ground Red Star	1 per crew

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

AAV-TAC-3701: Displace to Alternate/Supplementary Positions

SUPPORTED MET(S): 2, 6, 7

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

CONDITION: The Assault Amphibian crew is conducting tactical operations and is defending a battle position (BP). The unit is ordered to move from a defensive position to another position that accomplishes the same or different mission. Some iterations of this task are performed in limited visibility. Some iterations of this task are performed in MOPP 4.

STANDARD: The crew displaces positions in accordance with standing operating procedures, the order, and higher commander's guidance. The crew receives guidance from higher headquarters whether it will be assisted in the displacement/withdrawal. The crew executes the displacement and moves all equipment and personnel to the designated position. All supplies and equipment that cannot be evacuated are destroyed and all EPWs and casualties are evacuated.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. Establish alternate/supplementary positions to include range card and fire sketch, marking the position for use in day or night, and rehearsing movement to the position.
2. Displace to alternate/supplementary positions in accordance with disengagement criteria established in the OPORD/FRAGO.

RELATED EVENTS:

1833-TAC-1703

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS

AA T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 6

INDIVIDUAL EVENTS MOS 1803

	<u>PARAGRAPH</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
PURPOSE.	6000	6-2
EVENT CODING	6001	6-2
ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES	6002	6-2
PREREQUISITES.	6003	6-2
BILLET DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITIES	6004	6-3
INDEX OF EVENTS BY LEVEL	6005	6-8
1000-LEVEL 1803 INDIVIDUAL EVENTS.	6006	6-9
2000-LEVEL 1803 INDIVIDUAL EVENTS.	6007	6-85

AA T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 6

INDIVIDUAL EVENTS MOS 1803

6000. PURPOSE. The purpose of 1000-level training is to provide the knowledge and skills required to perform as an Assault Amphibious Vehicle (AAV) Officer. 2000-level events are Core Plus events, with initial training settings of either MOJT or through resident/distance learning PME.

6001. EVENT CODING. Events in the T&R Manual are depicted with a 12 field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one - Each event in this chapter begins with "1803" indicating that the event is for AAV Officers.

b. Field two - This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. Functional areas for AAV Officers are:

GNNRY - Gunnery	CMDC - Command and Control
VOPS - Vehicle Operations	CBTS - Combat Support
CSS - Combat Service Support	AMPH - Amphibious Operations
TAC - Tactical Operation	

c. Field three - This field provides numerical sequencing.

6002. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES. Each Event may contain a paragraph that describes internal and external Support Requirements the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. Ranges/Training Areas are described in this section with plain-language description. They are also described using the Range/Facility Codes that identify the type of range and/or training area needed to accomplish the Event. Marines can use the codes to find information about available ranges at their geographic location by using the web-based Range/Training Area Management System (see TECOM website). Ultimate use of the Range/Training Area Code is to relate ranges to readiness by identifying those Events that cannot be accomplished at a certain location due to lack of ranges.

6003. PREREQUISITES. The Marine AAV Officer will have completed The Basic School (TBS), Quantico, VA and Assault Amphibian Officer Course, Assault Amphibian School, Camp Pendleton, CA.

6004. BILLET DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITIES

CAREER PROGRESSION PHILOSOPHY. The AAV Officer will complete the Assault Amphibian Officer Course, Assault Amphibian School, Camp Pendleton, CA. Upon graduation, the AAV Officer will conduct additional Level 2000 training in an Assault Amphibian unit in a variety of billets. Level 2 training continues through completion of Career, Intermediate, and Advanced Level Professional Military Education (PME), available through resident, seminar and distance learning courses.

BILLET: Assault Amphibian Platoon Commander. Responsible for the vehicles and crews in an AA platoon. When he is the senior AA officer assigned to an infantry battalion, he also serves as a special staff officer to the infantry battalion commander. The primary duty of the AA platoon commander is to advise the infantry company commander on the use of AAVs in support of the assigned mission. The AA platoon commander directs the maneuver and fires of his platoon in accordance with the intent of the infantry company commander. The AA platoon commander occupies the weapon station of the AAV that is utilized by the infantry company commander as his command vehicle. During water operations the AA platoon commander maintains control of the tactical movement of the AA unit.

Core Capabilities

1. Responsible for the training and supervision of platoon personnel in the performance of tasks which support company training objectives.
2. Responsible for the welfare and discipline of his platoon.
3. Makes operational planning recommendations to the supported unit commander on the employment of AA unit.
4. Manages the preventative maintenance and corrective maintenance efforts on all vehicles and all associated collateral equipment.
5. Employs proper movement techniques and formations.
6. Employs operational safety procedures.
7. Employs vehicle and unit fires in support of mission and in self-defense.
8. Advises supported unit commander on logistical requirements of AA unit.
9. Coordinates with Naval personnel for the employment of AA unit with amphibious shipping.
10. Leads AA platoon and embarked personnel in amphibious operations.

BILLET: Assault Amphibian Mine Countermeasure Platoon Commander.

Responsible for the vehicles and crews in the AA Mine Countermeasure (MCM) platoon. The MCM platoon commander supports the Ground Combat Element with breaching capability. The MCM platoon commander leads two sections of Marines that crew AAVP7A1/RAM RSs with and without MK 154 LMC Mod 0 kits.

Core Capabilities

1. Responsible for the training and supervision of platoon personnel in the performance of tasks which support company training objectives.
2. Responsible for the welfare and discipline of his platoon.
3. Manages the preventative maintenance and corrective maintenance efforts of vehicles and associated collateral equipment.
4. Advises supported unit commander on employment of unit and MK 154 Mod 0.
5. Employs operational safety procedures.
6. Advises supported unit commander on logistical requirements of AA unit.
7. Coordinates with Naval personnel for the employment of AA unit with amphibious shipping.

BILLET: AA Company Executive Officer. Second most senior 1803 in the AA company. Assumes command in commander's absence.

Core Capabilities

1. Makes operational planning recommendations to company commander on unit training and operations.
2. Coordinates and supervises unit training and operations.
3. Coordinates range operations.
4. Coordinates unit logistical support and requirements.
5. Trains AA platoon commanders in performance of duties.
6. Coordinates, conducts, and supervises ancillary training events.

BILLET: AA Company Commander. The AA company commander works for the commanding officer of the supported infantry regiment or battalion and becomes a special staff officer to the supported infantry commander. The AA company commander leads one or more AA platoons and a maintenance platoon. He is responsible for all vehicle maintenance and all associated collateral gear including additional support equipment.

Core Capabilities

1. Directs the logistics support organic to the AA company in support of his AAVs.
2. Responsible for the welfare and discipline of his company.
3. Advises the supported unit commander on the employment of AA unit.

4. Advises the supported unit commander on logistical and maintenance requirements for AA unit.
5. Employs operational safety procedures.
6. Trains and supervises platoon personnel in the performance of tasks which support battalion training objectives.
7. Responsible for overall preventative and corrective maintenance efforts of vehicles and associated collateral equipment.
8. Coordinates with Naval personnel for the employment of AA unit with amphibious shipping.

BILLET: Headquarters and Service Company Commander. The headquarters and service (H&S) company commander provides the AA battalion commander the means to effect command and control of the battalion. Through his subordinate platoons and sections, the H&S company commander provides maintenance, communications, administrative, medical, supply, and other service support functions to the AA battalion commander.

Core Capabilities

1. Serves as headquarters commandant for AA battalion.
2. Advises the supported unit commander on the employment of AA unit.
3. Advises the supported unit commander on logistical requirements for AA unit.
4. Employs operational safety procedures.
5. Responsible for the overall preventative maintenance and corrective maintenance efforts of vehicles and associated collateral equipment.
6. Coordinates with Naval personnel for the employment of AA unit with amphibious shipping.
7. Supervises maintenance related activities of AA unit.
8. Maintains the welfare and discipline of a company.
9. Coordinates the staff sections in the performance of tasks that support battalion training objectives.

BILLET: Assistant Operations Officer. Junior 1803 officer in battalion operations section. Assists operations officer in duties.

Core Capabilities:

1. Serves as watch officer in battalion COC.
2. Assists the operations officer in supervising unit and personnel training.

3. Assists the operations officer with coordinating with naval personnel for amphibious operations.
4. Monitors the battalion TEEP.

BILLET: Battalion Operations Officer. Field grade or senior company grade officer responsible for coordinating all battalion training and operations with a section of Marines to assist in accomplishing the battalion commander's intent.

Core Capabilities:

1. Assumes staff responsibility for organization, training and tactical operations of an assault amphibian battalion.
2. Responsible for planning, coordinating, and supervising tactical aspects of logistical support of units.
3. Responsible for determining priorities for allocation of personnel, weapons, equipment and ammunition.
4. Makes operational planning recommendations to the battalion commander.
5. Coordinates with Naval personnel for the employment of AA unit with amphibious shipping.

BILLET: Battalion Logistics Officer. Field grade or senior company grade officer responsible for coordinating all battalion logistical requirements and operations with a section of Marines to assist in accomplishing the battalion commander's intent.

Core Capabilities

1. Assumes staff responsibility for determining logistical requirements, support, and operations for an AA battalion.
2. Responsible for planning, coordinating, and supervising logistical support of AA units.
3. Makes operational planning recommendations to the battalion commander.
4. Coordinates with Naval personnel for embarkation of AA unit with amphibious shipping.

BILLET: Battalion Executive Officer. Second most senior 1803 officer in the battalion. Assumes command in battalion commander's absence. Responsible for managing and coordinating the battalion staff and administrative tasks.

Core Capabilities

1. Coordinates all actions of the battalion staff.
2. Supervises staff planning process.

3. Ensures battalion reports are made as required to higher and adjacent commanders.
4. Maintains information flow to battalion commander.

BILLET: Battalion Commanding Officer. The AA battalion commander serves as a special staff officer to the Commanding General of the Marine Division. The battalion commander also directs the maintenance and logistic trains organic to the battalion to support operations as directed by the Commanding General of the Marine Division. The assault amphibian battalion has the ability to function as a maneuver element headquarters when provided augmentation from higher headquarters.

Core Capabilities

1. Advises supported unit commander on employment of AA unit.
2. Responsible for the vehicle preventive and corrective maintenance.
3. Responsible for the training of personnel in the performance of tasks which support division training objectives.
4. Advises the supported unit commander on logistical requirements for AA unit.
5. Responsible for the welfare and discipline of the battalion.
6. Advises the supported unit commander on logistical requirements for AA unit.
7. Directs organic combat training and logistical operations in support of subordinate units.
8. Leads assault amphibian battalion as an independent maneuver element.

6005. INDEX OF EVENTS BY LEVEL

Event Code	Eval Code	Event	Page
		1000 LEVEL	
1803-GNRY-1101		Gunnery related individual events	6-9
1803-GNRY-1135			6-39
1803-CMDC-1201		Command and Control individual events	6-40
1803-CMDC-1227			6-57
1803-VOPS-1301		Assault Amphibious Vehicle (AAV) Operations individual events	6-57
1803-VOPS-1319			6-70
1803-CBTS-1400		No entries for Combat Support individual events	No Entry
1803-CSS-1501		Combat Service Support individual events	6-70
1803-CSS-1504			6-72
1803-AMPH-1601		Amphibious Operations individual events	6-73
1803-AMPH-1608			6-80
1803-TAC-1701		Tactical Operations individual events	6-80
1803-TAC-1706			6-84
		2000 LEVEL	
1803-GNRY-2100		No entries for gunnery related individual events	No Entry
1803-CMDC-2201		Command and Control individual events	6-85
1803-CMDC-2206			6-88
1803-VOPS-2301		Assault Amphibious Vehicle (AAV) Operations individual events	6-88
1803-VOPS-2302			6-89
1803-CBTS-2401		Combat Support individual events	6-89
1803-CBTS-2411			6-98
1803-CSS-2501		Combat Service Support individual events	6-98
1803-CSS-2513			6-106
1803-AMPH-2600		No entries for Amphibious Operations individual events	No Entry
1803-TAC-2701		Tactical Operations individual events	6-106
1803-TAC-2702			6-107

6006. 1000-LEVEL 1803 INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

1803-GNRY-1101: Set Headspace and Timing on M2 .50 Cal HB Machine Gun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M2 .50 cal HB machine gun and appropriate collateral equipment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct safety check on weapon.
2. Verify that the firing solenoid, link block, bellmouth chute, trigger assembly, and charger assembly are installed on the M2 HB .50 cal machine gun. If not have armorer install them.
3. Check that M2 HB.50 cal machine gun is set for right hand feed.
4. Set headspace.
5. Set timing.
6. Conduct function check.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
3. TM 10004A-10/1C Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List
4. TM 9-1005-213-10 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, Caliber .50, M2

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task is reference specific. Care must be taken to perform each step in accordance with the references.

1803-GNRY-1102: Load M2 .50 Cal HB Machine Gun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M2 .50 cal HB machine gun mounted on an AAVP7A1/RAM RS, appropriate collateral equipment and ammunition.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Starting with double looped end of link, lay 5 rounds of ammo hanging outside over the rear of ammo box. Use the side opposite the hinges.
2. Place ammo back in to ammo box so that the double looped end of link is on top front of box.
3. Place second ammo box in front ammo tray with hinges forward and rounds facing outboard.
4. Secure both ammo boxes with retainers in up position.
5. Remove first round of ammo from rear box. Discard link that comes with round.
6. Install round through double looped end of link of rear box and through single looped end of link in front box. Make sure round is installed to the same depth into ammo belt as the other rounds.
7. Elevate M2 HB .50 cal machine gun and open receiver cover.
8. Feed ammo from box, around rollers, through bellmouth chute, and into .50 cal machine gun.
9. Place first round of ammo into M2 HB .50 cal machine gun past two belt holding pawls. Close receiver cover.
10. Ensure 5 rounds are hanging from rear of box in order to link rounds from both boxes.

REFERENCES:

1. TM 10004A-10/1C Uppgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List
2. TM 9-1005-213-10 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, Caliber .50, M2

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task is reference specific. Care must be taken to perform each step in accordance with the references.

1803-GNRY-1103: Zero M2 .50 Cal HB Machine Gun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M2 .50 cal HB machine gun installed on an AAVP7A1/RAM RS, appropriate collateral equipment, ammunition, an engagement area, and targets.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Lay the UGWS machine guns on a target 500 meters away so that the
2. UGWS sight is on the center of the target.
3. Fire a burst of 8-10 rounds at the target.

4. Observe the impact on the target in relation to the aim point and adjust as required.
5. Repeat firing and adjustment, as required.
6. Set SAFE/ARMED switch to SAFE position than let go and make sure that the SAFE light is lit.

REFERENCES :

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
3. TM 10004A-10/1C Uppgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List
4. TM 9-1005-213-10 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, Caliber .50, M2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS :

RANGE/TRAINING AREA :

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS :

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS : This task is reference specific. Care must be taken to perform each step in accordance with the references.

1803-GNRY-1104 : Fire the M2 HB .50 Cal Machine Gun

EVALUATION-CODED : NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL : 12 months

BILLETS : Platoon Commander

GRADES : 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING : FORMAL

CONDITION : Given a M2 .50 cal HB machine gun mounted on an AAVP7A1/RAM RS, appropriate collateral equipment, ammunition, and targets in an engagement area.

STANDARD : Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS :

1. Verify that M2 .50 cal HB machine gun is pointed down range.
2. Verify that selector latch is up in the unlocked position.
3. Pull charging handle completely out and down so bolt moves to the rear of loaded weapon and release charging handle.
4. Pull out arming switch on the weapon control panel, and move it to the .50 caliber armed position; the .50 caliber armed light will light red.
5. Depress trigger and fire a short burst of three to five rounds; traverse the weapons station and/or elevate or depress mantlets as necessary to hit target.
6. To fire the M2 .50 cal HB machine gun without power, fire manually by pressing butterfly trigger to fire and release to stop fire.

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
2. TM 10004A-10/1C Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List
3. TM 9-1005-213-10 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, Caliber .50, M2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

1803-GNRY-1105: Apply Failure to Fire Procedures for M2 .50 Cal HB Machine Gun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a M2 .50 cal HB machine gun mounted on an AAVP7A1/RAM RS, appropriate collateral equipment, and ammunition.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. If the weapon fires, continue the mission.
2. If the weapon fails to fire, follow the required safety procedures and inspect the weapon.
3. Conduct appropriate corrective action, as necessary.
4. Turn turret power off before attempting to inspect the weapon.
5. Determine whether there is a stoppage or a malfunction.
6. Charge the weapon and attempt to fire.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
3. TM 10004A-10/1C Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List
4. TM 9-1005-213-10 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, Caliber .50, M2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task is reference specific. Care must be taken to perform each step in accordance with the references.

1803-GNRY-1106: Unload M2 .50 Cal HB Machine Gun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a M2 .50 cal HB machine gun mounted on an AAVP7A1/RAM RS, appropriate collateral equipment, and ammunition.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Verify that the weapon is on safe and pointed down range, in a safe direction.
2. Unload the ammunition from the weapon.
3. Unload the ammunition from the Ugunned Weapons Station.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
3. TM 10004A-10/1C Ugunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List
4. TM 9-1005-213-10 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, Caliber .50, M2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task is reference specific. Care must be taken to perform each step in accordance with the references.

1803-GNRY-1107: Perform Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on M2 .50 Cal HB Machine Gun on AAVP7A1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M2 .50 cal HB machine gun and appropriate cleaning equipment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct a safety check on the weapon, ensuring that it is safe for disassembly.
2. Disassemble the weapon.
3. Inspect, clean, and lubricate the components.
4. Record worn or defective parts in equipment record jacket, tag defective parts, and inform armorer.
5. Assemble the weapon.
6. Conduct a functions check.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 10004A-10/1C Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List
3. TM 9-1005-213-10 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, Caliber .50, M2

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task is reference specific. Care must be taken to perform each step in accordance with the references.

1803-GNRY-1108: Load MK 19 Mod 3 40mm Machine Gun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a MK 19 Mod 3 40mm machine gun mounted on an AAVP7A1/RAM RS, appropriate collateral equipment and ammunition.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Traverse weapons station until MK-19 40mm machine gun is over the vehicle top deck.
2. Verify that turret power switch is OFF.
3. Unlatch spring loaded latch pins. Open upper and lower doors. Secure upper door with retainer assembly.
4. If installed, have assistant remove 40mm feed chute cover.
5. Have assistant release feed chute locks and disconnect 40mm chute assembly from K-19 40mm machine gun and feed throat. Remove 40mm chute assembly.
6. Open feed throat cover to gain access when feeding ammo. Have an outside assistant feed the 40mm ammo through the feed throat.
7. Pull ammo through feed throat and fill rear compartment of 40mm ammo box with five to six rounds. Raise rear ammo gate into locked position to secure ammo in rear compartment.
8. Continue loading each compartment from rear to front of 40mm ammo box.

Forward compartments will hold nine or ten rounds each raise ammo gates as each compartment is filled.

9. When ammo box is loaded, close upper ammo box door, first, then lower doors. Secure with spring loaded latch pins.
10. Have outside assistant slide 40mm chute assembly over outside ammunition. Connect 40mm chute assembly to feed throat and MK-19 machine gun. Secure with locks.
11. Close and latch feed throat cover.
12. Remove pin. Release two latches and remove mantlet cover.
13. Turn latch and open MK-19 40mm machine gun cover.
14. Feed ammo up to MK-19 40mm machine gun.
15. Pull first link up between the primary and secondary pawls.
16. Move secondary drive arm all the way to the right.
17. Close and latch machine gun cover.
18. Reinstall 40mm cover and secure with two latches and pin.
19. Reinstall 40mm feed chute cover to 400mm chute assembly. Secure with zipper.
20. To reload, have assistant pass box of 40mm ammo into weapons station, after the last round switch stops the MK-19 40mm machine gun from firing.
21. Move turret power switch to OFF.
22. Unlatch spring loaded latch pins on ammo box doors. Open upper and lower doors and secure upper door with retainer assembly.
23. Install 40mm ammo into ammo box with a male link to the rear. Position five to six rounds of ammo to the rear of the ammo box and raise rear ammo gate.
24. Continue loading each compartment in the 40mm ammo box and lifting ammo gates from rear to front, one compartment at a time. All compartments, except the rear, hold nine or ten rounds each.
25. When all compartments are full, connect female link of first round ammo in box to male link of ammo coming from MK-19 40mm machine gun.
26. Close upper ammo box door first, then close lower doors. Secure doors with spring loaded latch pins.

REFERENCES :

1. TM 08521A-10/1A Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun, 40mm, MK 19 Mod 3
2. TM 10004A-10/1C Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List

1803-GNRY-1109: Zero MK 19 Mod 3 40mm Machine Gun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a MK 19 40mm machine gun installed on an AAVP7A1/RAM RS, appropriate collateral equipment, ammunition, an engagement area, and targets.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Lay the UGWS machineguns on a target 500 meters away so that the UGWS sight is on the center of the target.
2. Fire a burst of 8-10 rounds at the target.
3. Observe the impact on the target in relation to the aim point and adjust the sights using the reticule knobs as required.
4. Repeat firing and adjustments, as required.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 08521A-10/1A Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun, 40mm, MK 19 Mod 3
3. TM 10004A-10/1C Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task is reference specific. Care must be taken to perform each step in accordance with the references.

1803-GNRY-1110: Fire the MK 19 40mm Machine Gun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a MK 19 40mm machine gun mounted on an AAVP7A1/RAM RS, appropriate collateral equipment, ammunition, and targets in an engagement area.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Verify that MK 19 40mm machine gun is pointed down range; ensure that the reticle control adapter is down against the stop screw.
2. Move safety switch of machine gun to FIRE position.
3. Install 40mm service cover and secure with latch.
4. Move turret power switch ON; turret power green indicator light comes on.
5. Pull charger handle up to the unlock position and fold down to lock in operating position; crank charger handle clockwise until bolt locks in sear position.
6. Crank charger handle counterclockwise until all slack in chain is in front

- of handle.
7. Pull arming switch out and to the left.
 8. Press trigger once, then release.
 9. Crank charger handle again clockwise until bolt locks in rear position.
 10. Crank charger handle counterclockwise until all slack in chain is in front of handle.
 11. Pull charger handle out of fold up to stowed position.
 12. Depress trigger and fire a short burst of three to five rounds.
 13. Traverse the weapons station and/or elevate or depress mantlets as necessary to hit target.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 08521A-10/1A Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun, 40mm, MK 19 Mod 3
3. TM 10004A-10/1C Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

1803-GNRY-1111: Apply Failure to Fire Procedures for MK 19 Mod 3 40mm Machine Gun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a MK-19 40mm machine gun mounted on an AAVP7A1/RAM RS, appropriate collateral equipment, and ammunition.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Turn turret power off before attempting to inspect the weapon.
2. Determine whether there is a stoppage or a malfunction.
3. Charge the weapon and attempt to fire.
4. If the weapon fires, continue the mission.
5. If the weapon fails to fire, follow the required safety procedures and inspect the weapon.
6. Conduct appropriate corrective action, as necessary.

REFERENCES:

1. TM 08521A-10/1A Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun, 40mm, MK 19 Mod 3
 2. TM 10004A-10/1C Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List
-

1803-GNRY-1112: Unload MK 19 Mod 3 40mm Machine Gun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a MK 19 40mm machine gun mounted on an AAVP7A1/RAM RS, appropriate collateral equipment, and ammunition.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Verify that the weapon is on safe and pointed down range, in a safe direction.
2. Move turret power switch OFF if applicable.
3. Elevate the MK 19 machine gun and open receiver cover.
4. Remove ammo belt.
5. Move selector latch, down in the locked position.
6. Pull charger handle down until bolt locks in rear position.
7. Close receiver cover.
8. Hold charger handle. Move selector switch up in the unlocked position and slowly ride bolt to forward position.

REFERENCES:

1. TM 08521A-10/1A Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun, 40mm, MK 19 Mod 3
 2. TM 10004A-10/1C Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List
-

1803-GNRY-1113: Perform Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on MK 19 Mod 3 40mm Machine Gun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an MK 19 Mod 3 40mm machine gun and appropriate cleaning equipment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct a safety check on the weapon, ensuring that it is safe for disassembly.
2. Ensure the weapon is pointed in a safe direction.

3. Disassemble the weapon.
4. Inspect, clean, and lubricate the components.
5. Record worn or defective parts in equipment record jacket, tag defective parts, and inform armorer.
6. Assemble the weapon.
7. Conduct a function check.
8. Weapon must be mounted in weapons station or on a tri-pod with mounting charging handle in order to conduct a proper functions check.

REFERENCES :

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 08521A-10/1A Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun, 40mm, MK 19 Mod 3
3. TM 10004A-10/1C Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List

MISCELLANEOUS :

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task is reference specific. Care must be taken to perform each step in accordance with the references.

1803-GNRY-1114: Install M240G 7.62mm Machine Gun on AAVC7A1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M240G 7.62mm machine gun, an AAVC7A1, and appropriate collateral equipment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct safety check on weapon.
2. Place pintle mount on machine gun.
3. Unlock and remove cover from vehicle pintle.
4. Place machine gun mount on pintle and secure with lock.
5. Install machine gun on machinegun mount and secure with lock.

REFERENCES :

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 07268B-10/1A Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Command, Model 7A1, AAVC7A1 Supplement to TM 09674A-10/3
3. TM 9-1005-313-10 Maintenance Manual, 7.62mm Machinegun M240G

MISCELLANEOUS :

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task is reference specific. Care must be taken to perform each step in accordance with the references.

1803-GNRY-1115: Load M240G 7.62mm Machine Gun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M240G 7.62mm machine gun, an AAVC7A1 vehicle, and dummy ammunition.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct safety check on weapon.
2. Place the safety to "F".
3. Hold cocking handle to rear, squeeze trigger, ease the bolt forward.
4. Place link belt in feed tray with 1st round against cartridge stop (position open side of links down).
5. Close cover assembly. Make sure it locks shut.

REFERENCES:

1. TM 07268B-10/1A Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Command, Model 7A1, AAVC7A1 Supplement to TM 09674A-10/3
2. TM 9- Operator's Manual, 7.62mm Machinegun M240G
3. TM 9-1005-313-10 Maintenance Manual, 7.62mm Machinegun M240G

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task is reference specific. Care must be taken to perform each step in accordance with the references.

1803-GNRY-1116: Fire M240G 7.62mm Machine Gun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M240G 7.62mm machine gun mounted on an AAVC7A1, appropriate collateral equipment, ammunition, targets in an engagement area, and references.

STANDARD: Until all targets are suppressed or destroyed.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct safety check on weapon.
2. Install M240G 7.62mm machine gun on AAVC7A1.

3. Load M240G 7.62mm machine gun.
4. Sight the weapon on target approximately 500 to 800 meters down range.
5. Fire a burst of 5-8 rounds at the target. Repeat firing and adjust as required.

REFERENCES :

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 07268B-10/1A Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Command, Model 7A1, AAVC7A1 Supplement to TM 09674A-10/3
3. TM 9-1005-313-10 Maintenance Manual, 7.62mm Machinegun M240G

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS :

RANGE/TRAINING AREA :

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS :

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS : This task is reference specific. Care must be taken to perform each step in accordance with the references.

1803-GNRY-1117 : Apply Failure to Fire Procedures for M240G 7.62mm Machine Gun

EVALUATION-CODED : NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL : 12 months

BILLETS : Platoon Commander

GRADES : 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING : FORMAL

CONDITION : Given an M240G 7.62mm machine gun mounted on an AAVC7A1, appropriate collateral equipment, and ammunition.

STANDARD : Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS :

1. Determine whether there is a stoppage or a malfunction.
2. Charge the weapon and attempt to fire.
3. If weapon does not fire, pull cocking handle to the rear and lock the bolt to the rear.
4. Perform remedial action -if the weapon is "hot", wait 15 minutes.
5. Clear weapon.
6. Visually inspect weapon.
7. Load and attempt to fire.
8. If weapon does not fire, notify unit maintenance.

REFERENCES :

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 07268B-10/1A Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Command, Model 7A1, AAVC7A1 Supplement to TM 09674A-10/3
3. TM 9-1005-313-10 Maintenance Manual, 7.62mm Machinegun M240G

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task is reference specific. Care must be taken to perform each step in accordance with the references.

1803-GNRY-1118: Unload M240G 7.62mm Machine Gun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M240G 7.62mm machine gun mounted on an AAVC7A1, appropriate collateral equipment, and ammunition.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Place safety on "F".
2. Pull cocking handle to the rear to lock the bolt back. Return cocking handle to forward position.
3. Place safety on "S".
4. Push in latches and open feed cover assembly.
5. Remove ammunition belt.
6. Raise feed tray.
7. Look into chamber to make sure it is empty. If a round is still in the chamber, refer to ruptured/stuck cartridge case or live round procedures.
8. Lower feed tray.
9. Place safety to "F".
10. Depress trigger, ease bolt forward.
11. Close cover assembly and lock it shut.

REFERENCES:

1. TM 07268B-10/1A Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Command, Model 7A1, AAVC7A1 Supplement to TM 09674A-10/3
2. TM 9- Operator's Manual, 7.62mm Machinegun M240G
3. TM 9-1005-313-10 Maintenance Manual, 7.62mm Machinegun M240G

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task is reference specific. Care must be taken to perform each step in accordance with the references.

1803-GNRY-1119: Remove M240G 7.62mm Machine Gun from AAVC7A1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M240G 7.62mm machine gun mounted on an AAVC7A1 and appropriate collateral equipment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Verify that weapon is clear and safe.
2. Remove machine gun from machine gun mount.
3. Remove pintle from machine gun mount.
4. Replace cover on vehicle pintle.
5. Remove machine gun from mount.
6. Remove pintle mount from machine gun.

REFERENCES:

1. TM 07268B-10/1A Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Command, Model 7A1, AAVC7A1 Supplement to TM 09674A-10/3
2. TM 9- Operator's Manual, 7.62mm Machinegun M240G
3. TM 9-1005-313-10 Maintenance Manual, 7.62mm Machinegun M240G

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task is reference specific. Care must be taken to perform each step in accordance with the references.

1803-GNRY-1120: Perform Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on M240G 7.62mm Machine Gun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M240G 7.62mm machine gun and appropriate cleaning equipment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct a safety check on the weapon, ensuring that it is safe for disassembly.
2. Ensure weapon is pointed in a safe direction.
3. Disassemble the weapon.

4. Inspect, clean, and lubricate the components.
5. Record worn or defective parts in equipment record jacket, tag defective parts, and inform armorer.
6. Conduct a functions check.
7. Assemble the weapon.

REFERENCES :

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 07268B-10/1A Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Command, Model 7A1, AAVC7A1 Supplement to TM 09674A-10/3
3. TM 9-1005-313-10 Maintenance Manual, 7.62mm Machinegun M240G

MISCELLANEOUS :

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task is reference specific. Care must be taken to perform each step in accordance with the references.

1803-GNRY-1121: Conduct Minor Boresighting of Upgunned Weapons Station

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a M2 .50 cal HB machine gun and MK 19 Mod 3 40mm machine gun installed on the AAVP7A1/RAM RS, boresighting kit, and appropriate collateral equipment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Position vehicle on level terrain on flat surface and apply parking brake.
2. Install weapons.
3. Place protractor on MK 19 40mm machine gun barrel as close to the mantlet cover as possible and elevate or depress until the protractor registers 0. Range indicator should be on 0 when the weapon and protractor register 0. Adjust as necessary.
4. Install boresight 40mm caliber bar into 40mm machine gun barrel.
5. Install bore sighting telescope into 40mm caliber bar so that crosshairs are vertical and horizontal.
6. Install 12.7mm caliber bar into .50 caliber machine gun barrel.
7. Place boresight target 50 meters from the vehicle in such manner that sight image is clear and level with the turret trunnion and in line with center line of weapons station.
8. Place reticle control adapter down against the stop screw.
9. Sight through boresighting telescope on 40mm caliber bar and have assistant position boresight target at same height, horizontally and vertically as MK-19 40mm machine gun at 0 degrees elevation. Align crosshairs in boresight telescope with 40mm reference by moving boresight target.

10. Center azimuth and elevation boresight knobs.
11. Sight through day sight eyepiece and check alignment of boresight cross.
12. Remove boresighting telescope form the 40mm caliber bar and install in the 12.7mm caliber bar in M2HB .50 caliber machine gun barrel.
13. Sight through boresighting telescope. Adjust as necessary.
14. Adjust azimuth.
15. Adjust elevation.
16. Boresight at night, as required.

REFERENCES :

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
3. TM 10004A-10/1C Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS :

RANGE/TRAINING AREA :

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

1803-GNRY-1122: Conduct Major Boresighting of Upgunned Weapons Station

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a M2 .50 cal HB machine gun and MK 19 Mod 3 40mm machine gun installed in the AAVP7A1/RAM RS, boresighting kit, and appropriate collateral equipment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS :

1. Verify that AAV is positioned on level ground.
2. Verify that weapons are level using protractor.
3. Set range drum indicator to zero, ensuring thumb slide is in proper position.
4. Install weapons in weapons station.
5. Erect boresighting target.
6. Position boresighting target.
7. Align boresighting target with 40mm machine gun.
8. Sight .50 cal machine gun.
9. Center azimuth and elevation boresight knobs on body and passive elbow.
10. Move reticle control adapter down against stop screw.
11. Remove sight cover and sight gasket.
12. Loosen four screws securing M119 mount assembly to greenhouse weldment. Loosen screws just enough to move M119 mount.
13. Loosen two screws securing two screws in gunsight adjusting bracket.

14. Focus and sight through body eyepiece. Have assistant rotate screws to establish azimuth alignment of sight. Vertical line of day body reticle must align with vertical line of boresight cross on body position of boresight target. Position vertical reference line on boresight cross, while screws are being adjusted, by turning adjustment bar to either the left or right.
15. Tighten two screws on sight linkage securely, if loosened to turn adjustment bar.
16. Install boresight filter.
17. Check azimuth alignment of passive elbow.
18. Tighten four sight mounting screws securely.
19. Look through body and passive elbow eye pieces and re-check azimuth. Once azimuth has been established, turn passive elbow switch and vehicle master switch OFF.
20. Tighten screws securing screws in gunsight adjusting bracket.
21. Adjust M36E3 periscope.
22. Check major boresighting adjustments for retention.
23. Install sight cover onto M119 mount.

REFERENCES :

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 08521A-10/1A Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun, 40mm, MK 19 Mod 3
3. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
4. TM 10004A-10/1C Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List
5. TM 9-1005-213-10 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, Caliber .50, M2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS :

RANGE/TRAINING AREA :

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

1803-GNRY-1123 : Operate Upgunned Weapons Station

EVALUATION-CODED : NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL : 12 months

BILLETS : Platoon Commander

GRADES : 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING : FORMAL

CONDITION : Given an AAVP7A1/RAM RS upgunned weapons station with installed, loaded, and zeroed machine guns, associated collateral equipment, and engagement area.

STANDARD : Per the reference.

PERFORMANCE STEPS :

1. Conduct preventive maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on the Upgunned Weapon Station (UGWS).

2. Perform pre-operation checks and services of the UGWS.
3. Operate electrical components and switches of the UGWS.
4. Operate manual components.
5. Set headspace and timing on M2 HB .50 cal machine gun.
6. Load M2 HB .50 cal machine gun.
7. Fire the M2 HB .50 cal machine gun.
8. Apply failure to fire procedures for M2 HB .50 cal machine gun.
9. Zero a M2 HB .50 cal machine gun.
10. Unload M2 HB .50 cal machine gun.
11. Perform preventive maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on M2 HB .50 cal machine gun.
12. Load MK 19 Mod 3 40mm machine gun.
13. Fire the MK 19 Mod 3 40mm machine gun.
14. Apply failure to fire procedures for MK 19 Mod 3 40mm machine gun.
15. Zero MK 19 Mod 3 40mm machine gun.
16. Unload MK 19 Mod 3 40mm machine gun.
17. Perform preventive maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on MK 19 Mod 3 40mm machine gun.
18. Identify target.
19. Place aiming point or proper range line on center mass of target.
20. Engage targets with the Upgunned Weapons Station.
21. Perform after operations checks of the Upgunned Weapons Systems.

REFERENCE:

1. TM 10004A-10/1C Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

1803-GNRY-1124: Engage Targets with Upgunned Weapons Station

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7A1/RAM RS upgunned weapons station with installed, loaded and zeroed machine guns, associated collateral equipment, ammunition, engagement area, and references.

STANDARD: So all targets are suppressed or destroyed with minimum exposure to enemy observation.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Identify target.
2. Place aiming point or proper range line on center mass of target.
3. Announce "ON THE WAY" and fire the weapon(s).

4. Employ re-engage method, as needed.
5. Employ gunner's standard adjustment, as needed.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
4. TM 10004A-10/1C Uppgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

1803-GNRY-1125: Perform Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Uppgunned Weapons Station

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given the Uppgunned Weapons Station on the AAVP7A1/RAM RS and appropriate collateral equipment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Check area outside weapons station for debris.
2. Check protective covers on weapons station.
3. Check vision blocks and sight window.
4. Check hatch for serviceability.
5. Check weapons mantlets for cleanliness and serviceability.
6. Clean and lubricate grenade launcher tubes.
7. Check slip ring for cleanliness and serviceability.
8. Check electrical harness for cleanliness and serviceability.
9. Check .50 caliber ejection system for cleanliness and serviceability.
10. Check gunner's seat for cleanliness and serviceability.
11. Check control panels for cleanliness and serviceability.
12. Check power assist traverse mechanism for cleanliness and serviceability.
13. Check elevation for cleanliness and serviceability.
14. Check azimuth ring for cleanliness and serviceability.
15. Check 40mm crank handle for cleanliness and serviceability.
16. Check 40mm ammunition box for cleanliness and serviceability.
17. Check .50 caliber cradle for cleanliness and serviceability.
18. Check .50 caliber feed system for cleanliness and serviceability.
19. Check range indicator for cleanliness and serviceability.
20. Check gunner's sight for cleanliness and serviceability.
21. Check reticule adapter for cleanliness and serviceability.

22. Check exhaust blower for cleanliness and serviceability.
23. Check communications system for cleanliness and serviceability.
24. Check utility light for cleanliness and serviceability.
25. Check dome light for cleanliness and serviceability.
26. Set inhibit zone.

REFERENCES :

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
 3. TM 10004A-10/1C Uppgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List
-

1803-GNRY-1126: Load M257 Grenade Launcher System

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETTS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a M257 Grenade Launcher System mounted on an AAVP7A1/RAM RS, appropriate collateral equipment and ammunition.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Set the TURRET POWER switch to OFF.
2. Remove covers from grenade dischargers.
3. Check grenade discharger tubes for dirt or sharp objects and clean as required.
4. Insert grenades into tubes per the references.
5. Turn each grenade 1/4 to 1/2 turn clockwise to ensure a solid electrical connection.
6. Replace covers, if required.

REFERENCES :

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1803-GNRY-1127: Fire M257 Grenade Launcher System

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETTS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a M257 Grenade Launcher System mounted on an AAVP7A1/RAM RS, appropriate collateral equipment, and ammunition.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Prepare the vehicle for firing the grenades by closing the hatches, turning off the vent fan, and closing the plenums, if possible.
2. Announce "GRENADE LAUNCHER" and traverse the turret to desired direction of fire.
3. Verify that embarked personnel are clear of the arc of the launcher if they are outside the vehicle.
4. Fire the grenades.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. Close all hatches before firing grenade launchers to protect from grenade fragments or misfires.
2. All outside personnel must be at least 50 meters to the rear of launcher firing zone.
3. Consider wind direction and speed for ground personnel safety area.
4. Training area and conditions must support employment of phosphorous smoke.

1803-GNRY-1128: Apply Failure to Fire Procedures on M257 Grenade Launcher System

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a M257 Grenade Launcher System mounted on an AAVP7A1/RAM RS, appropriate collateral equipment, and ammunition.

STANDARD: Per the reference.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Verify all personnel are clear of area. Keep launchers pointed downrange until grenades are removed.
2. Wait 10-20 seconds after first attempt to fire smoke grenades.
3. Press LEFT or RIGHT smoke grenade firing buttons.
4. If grenade does not fire, move smoke grenade arming switch down to off position. Ensure red indicator light goes out.
5. Check to see that smoke grenade is firmly seated in its discharge tube (press down and rotate).
6. Move smoke grenade arming switch up to armed position. Armed indicator will be red.
7. Press "left" or "right" smoke grenade firing buttons. If smoke grenades do not fire, move smoke grenade arming switch down to OFF position. Ensure indicator light goes out.
8. If grenade still does not fire, grenade is a misfire and must be disposed.

REFERENCE:

1. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Training area and conditions must support employment of phosphorous smoke.

1803-GNRY-1129: Unload M257 Grenade Launcher System

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a M257 Grenade Launcher System mounted on an AAVP7A1/RAM RS, appropriate collateral equipment, and ammunition.

STANDARD: Per the reference.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Set the TURRET POWER switch to OFF.
2. Remove grenades.
3. Place ammunition in proper storage container.
4. Replace caps on grenade discharge tubes.

REFERENCE:

1. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault

Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS

1803-GNRY-1130: Perform Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on M257 Grenade

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a M257 Grenade Launcher System mounted on an AAVP7A1/RAM RS, appropriate collateral equipment, and cleaning gear.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Clean tube, especially electrical contact at base.
2. Lubricate tubes.
3. Check interrupter switch, make sure that it pushes in and releases freely.
4. Check for rust and corrosion.
5. Check electronic connectors to ensure that they are properly and securely connected.
6. Check the wires to ensure that there are no bare wires exposed.
7. Inspect tubes to ensure that there are no cracks inside or outside the tubes.
8. Turn the vehicle master switch and turret power switch on.
9. Close and lock turret.
10. Arm the smoke grenade launchers ensuring that the switch stays in the on position and the smoke grenade indicator light is illuminated.
11. Replace tube covers.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1803-GNRY-1131: Conduct AAV Gunnery Table I

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Table I is a non-firing table designed to test the proficiency of Marines on the MK 19 and M2 machine guns of the upgunned weapon station.

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary AAV, upgunned weapon station with cleared and installed MK 19 and M2 machine guns, required ammunition by type and amount, qualified evaluator, and references.

STANDARD: So Marines score 80 percent on the written exam and pass all additional events.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Event #1: Complete written exam.
2. Event #2: Assemble and disassemble the MK 19 and M2 machine guns.
3. Event #3: Set head space and timing on M2 heavy barrel machine gun.
4. Event #4: Install the MK 19 and M2 in the upgunned weapons station.
5. Event #5: Boresight the MK 19 and M2 machine guns.
6. Event #6: Load and clear the MK 19 and M2 machine guns.
7. Event #7: Clear a malfunction from the MK 19.
8. Event #8: Perform manipulation exercise.
9. Event #9: Utilize smoke grenade tester to demonstrate loading and firing procedures on the M257.
10. Event #10: Describe the three AAV firing positions.
11. Event #11: Describe fire commands (ADDRAC).
12. Event #12: Prepare an AAV range card.
13. Event #13: Describe the characteristics of fire.
14. Event #14: Describe the three classes of fire.
15. Event #15: Demonstrate methods to determine distance to target.
16. Event #16: Demonstrate how to properly handle/store ammunition on an AAV.
17. Event #17: Describe how to safely embark troops armed with ammunition.

RELATED EVENTS:

1803-GNRY-1109	1803-VOPS-1303	1803-GNRY-1112
1803-GNRY-1129	1803-GNRY-1106	1803-GNRY-1101
1803-GNRY-1123	1803-GNRY-1108	1803-GNRY-1126
1803-GNRY-1102	1803-GNRY-1105	1803-GNRY-1110
1803-GNRY-1104	1803-GNRY-1127	1803-GNRY-1124
1803-GNRY-1128	1803-GNRY-1111	1803-GNRY-1103

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
4. TM 08521A-10/1A Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun, 40mm, MK 19 Mod 3
5. TM 10004A-10/1C Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List
6. TM 9-1005-213-10 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, Caliber .50, M2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
B472 Cartridge, 40mm Dummy M922	10 rounds/man
A560 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Dummy M2	10 rounds/man

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. Marines must score 80 percent to pass written exam on event #1.
 2. All other events are pass/fail and will be mastered and evaluated before advancing to Table II.
 3. Manipulation exercises are performed by manually laying the weapons on targets requiring changes in elevation and deflection
-

1803-GNRY-1132: Conduct AAV Gunnery Table II

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Table II is a live fire gunnery table designed to demonstrate proficiency on zeroing weapons of the upgunned weapon station in order to validate boresight.

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary AAV, an upgunned weapon station with installed MK19 and M2 machine guns, required ammunition by type and amount, stationary target at 500 meters, and a qualified evaluator.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Zero the M2 machine gun.
2. Zero the MK 19 machine gun.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

1803-GNRY-1131

RELATED EVENTS:

1833-GNRY-1112

1803-GNRY-1103

1803-GNRY-1109

1833-GNRY-1104

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
4. TM 08521A-10/1A Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun, 40mm, MK 19 Mod 3
5. TM 10004A-10/1C Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List
6. TM 9-1005-213-10 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, Caliber .50, M2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

DODIC

B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Lin

Quantity

32 rounds/man

A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP 50 rounds/man

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. Table II is a Go/No Go event.
 2. The gunner must successfully pass all tasks in tables 1 and 2 to proceed any further.
-

1803-GNRY-1133: Conduct AAV Gunnery Table III

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Table III is a live fire gunnery table that demonstrates basic upgunned weapon station engagement skills from a stationary position against stationary target(s) during daylight operations.

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary AAV, upgunned weapon station with installed MK 19 and M2 machine guns, required ammunition by type and amount, stationary targets from 600-1800 meters, daytime visibility, qualified evaluator, and references.

STANDARD: So the gunner destroys all targets in the time directed.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Scenario #1: Engage and destroy a stationary target at a distance of 600-1000 meters using manual or electrical trigger within 30 seconds.
2. Scenario #2: Engage and destroy 2 stationary targets at a distance of 600-1000 meters using manual or electrical trigger within 60 seconds.
3. Scenario #3: Engage and destroy a stationary target at a distance of 1000-1800 meters using manual or electrical trigger within 45 seconds.
4. Scenario #4: Engage and destroy 2 stationary targets at a distance of 1000-1800 meters using manual or electrical trigger within 2 minutes.
5. Scenario #5: Engage and destroy 2 stationary targets at unknown ranges using manual or electrical trigger within 2 minutes.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

1803-GNRY-1132

RELATED EVENTS:

1803-GNRY-1110

1803-GNRY-1124

1803-GNRY-1104

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Lin	88 rounds/man
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP	160 rounds/man

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

1. Each task in Table III is a pass or fail event. Each gunner must cumulatively pass 70 percent of events from Tables III-V in order to qualify.
2. Suppression with the MK 19 is impact of the round within 30 meters of the target, with a 3-5 round burst. Suppression with the .50 cal. is rounds impacting within 4 meters in width and 10 meters deep of the target, with a 8-10 round burst. Rounds impacting short of the target have some suppressive value; however, rounds fired over the target have no suppressive value. Suppression will be determined by the judgment of the evaluator.
3. A target is destroyed with the MK 19 when a round impacts within 5 meters of the target. The .50 cal. can destroy a target only with a direct hit on soft targets at ranges no greater than 1000 meters. The MK 19 can destroy a soft target by impacting within 15 meters of the target.
4. Time is the time limit given as part of the standard. The gunner must register suppression and destroy the target within the time limit to pass the event.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. Gunners will prepare a range card prior to live fire.
2. Gunners will record firing data for both weapons on targets to be engaged for subsequent nighttime engagements.
3. All times are maximum allowed to complete the task.
4. Ammunition requirements are based on a Marine to execute entire table.

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS:

ADVANCED GUNNER (80%-100%) QUALIFIED GUNNER (70%-79%) UNQUALIFIED (0-69%)

1803-GNRY-1134: Conduct AAV Gunnery Table IV

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Table IV is a live fire gunnery table that demonstrates basic upgunned weapon station engagement skills from a stationary position against stationary target(s) during simulated NBC conditions.

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary AAV, upgunned weapon station with installed MK 19 and M2 machine guns, required ammunition by type and amount, stationary targets from 600-1800 meters, daytime visibility, simulated NBC conditions in MOPP 4, qualified evaluator, and references.

STANDARD: So the gunner destroys all targets in the time directed.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Scenario #6: Engage and destroy a stationary target at a distance of 600-1000 meters using manual or electrical trigger within 45 seconds.
2. Scenario #7: Engage and destroy a stationary target at a distance of 1000-1800 meters using manual or electrical trigger within 60 seconds.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

1803-GNRY-1133

RELATED EVENTS:

1803-GNRY-1110

1803-GNRY-1124

1803-GNRY-1104

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
4. TM 08521A-10/1A Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun, 40mm, MK 19 Mod 3
5. TM 10004A-10/1C Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List
6. TM 9-1005-213-10 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, Caliber .50, M2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Lin	24 rounds/man
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP	40 rounds/man

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

1. Each task in Table IV is a pass or fail event. Each gunner must cumulatively pass 70 percent of events from Tables III-V in order to qualify.
2. Suppression with the MK 19 is impact of the round within 30 meters of the target, with a 3-5 round burst. Suppression with the .50 cal. is rounds impacting within 4 meters in width and 10 meters deep of the target, with a 8-10 round burst. Rounds impacting short of the target have some suppressive value; however, rounds fired over the target have no suppressive value. Suppression will be determined by the judgment of the evaluator.
3. A target is destroyed with the MK 19 when a round impacts within 5 meters of the target. The .50 cal. can destroy a target only with a direct hit on soft targets at ranges no greater than 1000 meters. The MK 19 can destroy a soft target by impacting within 15 meters of the target.

4. Time is the time limit given as part of the standard. The gunner must register suppression and destroy the target within the time limit to pass the event.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. All times are maximum allowed to complete the task.
2. Ammunition requirements are based on one Marine to execute entire table.

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS:

ADVANCED GUNNER (80%-100%) QUALIFIED GUNNER (70%-79%) UNQUALIFIED (0-69%)

1803-GNRY-1135: Conduct AAV Gunnery Table V

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Table V is a live fire gunnery table that demonstrates basic upgunned weapon station engagement skills from a stationary position against stationary target(s) during nighttime limited visibility operations.

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary AAV, upgunned weapon station with installed MK 19 and M2 machine guns, required ammunition by type and amount, stationary targets from 400-800 meters, nighttime limited visibility, range card, qualified evaluator, and references.

STANDARD: So the gunner destroys all targets in the time directed.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Scenario #8: Proof range card by validating firing data.
2. Scenario #9: Engage and destroy a stationary target at a distance of 400-800 meters using manual or electrical trigger within 60 seconds.
3. Scenario #10: Engage and destroy multiple stationary targets at a distance of 400-800 meters using manual or electrical trigger within 60 seconds.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

1803-GNRY-1134

RELATED EVENTS:

1803-GNRY-1110

1803-GNRY-1124

1803-GNRY-1104

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery

4. TM 08521A-10/1A Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun, 40mm, MK 19 Mod 3
5. TM 10004A-10/1C Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List
6. TM 9-1005-213-10 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, Caliber .50, M2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Lin	32 rounds/man
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP	100 rounds/man

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

EQUIPMENT: Range card constructed from Table III run is a prerequisite to Table V nighttime engagements.

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

1. Each task in Table V is a pass or fail event. Each gunner must cumulatively pass 70 percent of events from Tables III-V in order to qualify.
2. Suppression with the MK 19 is impact of the round within 30 meters of the target, with a 3-5 round burst. Suppression with the .50 cal. is rounds impacting within 4 meters in width and 10 meters deep of the target, with a 8-10 round burst. Rounds impacting short of the target have some suppressive value; however, rounds fired over the target have no suppressive value. Suppression will be determined by the judgment of the evaluator.
3. A target is destroyed with the MK 19 when a round impacts within 5 meters of the target. The .50 cal. can destroy a target only with a direct hit on soft targets at ranges no greater than 1000 meters. The MK 19 can destroy a soft target by impacting within 15 meters of the target.
4. Time is the time limit given as part of the standard. The gunner must register suppression and destroy the target within the time limit to pass the event.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. All times are maximum allowed to complete the task.
2. Ammunition requirements are based on one Marine to execute entire table.

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS:

ADVANCED GUNNER (80%-100%) QUALIFIED GUNNER (70%-79%) UNQUALIFIED (0-69%)

1803-CMDC-1201: Employ Ground Guide Signals

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an order to safely move and operate a manned AAV and the references.

STANDARD: To properly position the vehicles and minimize risk to personnel and equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Signal vehicle to move forward.
2. Signal vehicle to move backward with the aid of rear ground guide.
3. Signal vehicle to turn (left and right).
4. Signal vehicle to pivot (left and right).
5. Signal vehicle to stop.
6. Signal ramp-down.
7. Signal ramp-up and secured.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 21-60 Visual Signals
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 3. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1803-CMDC-1202: Communicate Using Visual Signals

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given responsibility to control an AAV or AA unit and an area of operations.

STANDARD: To substitute radio and voice communications.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Communicate using hand and arm signals to control vehicles.
2. Communicate using flashlights to control vehicles.
3. Communicate using flags to control vehicles.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 21-60 Visual Signals
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
-

1803-CMDC-1203: Communicate Using AAVP7A1/RAM RS Communication Equipment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7A1/RAM RS, a radio net, and references.

STANDARD: Per current EMCON controls.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Prepare the communications equipment for operations.
2. Operate the Combat Vehicle Crewman's (CVC) helmet.
3. Operate the vehicle intercom system.
4. Operate the audio frequency amplifier.
5. Operate the receiver/transmitters in plain and covered mode.
6. Operate the receiver/transmitters in frequency hopping and single channel mode.
7. Communicate over inter-AAV wire communications (hot loop).
8. Operate the position location systems.
9. Secure communication equipment from operation.

REFERENCES:

1. TM 11-5810-256-OP-4 Operating Procedures for COMSECEQ TSEC/KY-57 in Tracked Vehicles
 2. TM 11-5820-890-10-1 Operator Manual for SINCGARS Ground Combat Net Radio
-

1803-CMDC-1204: Communicate Using AAVC7A1 Communication Equipment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVC7A1 and radio net.

STANDARD: Per current EMCON controls and the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Operate and troubleshoot MSQ 115 system.
2. Transmit on designated command and control circuits when directed by the supported unit commander.
3. Operate the crew's radios.
4. Operate the vehicle intercom system.
5. Operate static telephone lines when in a static situation.
6. Assist embarked staff on MSQ 115 system operations.

7. Secure communications equipment from operation.

REFERENCES:

1. TM 07268B-10/1A Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Command, Model 7A1, AAVC7A1 Supplement to TM 09674A-10/3
 2. TM 11-5810-256-OP-4 Operating Procedures for COMSECEQ TSEC/KY-57 in Tracked Vehicles
 3. TM 11-5820-890-10-1 Operator Manual for SINCGARS Ground Combat Net Radio
-

1803-CMDC-1205: Control Radio Communications

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit, operations order, and a current Communications-Electronic Operating Instruction (CEOI).

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Verify that all elements have the authorized SC frequency, frequency hopping (FH) data and COMSEC instructions input into their radios.
2. Perform Net Control Station duties and open the net.
3. Update FH data using electronic remote fill (ERF), as needed.
4. Conduct late net entry as needed.
5. Enforce standard radio procedures including: use only approved radio/telephone procedures, keep transmission to under 15 seconds, encode and decode all critical messages, use challenge and reply authentication in accordance with CEOI, Use lowest possible power settings and directional antennas, and submit MIJI reports within five minutes after attempted jamming.
6. Coordinate with supported unit or supported unit communications officer for call signs and frequencies.
7. Distribute daily call signs and frequencies to all stations on net.
8. Establish self as net control, authorizing stations to become operational on net using AAV unit organic communications equipment.
9. Enforce listening silence.
10. Recognize electronic countermeasures (ECM) and implement electronic counter countermeasures (ECCM) under the guidance of the communications officer.

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
 2. MCRP 6-22C Radio Operator's Handbook
 3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 4. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1803-CMDC-1206: Conduct Electronic Countermeasures

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit, higher's operations order, and references..

STANDARD: To defeat enemy jamming by using communication alternatives or safeguards.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Minimize electronic communications.
2. Employ wire communications whenever possible.
3. Employ encryption methods whenever possible.
4. Notify net control of detection of enemy use of friendly frequencies or procedures.
5. Employ countermeasures when enemy jamming occurs.
6. Employ countermeasure on the SINCGARS radios.
7. Make sure the FCTN SWITCH is not set to REM; then set the MODE SWITCH to SC.
8. Set the CHAN switch to MAN, CUE, or desired channel (1-6) to be loaded with offset.
9. Press FREQ, then ERF/OFST and then CHG/7.
10. Continue to press CHG/7 until ")))" is displayed.
11. Press FREQ key again to store the OFFSET.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 3. MCWP 6-22 Communications and Information Systems
-

1803-CMDC-1207: Identify Combat Vehicles and Helicopters

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 6 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a clearly visible silhouette (frontal or side) of a combat vehicle or helicopter with distinguishing characteristics and references.

STANDARD: Within 10 seconds.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Determine the type of vehicle/helicopter.
2. Determine the role of the vehicle/helicopter on the battlefield.
3. Determine main armament.
4. Determine the identifying characteristics of the vehicle/helicopter.
5. State the nomenclature of the vehicle/helicopter.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 44-30 Visual Aircraft Recognition
 2. ROC-V Recognition of Combat Vehicles
-

1803-CMDC-1208: Conduct Map Reconnaissance

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit, an operations order defining the battlespace, specified threat, map of the battlespace, and references.

STANDARD: By analyzing the area of operation in terms of the military aspects of terrain and identify any terrain or structure that may affect the mission.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Orient map and identify the area of operation.
2. Identify graphic control measures on the map.
3. Conduct terrain analysis
4. Identify available routes of travel.
5. Identify known and planned friendly positions.
6. Mark known and suspected enemy positions on the map.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 21-26 Map Reading and Land Navigation
 2. FM 5-33 Terrain Analysis
 3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
-

1803-CMDC-1209: Develop a Modified Combined Obstacle Overlay (MCOO)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given higher's operations order, a map, and an area of operations.

STANDARD: Per the reference.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Define the battlespace.
2. Conduct terrain analysis.
3. Conduct weather analysis.
4. Conduct threat analysis.
5. Graphically depict the integration of the above information.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 5-33 Terrain Analysis
 2. MCRP 2-12A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
 3. MCWP 2-1 Intelligence Operations
 4. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
-

1803-CMDC-1210: Conduct Terrain Analysis

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit, supported infantry unit, an operations order defining the battle space and mission, tactical scenario, map of the battle space, specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: To determine the effects of the environment on friendly and enemy operations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Define the battlespace to include: area of interest, area of influence, and area of operations.
2. Determine each of the following in the Area of Operations (AO), to include their effect on operations: observation and fields of fire, avenues of approach, key terrain to include decisive terrain, obstacles, and cover and concealment.
3. Determine key features of local weather and its effect on operations, to include: Beginning Morning Nautical Twilight (BMNT), Ending Evening Nautical Twilight (EENT), moon rise, moon set, percent illumination, and temperature (high, low), precipitation by type and amount, wind (directions and speed), fog and cloud ceiling, and weather effecting amphibious operations as necessary.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 21-26 Map Reading and Land Navigation
 2. FM 5-33 Terrain Analysis
 3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
-

1803-CMDC-1211: Conduct Threat Analysis

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit, supported infantry unit, an operations order defining the battle space and mission, tactical scenario, map of the battle space, specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: To develop an assessment of the threat's capabilities and intentions within the Area of Interest (AI).

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Determine enemy order of battle.
2. Determine enemy composition and disposition.
3. Determine enemy capabilities and limitations.
4. Determine enemy's most probable course of action.
5. Determine enemy's most dangerous course of action.

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 2-12A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
 2. MCWP 2-1 Intelligence Operations
 3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 4. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
-

1803-CMDC-1212: Conduct Estimate of Supportability

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit, supported unit, an operations order, tactical scenario, specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: To develop courses of action and support the operations order

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Analyze operations order.
2. Determine AA unit tasks (specified and implied).
3. Determine AA unit capabilities and limitations.
4. Develop courses of action based on the ability of the AA unit to support them.

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Determine commander's intent and desired end state and their impact on the AAV unit.
2. Conduct detailed analysis of battle space to include area of interest, area of influence, and area of operations.
3. Conduct terrain analysis to determine the effect on the scheme of maneuver.
4. Conduct threat analysis.
5. Determine Commander's Critical Information Requirements.
6. Request any information not provided in the order.
7. Determine any restraints and/or constraints.
8. Determine assumptions.
9. Identify tasks.
10. Develop estimate of supportability for AA unit.
11. Determine any additional resources required to accomplish the mission, as assigned.
12. Determine any additional training or rehearsals required: to include safety briefings and orientation training.
13. Determine current and anticipated mechanical readiness of unit.
14. Determine logistical support requirements.
15. Determine command and control requirements for AA units.

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 2. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
 3. MCWP 4-11 Tactical Level Logistics
 4. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
 5. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1803-CMDC-1215: Develop Operations Order

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETTS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit, supported unit, higher unit's operations order, tactical scenario, specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: To support the mission of the supported unit.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Develop Scheme of Maneuver for land and/or amphibious operations.
2. Develop Scheme of Fire.
3. Develop Scheme of Mobility/Counter-mobility/Survivability.
4. Develop Scheme of Logistics Support.
5. Develop Scheme of Communications Support.

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 3. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination
 4. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
 5. MCWP 4-11 Tactical Level Logistics
 6. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
 7. MCWP 6-22 Communications and Information Systems
 8. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1803-CMDC-1216: Issue Operations Order

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit, supported unit, an operations order, tactical scenario, and specified threat.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Assemble subordinate element leaders and other key personnel.
2. Take role to ensure that all required personnel are present.
3. Verify local time with commander's watch.
4. Orient personnel on map, terrain model, etc.
5. Direct personnel to "Hold all questions until the end."
6. Issue Mission statement.
7. Review Execution.
8. Review Administration and Logistics.
9. Review Command and Signals.

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 3. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
-

1803-CMDC-1217: Supervise an Assault Amphibian Unit in Preparations for Combat

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit, orders to prepare for combat, and references.

STANDARD: To ensure that unit has understanding of operations and possess logistical supplies to accomplish the mission.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Task organize the unit for preparation.
2. Forecast resupply requirements for sustainment of combat operations.
3. Direct resupply if not complete to include: refuel vehicles; refill all oil, hydraulic fluid, and lubricants containers; resupply ammo, food, potable water; resupply any repair parts;
4. Inspect vehicles: verify that vehicles have water, POLs, ammo, and rations; inspect for proper gear stowage; and inspect any maintenance work recently completed.
5. Conduct and supervise walk through rehearsals.
6. Conduct communication checks.
7. Communicate plan to higher headquarters.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
 3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 4. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1803-CMDC-1218: Navigate an Assault Amphibian Unit

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit, a map, area of operations, navigational devices, and references.

STANDARD: By plotting, navigating and locating known points.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Use terrain features as checkpoints as the AAV moves along the route.
2. Follow the terrain features using terrain association techniques.
3. Determine approximate directions of the various segments of the route.
4. Determine total distance for the route and distance between checkpoints.
5. Look to the rear to familiarize yourself with the view of the terrain if you must retrace the route.
6. Use COMPASS, GPS, TACNAV, PLRS devices to augment navigation.
7. Perform threat analysis to utilize terrain features for cover and concealment, if applicable.

8. Report all control measures to higher headquarters along the route.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 5-33 Terrain Analysis
 2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
-

1803-CMDC-1219: Identify Navigational Aids in Navigable Waterways

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV and navigational aids.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Identify channel markers (day and night).
2. Identify channel entrance and exit markers (day and night).

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1803-CMDC-1220: Control Assault Amphibian Unit Maneuver Elements

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit, area of operations, and references.

STANDARD: To minimize exposure to enemy observation and fire and maximize the security and speed of the unit formation.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Maintain control over maneuver elements.
2. Designate lead and trail elements.
3. Move with the elements that allows best control of the operation.
4. Determine mode of movement (traveling, traveling overwatch, bounding)

- overwatch).
5. Verify that elements maintain dispersion laterally and in-depth.
 6. Verify that visual contact is maintained between adjacent vehicles.
 7. Verify that each vehicle moves by separate, covered, and concealed route if possible.
 8. Maintain detailed plot on location of all elements.
 9. Verify that subordinate elements use internal methods of maneuver control.
 10. Verify that subordinate elements assigned special missions are controlled.
 11. Verify that operational reports are included in reports control system.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
-

1803-CMDC-1221: Control Assault Amphibian Unit Fire and Maneuver

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit, mission, area of operations, and references.

STANDARD: So the unit minimizes exposure to enemy observation and fire, but maximizes the security and speed of the unit formation while providing suppressive fires.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Control unit maneuver.
2. Designate target precedence.
3. Designate engagement criteria.
4. Designate weapons orientation.
5. Designate weapons status.
6. Designate pattern of fire.
7. Coordinate unit fire and maneuver.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
-

1803-CMDC-1222: Direct Unit Fires

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit, area of operations with an engagement area, targets, and references.

STANDARD: To provide timely and accurate fires on the targets.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Assess the situation.
2. Determine priority targets.
3. Determine fire pattern for the unit.
4. Select technique of fire.
5. Issue clear and concise fire command.
6. Adjust fires as appropriate.
7. Terminate engagement.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

1803-CMDC-1223: Conduct Combat Reporting

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit, area of operations, and higher's operations order.

STANDARD: Per the reference.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct reporting in accordance with unit SOP or the current operations order.
2. Report all required control measures.
3. Report friendly situation (SITREP) as required by unit SOP or current operations order.
4. Report enemy contact.
5. Report enemy jamming efforts (MIJI report).
6. Report enemy use of nuclear, biological, or chemical weapons (NBC report).
7. Report enemy use of artillery.
8. Report friendly logistical situation as required by unit SOP or current operations order (LOG SUM).
9. Report friendly personnel situation as required by unit SOP or current

- operations order (PERS SUM).
10. Report on enemy minefields encountered.
 11. Report Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs).
 12. Report mass casualties.
 13. Conduct MEDEVAC request.
 14. Conduct maintenance rapid request.

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
-

1803-CMDC-1224: Develop Unit Training Schedule

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given unit mission guidelines from higher headquarters, commander's guidance and the references.

STANDARD: To support unit mission, increase unit readiness, and comply with Marine Corps training policy.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Analyze guidance from higher headquarters.
2. Extract training requirements necessary for unit readiness.
3. Review current training directives/policies.
4. Make any changes necessary to increase training efficiency and to improve unit readiness.
5. Determine individual or unit proficiencies and deficiencies.
6. Determine instructional settings, methods, and media.
7. Specify when and where training will occur.
8. Schedule facilities and ranges, as appropriate.
9. Specify instructors and evaluators.
10. Provide administrative guidance and coordination, as appropriate.
11. Submit for approval, if required.
12. Publish training directives/policies when finalized and

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCRP 3-0A Unit Training Management Guide
 3. MCRP 3-0B How to Conduct Training
 4. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 5. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
-

1803-CMDC-1225: Supervise Unit Training

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit conducting training and references.

STANDARD: Per the unit commander's guidance and training directives.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Verify that personnel receive sufficient instruction in MOS/military skills in accordance with the events set forth in this publication.
2. Verify that exercises simulate actual combat conditions.
3. Verify that local conditions and specific unit functions are incorporated into exercise development.
4. Verify that training is integrated with unit mission.
5. Verify that safety regulations and considerations are applied; stop training if safety is compromised.
6. Evaluate how well Marines accomplish their duties.
7. Determine individual/unit training needs.
8. Determine individual responsibilities should be increased or decreased.
9. Identify training deficiencies and outline procedures to correct deficiencies or schedule required training.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCRP 3-0 A Unit Training Management Guide
 3. MCRP 3-0 B How to Conduct Training
-

1803-CMDC-1226: Supervise Assault Amphibian Unit Operational Safety Procedures

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit conducting operational safety procedures.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Verify that all embarked personnel receive orientation and safety brief in assembly area prior to the conduct of active operations.
2. Verify that all items in the troop compartment of the vehicle are secured to prevent injury.
3. Verify that all items for recovery operations, water and land, are

- serviceable and properly stowed on the vehicle.
4. Verify that all life jackets are serviceable and worn during water operations.
 5. Verify that all embarked personnel remain seated, wear helmet and flak jacket, during operations.
 6. Verify that all dismounted personnel maintain minimum safe distance from vehicles and are visible to the crew at all times.
 7. Verify that crews use ground guides in congested or limited visibility conditions.
 8. Verify that cargo and ammunition are properly loaded and secured.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
-

1803-CMDC-1227: Perform Duties as Special Staff Officer

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: In addition to advising supported unit commander of AAV operations, this task aids the assault amphibian officer when acting as liaison officer to infantry, MAGTF, or joint staffs.

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a supported unit and references.

STANDARD: So the supported unit commander is provided all necessary information and communications to supporting AA units to plan, coordinate, and conduct missions with AAVs.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Advise on assignment of Assault Amphibian Vehicles (AAV) to various classes of shipping based on the ship's carrying capacity; location of personnel, equipment, and supplies to be lifted; and employment ashore.
2. Advise on optimum distances from AAV standpoint from Amphibious vehicle launching circle to the line of departure LD to beach.
3. Advise on techniques for discharging assault troops on the beach, to include use of assault amphibious vehicles in projected mechanized operations ashore.
4. Advise on employment of assault amphibious vehicles in transfer operations and the overall conduct of such operations, if contemplated.
5. Advise on optimum assault amphibious vehicle formations and timing of assault amphibious vehicle waves.
6. Assist the landing support officer in planning for combat service support employment of assault amphibious units.
7. Coordinate all aspects of assault amphibious vehicle employment with Naval control groups and ships involved with assault amphibious vehicle operations.

8. Advise on maintenance requirements for assault amphibian units, to include location of maintenance areas ashore, assignment of maintenance personnel to higher echelon maintenance units, phasing ashore spare parts, and probable breakdown rates.
9. Advise on requirement of assault amphibian units for fuel, oil, and other lubricants during operations ashore. Coordination with G-4 on planning for assault amphibian unit assistance in fuel resupply by use of tanker trucks organic to the unit and fuel-ferrying assemblies transported in assault amphibious vehicles.
10. Assist in planning for employment of AAVC7A1 vehicles as command posts, observation posts, etc.
11. Assist in planning for employment of assault amphibious vehicles in special operations such as river crossings, jungle operations, and mountain operations.
12. Advise on employment of signals, marker devices, etc., for assault amphibious vehicle control during night landings and operations conducted under cover of darkness.
13. Advise on safety requirements when personnel are to be embarked in assault amphibious vehicles and recommending training programs for units to be embarked.

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 2. MCWP 6-2 MAGTF Command and Control Operations
-

1803-VOPS-1301: Supervise Preoperation Checks

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an order to conduct operations and a preoperations checklist.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Check all oil levels and conditions.
2. Check coolant level and condition.
3. Check hydraulic reservoir oil level.
4. Check battery electrolyte and terminal condition.
5. Check fuel level.
6. Drain fuel water separator on fuel filter.
7. Drain fuel tank sediment.
8. Check for fuel, oil, and coolant leaks.
9. Check for hull and suspension damage.
10. Check for loose clamps, connectors, and lines.
11. Check the air cleaner restriction indicator.
12. Check grille covers.

13. Check for loose bolts on the sprockets, universals, etc.
14. Check the oil level and condition in the road wheels and idler wheels.
15. Check for proper track tension 5/8 inch over 2nd road wheel.
16. Check the fire extinguisher seals.
17. Check the portable fire extinguisher.
18. Check the generator, coolant fan, and coolant pump drive belts.
19. Stow all loose equipment.
20. Check the lamp/test warning cancel switch, turn it to Lamp Test first. All lights should flash. Then turn it to Cancel and all lights will stop flashing.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1803-VOPS-1302: Supervise Prewater Operation Checks

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit conducting prewater operation checks and checklists.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Verify that all personnel have pre water operations checklists.
2. Verify that all personnel conduct prewater operations checklists as directed.
3. Verify that all embarked personnel including crews are manifested on the completed prewater operations checklists and that the checklists are retained by the appropriate personnel prior to the operation.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 3. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1803-VOPS-1303: Supervise Embarkation of Personnel Aboard AAVs

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit with personnel to embark.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Verify that safety and orientation brief has been given.
2. Verify that emergency procedures have been briefed and rehearsed, as appropriate.
3. Verify that all personnel are placed on a manifest and the manifest is forwarded through the AAV chain.
4. Verify that weapons are inspected and placed in a safe condition.
5. Verify that troops are embarked in reverse order to their plan to disembark.
6. Verify that all personnel wear helmets and flak jackets when the vehicle is in motion.
7. Verify that all personnel are instructed on the proper operation of and methods for securing their hatches.
8. Verify that all personnel wear life jackets during waterborne operations.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 3. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1803-VOPS-1304: Start AAV Engine Under Normal Conditions

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETTS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV and appropriate collateral material.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Perform preoperation checks.
2. Ensure transmission gear selector is in N (neutral).
3. Ensure hand throttle is in IDLE.
4. Ensure fuel connector is OFF and fuel shutoff valve is open.
5. Place master switch ON.
6. Place mode selector switch in LAND mode.
7. Press starter switch and hold for 5 seconds. Allow five seconds for DDU interrupter to repower display. Observe BAT VOLTS display. If bargraph flashes and ambient temperature is above 50 degrees F, or engine does not

- crank, or cranks a turn or two and stops, release starter and turn master switch to OFF. Notify organizational maintenance.
8. If engine turn normally, continue to press starter switch for 15 seconds to prime lubrication system.
 9. Place fuel control ON.
 10. Place lamp test/warning cancel switch to LAMP TEST.
 11. Press starter switch firmly to engage starting motor.
 12. Let engine idle for 30 seconds.
 13. Before moving vehicle check driver's display panel.
 14. Check fuel level indicator to be sure there is enough fuel.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1803-VOPS-1305: Operate AAV on Land

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV, area of operation, and references.

STANDARD: Without loss of vehicle control at any time, applying emergency procedures as required, and continuously observing the forward terrain for possible enemy targets and for likely friendly firing positions.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Perform pre-operations checks.
2. Verify that all personnel are properly seated and wearing helmets and flak jackets.
3. Verify that all hatches are properly secured: ramp is up and dogged; turret, driver, and troop commander hatches are secured; and cargo hatches are secured.
4. Make sure any cargo is tied down for travel.
5. Make sure mode selector switch is in LAND mode.
6. Properly start the AAV.
7. Place transmission gear selector in position needed.
8. Release parking brake.
9. Press accelerator pedal slowly and evenly.
10. Check operating systems to ensure vehicle is functioning properly.
11. Perform during operations checks as required.
12. To pivot steer, stop the vehicle and place transmission gear selector in PIVOT. Turn steering wheel in direction you want to pivot. Port and starboard tracks will turn opposite directions and vehicle will turn without moving forward.
13. Observe driving cautions.
14. Operate the vehicle on land, driving in reverse and pivoting the vehicle

- as required.
15. Drive up and down hills as required.
 16. Drive over obstacles as required. Do not drive over obstacles that are narrower than the span of the track.
 17. Drive across ditches as required.
 18. Use evasive driving techniques as required.
 19. Drive at night, with and without lights, with and without night vision devices, as required.
 20. Perform during operation checks.
 21. Stop the vehicle properly.
 22. Perform after operations checks.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 3. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1803-VOPS-1306: Operate AAV System Components

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an operational AAV.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct pre-operations checks.
2. Start engine.
3. Operate audio warning system.
4. Operate personnel heater.
5. Inspect manual fire suppression system.
6. Arm the Automatic Fire Sensing and Suppression System (AFSSS).
7. Inspect the portable fire extinguisher.
8. Operate the vehicle lights.
9. Operate the ventilation system.
10. Install and remove center troop seats.
11. Operate hatches.
12. Operate intake and exhaust grills.
13. Operate ramp.
14. Install and remove blackout covers.
15. Operate searchlight.
16. Operate bow plane.
17. Operate water drive system.
18. Operate magnetic heading system.
19. Operate extension light (drop light).
20. Stop engine.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Set parking brake.
2. Perform the pre-operation checks.
3. Loosen thumbscrew and open smoke generation system valve access door.
4. Turn smoke system manual control "ON".
5. Close access door and secure thumb screw.
6. Make sure switch guard is closed (down position).
7. Start engine.
8. Check to make sure smoke generation indicator light is "OFF".
9. Let engine idle at least 30 seconds and slowly increase engine speed to 1000/1200 rpm (for cold engine, warm up engine at 1000/1200 rpm for about 3 minutes).
10. Operate moving vehicle at 1800 to 2000 rpm.
11. Operate stationary vehicle with brakes on and transmission in 4th gear at engine speed above 2000 rpm.
12. Lift up smoke generation switch guard and hold smoke switch in the up "ON" position.
13. Check to make sure smoke generation light is "ON".
14. To shut down, place smoke switch guard down.
15. Make sure transmission gear selector is in N (neutral).
16. Make sure parking brake is set.
17. Run engine at about 1000 rpm for 3 to 5 minutes to make sure power train cools off slowly; if this is not possible run it at a fast idle for at least 30 to 60 seconds.
18. Make sure hand throttle is in IDLE and do not pump accelerator when stopping engine.
19. Place fuel control "OFF" and engine will stop.
20. Place master switch "OFF".
21. Loosen thumbscrew and open access door.
22. Turn smoke system manual control "OFF".
23. Close access door and secure with thumbscrew.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

1803-VOPS-1309: Supervise Land Tow of a Disabled AAV

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a disabled AAV capable of being towed on land, an operational AAV to support towing, trained crews, tow bars, tow cables, and appropriate collateral material.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Connect tow bar to forward towing eyes of disabled vehicle and to pintle of tow vehicle.
2. When using tow cables, connect one end of tow cables to forward towing eyes of disabled vehicle.
3. Cross connect other end of tow cables to aft towing eyes of tow vehicle.
4. When towing vehicle equipped with a bow plane on land, the bow plane must be fully retracted. If the bow plane cannot be retracted from the driver's station, it should be removed from the vehicle before attaching tow cables or tow bar.
5. Disengage hydrostatic steer unit of disabled vehicle by pulling lever outboard, then aft.
6. Disengage power takeoff by pulling lever on outboard, then forward.
7. Have organizational maintenance disconnect final drive universal joints.
8. Station an observer in troop compartment of tow vehicle to view disabled vehicle through ramp vision block.
9. Open cover and view disabled vehicle through ramp vision block. Inform driver of position and condition of disabled vehicle. Watch for hand and arm signals from crew of disabled vehicle and report to driver as needed.
10. If needed, pull quick-release handle on inside of ramp to open tow pintle and release disabled vehicle.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
 3. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1803-VOPS-1310: Supervise Water Tow of a Disabled AAV

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a disabled AAV capable of being towed in water, an operational AAV to support towing, trained crews, tow bars, tow cables, and appropriate collateral material.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Hook two toelines on sea tow quick-release and around mooring cleats on tow vehicle. Hook other end of toelines to mooring cleats on disabled

- vehicle.
2. Before towing a vehicle equipped with a bow plane in open water, the bow plane of the towed vehicle should be fully retracted. If the bow plane cannot be retracted, the towlines should be placed around the sides of the bow plane.
 3. Station an observer in troop compartment of tow vehicle to view disabled vehicle through ramp vision block.
 4. Open cover and view disabled vehicle through ramp vision block.
 5. To release towlines, pull up on outside release handle or pull down on inside release handle.
 6. To reset quick-release, return outside handle to clip, and push inside handle flush to overhead.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
 3. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1803-VOPS-1311: Supervise Recovery of Disabled AAV

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit and a disabled AAV.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Reconnoiter area, establish security, as necessary.
2. Verify the solution.
3. Orient the personnel and instruct them to assemble the rigging and then move to a safe location.
4. Verify that rigging is rechecked.
5. Supervise the recovery.
6. Tow disabled AAV.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
 3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 4. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1803-VOPS-1312: Maintain CVC Helmet

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a CVC helmet, warm water, mild soap solution, dry cloth, PM brush, eraser, and the references.

STANDARD: By inspecting for serviceability, ensuring the liner and outer shell, cords, and connectors are clean.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Inspect outer shell for cracks, worn rubber edging and loose rivets.
2. Verify that switch operates smoothly.
3. Clean sweatband and liner with warm water and mild soap solution (do not wet the earphone microphone set).
4. Wipe off cords.
5. Clean connectors with PM brush and eraser.

REFERENCES:

1. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
 2. TM 11-5820-401-10-2 Operator's Manual (VRC-12)
-

1803-VOPS-1313: Audit Ordnance Vehicle Logbook

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV ordnance vehicle logbook.

STANDARD: Per the reference.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Inventory log book to ensure that it is accurate.
2. Ensure entries are made when a minimum of one mile and/or hour is added to the speedometer/tachometer.
3. Inventory log book to ensure that is complete.

REFERENCE:

1. TM 4700-15/1 Marine Corps Ground Equipment Record Procedures
-

1803-VOPS-1314: Maintain Driver Vision Enhancement (DVE) Sight

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a DVE night vision viewer, alcohol, lens cleaning solution, and lens tissue.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Flush surfaces of lenses with alcohol.
2. Soak lens tissue using cleaning solution.
3. Apply solution to lenses dabbing lightly until surface is evenly covered.
4. Wait 1 to 3 minutes for solution to loosen heavy dirt (do not allow solution to dry). Flush solution away with alcohol.
5. Repeat solution application as needed to clean dirty optics.
6. Clean lenses in small section by applying cleaning solution and gently wiping with clean tissue.
7. Rinse lenses with alcohol. Dry lenses by wiping lightly in a single direction with clean lens tissue.
8. Report any damage to organizational maintenance.

REFERENCES:

1. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
2. TM 11-5855-249-10 Operator's Manual for Viewer, Drivers Night Vision System, AN/VVS-2

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task is reference dependent and requires the use of the technical manual for successful task performance. Performance in the appropriate reference should be followed closely.

1803-VOPS-1315: Operate Driver's Night Vision Device

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a driver's night vision device.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct pre-operations checks and services.
2. Install night vision device in driver's station.

3. Connect power cable to vehicle or use batteries as appropriate.
4. Verify that sight is centered on hatch prior to vehicle operation.
5. Focus field of view prior to vehicle operation.

REFERENCES:

1. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
 2. TM 11-5855-249-10 Operator's Manual for Viewer, Drivers Night Vision System, AN/VVS-2
-

1803-VOPS-1316: Maintain Night Vision Goggles

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETTS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given night vision goggles with carrying case, clean lint-free cloths, lens tissue, and clean water.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Inspect goggles and carrier.
2. Inspect optical surfaces for dirt, fingerprints, chips, or cracks.
3. Inspect exterior surface for damage.
4. Inspect battery compartment for corrosion, defective battery cap spring.
5. Inspect eye relief adjustment to ensure free movement.
6. Rotate diopter adjustment rings and check for free motion.
7. Inspect interpupillary adjustment and ensure monoculars freely move farther apart and closer together.
8. Rotate focus knob and check for free movement.
9. Inspect rotary switch and its mechanical action.
10. Inspect headmount assembly for holes, cracks, defective fasteners.
11. Clean carrying case.

REFERENCES:

1. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
 2. TM 11-5855-262-10-2 Operator's Manual for Night Vision Goggles, AN/PVS-7B
-

1803-VOPS-1317: Operate Night Vision Goggles

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETTS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given night vision goggles.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct pre-operations checks.
2. Prepare goggles for operation.
3. Operate the goggles.
4. Shutdown and stow the goggles.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. TM 11-5855-262-10-2 Operator's Manual for Night Vision Goggles, AN/PVS-7B
-

1803-VOPS-1318: Supervise Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services of Assault Amphibian Unit

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit and associated equipment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Verify that all unit maintenance management policies are enforced.
2. Verify that all collateral materials for all items are inventoried, repaired, or replaced as necessary on a regular basis.
3. Verify that all first echelon preventive maintenance checks and services are conducted on all items organic to the unit.
4. Verify that corrective maintenance efforts are properly documented.
5. Verify that all items requiring calibration are serviced according to applicable technical manuals.
6. Verify that all required inspections, services, and repairs are conducted on all communications equipment organic to the unit.
7. Verify that all required inspections, services, and repairs are conducted on all optical equipment organic to the unit.
8. Verify that all required inspections, services, and repairs are conducted on all vehicles organic to the unit.
9. Verify that all required inspections, services, and repairs are conducted on all weapons organic to the unit.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1803-VOPS-1319: Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on AAV Communications Equipment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV and appropriate collateral material.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Clean and inspect the amplifier.
2. Clean and inspect the intercom system components.
3. Clean and inspect the Frequency Selector Control.
4. Clean and inspect the radios.
5. Clean and inspect the radio mounts.
6. Report all discrepancies to organizational maintenance.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. TM 08636A-14/1 USMC Technical Manual, Intercom Set AN/VIC-2(V)
 3. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1803-CSS-1501: Monitor Daily Progress Report

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an open Equipment Repair Order (ERO), Equipment Repair Order Shopping List (EROSL), and a current Daily Progress Report (DPR)

STANDARD: Per the reference.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Obtain (DPR) which is no more than five days old.
2. Verify job status of all EROs.
3. Verify EROs reflecting a "short parts" status have parts on order or EROSLs being processed.
4. Annotate on the EROSL those parts and transactions that appear on the DPR. Ensure that all remaining parts or transaction on the EROSL are submitted to the supply source for action at the next unit reconciliation.
5. Verify that there are no parts on order that reflect a higher FAD status

- than that of the ERO.
6. Verify that all EROs have a valid category and priority for the work being requested.
 7. Verify that all EROs have valid priorities and indicator codes.
 8. Brief unit commander on the DPR, as required.

REFERENCE:

1. MCO P4790.2 MIMMS Field Procedures Manual
-

1803-CSS-1502: Initiate a Work Request

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a NAVMC 10245, ERO (Equipment Repair Order), and an AAV requiring maintenance action.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Review ERO information in TM 4700-15/1.
2. Enter Serial No. Turned in if different from below, if applicable.
3. Enter Y to indicate an ORF (Operational Readiness Float) exchange is desired if the RDD (Required Delivery Date) cannot be met. Enter N if no exchange is desired (block 11).
4. Enter Organization Doing Repairs or to which the equipment is being evacuated (if applicable).
5. Enter DEST.AC (Designation Activity) (if applicable/blocks 12-16).
6. Enter request No. (if applicable/blocks 17-20).
7. Enter DCD (Deadline Control Date) (if applicable/blocks 21-24).
8. Enter ECH (Echelon) of repair (block 25).
9. Enter serial number of equipment (if applicable/blocks 26-35).
10. Enter Job ID from current edition of the Marine Corps User's Manual, UM 4790-5 (if applicable/blocks 36-37).
11. Enter QTY to be repaired under this ERO (blocks 38-39); ensure that the field is filled.
12. Enter RDD (if applicable/blocks 40-43).
13. Enter Owing Organization.
14. Enter Owner AC (Activity Code) (blocks 44-48).
15. Have authorized person sign Authorized By (Signature) Date block after rest of ERO is completed.
16. Enter Defect code from UM 4790-5 (if applicable/blocks 49-51).
17. Enter PRI (Priority) assigned (blocks 52-53).
18. Enter ID Number (blocks 54-59).
19. Enter Nomenclature.
20. Circle Category Code.
21. Enter JON (Job Order Number) (blocks 63-76).
22. Have authorized person sign Released From Investigation (Signature) block

- (if applicable).
23. Enter Owner's Phone Number.
 24. Enter SEC REP (Secondary Repairable) NSN (if applicable).
 25. Enter Remarks section with any other necessary information.
 26. Turn in ERO, equipment, and records to maintenance activity; receive yellow copy as receipt.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 4400.82_ MIMMS Controlled Item Management Manual
 2. MCO 4700-15/1 Equipment Record Procedures
 3. MCO P4790.2 MIMMS Field Procedures Manual
 4. UM 4700.5 MIMMS Field Procedures Manual
-

1803-CSS-1503: Prepare an ERO Shopping List (EROSL)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given NAVMC 10925, EROSL (ERO Shopping/transaction List) and an active ERO.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Enter ERO number.
2. Enter unit and date.
3. Circle appropriate Material Usage Code.
4. Annotate the shop section.
5. Enter the reference source in the letter blank "A".
6. Enter remaining letter blanks.
7. Enter the requisition information using the appropriate template.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 4400.82_ MIMMS Controlled Item Management Manual
 2. MCO 4700-15/1 Equipment Record Procedures
 3. NAVMC 10925 Equipment Repair Order Shopping List (EROSL)
 4. UM 4700.5 MIMMS Field Procedures Manual
-

1803-CSS-1504: Conduct Vehicle Inspection of Assault Amphibian Unit

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit's vehicles and equipment, current daily progress report, and references.

STANDARD: To ensure accountability, serviceability, and operational readiness of unit equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Inspect collateral material for accountability, serviceability, and cleanliness.
2. Inspect the AAV for serviceability and cleanliness.
3. Verify that all systems are fully operational.
4. Verify that any mechanical defects are noted on the appropriate vehicle's ERO, that higher echelons are notified of work requiring their assistance, that all required parts are noted on the unit's DPR.
5. Verify that all required services have been conducted and noted in the vehicles records.
6. Inspect the weapon(s) for serviceability and cleanliness.
7. Verify that the weapon(s) are fully operational.
8. Verify that any mechanical defects are noted on the appropriate ERO, that higher echelons are notified of work requiring their assistance, and that all required parts are noted on the unit's DPR.
9. Verify that all required services have been conducted and noted in the weapons' records.
10. Verify that all missing or unserviceable items are reflected on the DPR.
11. Verify that all items are accounted for on inventory forms.
12. Inspect the communication system for cleanliness and serviceability, to include the crew's CVC helmets.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1803-AMPH-1601: Assist in Developing the Landing Plan

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit, higher headquarters operations order, a list of available amphibious ship platforms, and references.

STANDARD: To ensure support of the concept of operations ashore maximizes AAV boat spaces, facilitates troop embarkation aboard AAVs, and provides logistical support ashore with respect to AA unit employment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct mission analysis of supported unit's operations order and provide appropriate input.
2. Determine assault amphibian lift requirements for assault elements, scheduled waves, on-call waves, and nonscheduled waves.
3. Review Amphibious Vehicle Availability Table to determine the number and periods of availability for each type of AAV assigned to the operation.
4. Determine landing force lift requirements for the ship-to-shore movement in coordination with a review of the Amphibious Vehicle Availability Table, Helicopter Availability Table, and the Landing Craft Availability Table.
5. Consider enemy capabilities to counter surface and/or air assaults.
6. Allow flexibility of on-call and nonscheduled waves.
7. Assign elements to one of five categories in order to indicate their relative priority for landing and to facilitate control of the ship-to-shore movement.
8. Allocate assets for use by subordinate elements, and ensure that the proposed Landing Diagram, Assault Schedule, and Landing Sequence Table are developed concurrently and are mutually compatible.
9. Develop Serial Assignment Table based on task organization for the landing.
10. Develop Landing Craft and Amphibious Vehicle Assignment Table that is coordinated with affected units.
11. Develop Assault Landing Table and the Serial Assignment Table ensure that proper coordination with appropriate command element.
12. Provide input for Approach Schedule.
13. Develop Debarkation Schedule in coordination with Naval personnel.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCRP 3-31B Amphibious Ships and Landing Craft Data Book
3. MCRP 5-12A Operational Terms and Symbols
4. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
5. MCWP 3-17.3 MAGTF Breaching Operations
6. MCWP 3-31.3 Surf Zone Operations
7. MCWP 3-31.5 Ship-to-Shore Movement
8. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
9. MCWP 5-11 Amphibious Task Force Planning
10. MCWP 5-11.2 The Amphibious Task Force Plan
11. NWP 22-3 Ship-to-Shore Movement

1803-AMPH-1602: Analyze Landing Plan

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit, higher's operations order, a landing plan, and a list of amphibious ship platforms.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Reconcile the Landing Plan with the scheme of maneuver ashore.
2. Examine the Landing Plan Diagram and extract the AAV-borne scheduled waves of the assault.
3. Examine the Approach Schedule and extract the wave schedules.
4. Analyze the Landing Craft and Amphibious Vehicle Assignment Schedule and verify the boat team assignments.
5. Analyze the Serial Assignment Table to determine the grouping of units to be landed on a specified beach at the specified/correct time.
6. Analyze the Landing Sequence Table to determine the priority of landing of nonscheduled serials.
7. Analyze the Assault Schedule to determine the composition and timing of waves landing over designated beaches.
8. Analyze the Amphibious Vehicle Availability Table to determine the type, number and ship location of amphibious vehicles which are available to the landing force.
9. Include all appendices and annexes.
10. Determine its supportability by the AA unit.
11. Determine unique requirements of the AA unit to support the landing plan.
12. Coordinate with the supported unit staff.
13. Develop the control measures necessary for the AA unit to execute the landing plan.
14. The operations order and landing plan should also contain the following key information: task organization for waves, boat groups, assault schedule, type of launch expected, prelaunch warm up time and sequence, time for undogging, staging of AAVs, frequencies and call signs, radio checks per EMCON, timeline for issuing ammunition and embarking infantry, planned time for launch, launch signals, procedures for vehicle if stalled in well deck, ballast conditions, multiple vehicle launches from a single ship (if planned), simulated launches from multiple ships (if planned), launch interval, launch sequence, boat line location, designation of wave guides and commanders, Navy Control Group command and control, recovery planning if vehicles become disabled, signals for emergency lifting of Naval Gunfire, location of line of departure, beach characteristics, and barriers to landing and enemy defenses expected.

REFERENCES:

1. JCS PUB 3-02 Joint Doctrine for Amphibious Operations
 2. JCS PUB 3-02.1 Joint Doctrine for Landing Force Operations
 3. MCRP 3-31.3A Over the Horizon Surface Operations
 4. MCRP 3-31B Amphibious Ships and Landing Craft Data Book
 5. MCRP 4-11.3D The Naval Beach Group
 6. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 7. MCWP 3-31.1 Supporting Arms in Amphibious Operations
 8. MCWP 3-31.2 Mine Warfare
 9. MCWP 3-31.3 Surf Zone Operations
 10. MCWP 3-31.5 Ship-to-Shore Movement
 11. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
 12. MCWP 5-11 Amphibious Task Force Planning
 13. MCWP 5-11.2 The Amphibious Task Force Plan
-

1803-AMPH-1603: Supervise Preparation of AAV Element for Debarkation from Amphibious Shipping

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit preparing for debarkation from amphibious shipping, higher's operations order, a supporting landing plan, and use of amphibious shipping well-deck.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Verify the proper conduct of pre-water operation checks and services of AAVs.
2. Verify the proper conduct of communications checks.
3. Conduct checks of intercom system between all stations on the vehicles.
4. Conduct checks between all vehicles on the assigned frequencies.
5. Conduct checks between command vehicles and the supported unit.
6. Conduct checks between the AAV unit and the ship, including the safety boats.
7. Verify the proper issuing of ammunition and pyrotechnics to AAVs.
8. Verify the ungriping of vehicles if necessary. Gripes will be stowed in accordance to guidance from the ship's guidance.
9. Verify that passenger safety orientation is conducted and life jackets are issued by crew.
10. Verify the embarkation of all troops.
11. Verify the proper positioning of AAVs for launch under guidance from ship's well deck personnel.
12. Verify the placing vehicles into water operating mode.
13. Verify that splash team operations is conducted.
14. Verify the proper launch of vehicles from well-deck in accordance with guidance from ship's well deck personnel.

REFERENCES:

1. LFM 03 Amphibious Embarkation
 2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 3. MCRP 3-31B Amphibious Ships and Landing Craft Data Book
 4. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
-

1803-AMPH-1604: Coordinate Embarkation/Debarkation Plans on Amphibious Shipping with Naval Personnel

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit, Amphibious Objective Area, applicable communications with assigned amphibious shipping personnel, and references.

STANDARD: So that all personnel, equipment, ordnance, and vehicles are safely and securely embarked aboard amphibious shipping.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Confirm number and type of AAVs.
2. Confirm call signs and frequencies for communication between ship, safety boats, and AA unit.
3. Confirm center-beach grid coordinates with Naval personnel.
4. Confirm timeline for: set condition One Alpha for AAV/Well deck operations, launch of safety boats, and launch of AAVs to ship.
5. Confirm procedures for recovery of disabled AAV with ship.
6. Confirm actions for AAV sinking during movement with ship.
7. Confirm ships plan for depth of water/ballast condition at sill on well deck.
8. Confirm position/angle of stern gate.
9. Confirm positioning of well deck crew and hand and arm signals used by well deck crews for maneuvering AAVs into and inside of the well deck.
10. Confirm AAV positioning within the well deck to provide adequate space for: ship's fire fighting crews, conducting AAV after operations checks and services, conducting required AAV corrective maintenance, and Refueling of AAVs within well deck if necessary.
11. Attend pre-assault briefing to coordinate debarkation plans with Naval personnel.
12. Coordinate time line for launch.
13. Coordinate with ship's personnel for procedures in the event of AAV becoming disabled in the well deck during launch.
14. Coordinate waterborne control measures.
15. Coordinate with ship's personnel for any AAVs or AAV personnel remaining aboard ship.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCRP 3-31B Amphibious Ships and Landing Craft Data Book
3. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
4. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task will be conducted normally at the pre-sail conference.

1803-AMPH-1605: Perform Duties of Wave Commander

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Wave commander is tactically responsible for movement of wave of AAVs from ship-to-shore. A wave is considered a group of vehicles or

boats that land at the same beach at the same time.

BILLETTS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit, amphibious objective area, a landing diagram, communications with the primary control ship, and references.

STANDARD: So the AAV wave touches down at the specific beach and time in the prescribed formation.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Direct the formation of vehicle waves.
2. Communicate with Primary Control Shipping for AA unit pace and placement in the boat lane.
3. Verify that vehicles are in proper sequence to ensure tactical unity.
4. Direct waterborne movement.
5. Maintain vehicle intervals and distances.
6. Report when vehicles have landed at the beach.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCRP 3-31B Amphibious Ships and Landing Craft Data Book
3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. MCWP 3-31.5 Ship-to-Shore Movement

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

UNITS/PERSONNEL: Amphibious shipping required.

1803-AMPH-1606: Develop Surf Observation (SUROB) Report

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Surf observation report will be conducted and reported, if applicable, prior to waterborne operations. This event will aid the assault amphibian officer in determining waterborne operational conditions and ultimately whether to splash his AA unit or not.

BILLETTS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Amphibious Objective Area and references.

STANDARD: To validate the safety of splashing AAVs.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Line Alpha-determine significant breaker height.
2. Line Bravo-determine maximum breaker height.
3. Line Charlie-determine breaker period.
4. Line Delta-determine breaker type.
5. Line Echo-determine breaker angle.
6. Line Foxtrot-determine littoral current.
7. Line Golf-determine depth of surf zone and lines of breakers.
8. Line Hotel-determine miscellaneous information: wind speed and angle, secondary breaker height, debris in the surf zone, and sea state.
9. Employ NATO format as required.
10. Translate SUROB into Modified Surf Index (MSI) as required.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
-

1803-AMPH-1607: Direct Assault Amphibian Unit Waterborne Movement

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit and an amphibious area of operation.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Verify that all crews conduct pre-water operations checks and services.
2. Verify that the pre-water operations checklists and manifests for each vehicle is left with appropriate shipboard personnel or are retained by the AA unit.
3. Verify that a splash team checks each vehicle prior to launch onto the water.
4. Establish the control measure necessary to conduct waterborne movement, including: entry points, splash teams, interval at launch; formation, rate of march, catch up speed while waterborne; actions in the event of enemy contact; actions in the event of enemy mines and obstacles; actions in the event of a disabled AAV in the water; and actions in the event of a sinking AAV in the water.
5. Exit point or landing beach, to include alternate landing sites or "safe harbors" in the event of emergencies.
6. Actions on exiting water.
7. Direct AAV movement, ensuring proper rate of march, formation, and weapons orientation.
8. Verify proper exiting.

- for the various AA elements.
2. Advise the unit commander and his staff on ability of AAVs to support each course of action based on: current and anticipated mechanical readiness of AA unit, orientation and mission specific unit training required, task organization of AAVs to support the scheme of maneuver, effects of terrain and weather on AAV maneuverability and sustainability, effects of enemy obstacle plan on AAV maneuverability and sustainability, effects of enemy armor and anti-armor assets on AA units, logistical and maintenance requirements of AA unit to support scheme of maneuver, ability of AAVs to augment logistical lift, command and control assets organic to the AA unit, and effects of enemy NBC operations on AA unit.
 3. Recommend solutions to any limiting factors or alternate courses of action, as required.
 4. Advise supported unit commander on AAV movement techniques.
 5. Unsuitable missions or unsafe operating conditions will be brought to the attention of the commander immediately.

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 3. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
-

1803-TAC-1702: Prepare Assault Amphibian Unit Fire Plan Sketch

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit in defensive positions and subordinate unit sketches.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Collect and verify the range cards for the unit.
2. Integrate the range cards into single sketch, including vehicle positions and important terrain features.
3. Integrate any supporting arms assets available.
4. Make one copy for the AA unit and one copy for the supported unit commander.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
-

1803-TAC-1703: Coordinate Assault Amphibian Unit Fire Plan Sketch with Supported Unit Commander

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit's fire plan sketch, higher headquarters' operations order, and references.

STANDARD: So that the fire plan sketch maximizes use of the Upgunned Weapon Station through effective coverage of most likely avenues of enemy approach, clear, over-lapping fields of fire, and coverage of dead space in cooperation with organic infantry direct and indirect fire weapons.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Integrate AA unit fire sketch with associated dismounted infantry and engineers attached to the company/team.
2. Verify that indirect fire capability of AAVs is used to cover major direct fire dead spaces.
3. Advise supported unit commander on options for the employment of AAV fires: as heavy weapons teams in support of associated rifle platoons at AA section level, as mounted outposts, as mounted reserve force, and as heavy weapons in direct support of associated squads.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 3. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1803-TAC-1704: Assign Unit Sectors of Fire

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit, higher headquarters operations order, an area of operations, and references.

STANDARD: So that all subordinate units can effectively cover avenues of approach and the assigned platoon sector of fire.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Receive unit's sector of fire from higher headquarters' operation order or

- from leaders' reconnaissance, if applicable.
2. Analyze unit and supported unit sector of fires assigned by higher headquarters through METT-T.
 3. Determine subordinate unit vehicle areas.
 4. Determine sectors of fire for subordinate units.
 5. Determine TRPs if not given to aid sectors of fire.
 6. Assign sectors of fire to subordinates through map or leader's reconnaissance.

REFERENCES :

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
-

1803-TAC-1705: Scan Area

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given area of operations within field of view.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct ground search using rapid-scan method.
2. Conduct ground search using slow (50 meter) scan method.
3. Conduct ground search using detailed search method.
4. Conduct air search using horizontal search and scan.
5. Conduct air search using vertical search and scan.

REFERENCES :

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 3. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1803-TAC-1706: Supervise Use of Camouflage, Cover, and Concealment by Assault Amphibian Unit

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit and area of operations.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Verify that AAV positions take maximum advantage of the local terrain to hide the vehicle, especially the suspension.
2. Verify that crews use natural vegetation to break up the outline of the vehicle.
3. Verify that glare from optics and vision blocks is reduced.
4. Verify that noise and light discipline.
5. Verify that camouflage netting is necessary.
6. Verify that tracks leading into position are brushed out or covered.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

6007. 2000-LEVEL 1803 INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

1803-CMDC-2201: Maintain a Ground Safety Program

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit and references.

STANDARD: To ensure procedures are implemented to minimize mishaps.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Identify requirements for safety related programs.
2. Develop a ground safety plan.
3. Identify potential hazards.
4. Identify techniques employed to prevent mishaps.
5. Identify responsibilities of the safety manager to prevent mishaps.
6. Direct safety training of personnel to prevent mishaps.
7. Identify the requirements to report and record mishaps.
8. Monitor safety procedures at the commodity level.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCO 5100.19 MC Traffic Safety Program (DRIVESAFE)
-

1803-CMDC-2202: Develop Scheme of Intelligence Support

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Assistant Operations Officer, Battalion Commander, Battalion Executive Officer, Battalion Logistics Officer, Battalion Operations Officer

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit, supported unit, higher unit's operations order, tactical scenario, specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct terrain analysis to determine: obstacles, avenues of approach, key terrain to include decisive terrain, observation and fields of fire, cover and concealment, effects of the above on the scheme of maneuver, effects on the above on the enemy's options.
2. Conduct analysis of weather to include: Beginning Morning Nautical Twilight (BMNT), Evening Ending Nautical Twilight (EENT), moon rise, moon

set, percentage of illumination, temperature high and low, precipitation type and chance, wind speed and direction, fog and cloud ceiling, sea state to include tide and current, and the effects of the above on operations.

3. Conduct threat analysis to include: order of battle (composition, disposition), capabilities especially armor, anti armor, and NBC, limitations especially ammunition and POL supply situation, actions over the last 24 hours, most likely courses of action, and most dangerous course of action.
4. Develop Modified Combined Operations Overlay (MCOO): mobility corridors by type and known enemy positions.
5. Establish unit reporting procedures.

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 2-12A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
 2. MCWP 2-1 Intelligence Operations
 3. MCWP 2-6 Counterintelligence
-

1803-CMDC-2203: Supervise Installation Wire Communications Hot Loop

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Company Commander, Company Executive Officer, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an order to install wire communications hot loop in the unit and collateral equipment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Verify that AAV crew prepares inter-AAV wire communications.
2. Verify that AAV crews properly set radios for hot loop.
3. Verify that AAVs incoming wire is routed through driver's hatch.
4. Verify that one wire end is connected to each TEL/REMOTE POST on the amplifier.
5. Verify that each wire is connected to the next AAV in the same manner.
6. Verify that AAV external communications checks are conducted to verify that the last loop is operational.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 24-20 Tactical Wire and Cable Techniques
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

1803-CMDC-2204: Conduct Unit Mission Without Communications

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit, an operations order, and the references.

STANDARD: With minimal detriment to the unit mission.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Establish "no communications plan" as part of OPORD/FRAGO.
2. Employ alternate control methods in the absence of radio communications.
3. Continue mission in accordance with commander's intent.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 21-60 Visual Signals
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
-

1803-CMDC-2205: Evaluate MOS Related Training Effectiveness

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Commander, Battalion Executive Officer, Battalion Logistics Officer, Battalion Operations Officer, Company Commander

GRADES: CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit's training schedule, training directives from the supported unit (division), Battalion Commander's guidance, and references.

STANDARD: For the period directed by the commander.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Observe the training exercise or activity.
2. Evaluate performance to determine whether Marines can meet the standard after training.
3. Evaluate preparation based on indicators observed during training.
4. Critique individual and collective performance.
5. Note the results of performance evaluations of individuals in appropriate

- records as determined by unit SOP.
6. Record the results of collective training in after action reports (AAR) or appropriate records.
 7. Make recommendations as to future training needs or changes in the training.

REFERENCES :

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCRP 3-0A Unit Training Management Guide
 3. MCRP 3-0B How to Conduct Training
 4. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 5. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
-

1803-CMDC-2206: Assist in Developing Battalion Training Directives

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Commander, Battalion Executive Officer, Battalion Logistics Officer, Battalion Operations Officer, Company Commander

GRADES: CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian battalion's TEEP, training directives from the supported unit (division), Battalion Commander's guidance, and references.

STANDARD: To support the unit commander's guidance and supported unit's directives.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Analyze guidance from higher headquarters.
2. Extract training requirements necessary for unit readiness.
3. Review current training directives.
4. Make any changes necessary to increase training efficiency and improve unit readiness.
5. Submit for approval, if required.
6. Publish training directives when finalized and approved.

REFERENCES :

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCRP 3-0 A Unit Training Management Guide
 3. MCRP 3-0 B How to Conduct Training
 4. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 5. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
-

1803-VOPS-2301: Supervise Accounting for Embarked Personnel Aboard AAVs

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit with embarked personnel and references.

STANDARD: To ensure all personnel are properly accounted for accurately.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Verify that all embarked personnel are properly embarked on the AAV.
2. Verify that all personnel are properly listed on the AAV manifest list.
3. Verify that the manifest or a copy of the manifest is left with the ship's First Lieutenant or senior AA personnel ashore.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 3. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1803-VOPS-2302: Supervise Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services of Special Mission Kits

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Company Commander, Company Executive Officer, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7A1 and associated Special Mission Kits.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Supervise preventative maintenance checks and services on the cold weather operating kit.
2. Supervise preventive maintenance checks and services on the enhanced applique armor kit (EAAK).
3. Supervise preventive maintenance checks and services on the litter kit.
4. Supervise preventive maintenance checks and services on the visor kit.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. TM 09674A-10/1A Special Mission Kits for the Assault Amphibious Vehicle
 3. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1803-CBTS-2401: Inspect MK 154 Launcher, Mine Clearance System Components in Shipping Container

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a MK 154 LMC kit, a trained crew, and appropriate collateral equipment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Inspect mounting hardware.
2. Inspect Housing and Door Assembly
3. Inspect Forward Pallet Assembly.
4. Inspect Aft Pallet Rail Assembly.
5. Inspect Mast Assembly.
6. Inspect Arm Switch Assembly.
7. Inspect Wiring Harness Assembly.
8. Inspect additional launcher components.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
 3. TM 09962A-10/1 Operating Instruction Charts MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System
 4. TM 09962A-13&P/2B System Manual MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System
-

1803-CBTS-2402: Inspect Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on MK 154 Launcher, Mine Clearance System

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a MK 154 LMC kit, crewmen, and appropriate collateral equipment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Inspect execution of PMCS checklist on shipping container.
2. Inspect PMCS on mounting hardware.
3. Inspect PMCS of Housing and Door Assembly.
4. Inspect PMCS on Forward Pallet Assembly.

5. Inspect PMCS on Aft Pallet Rail Assembly.
6. Inspect PMCS on Mast Assembly.
7. Inspect PMCS on Control Box Assembly.
8. Inspect PMCS on Wiring Harness Assembly.
9. Inspect PMCS on additional MK 154 LMC components.

REFERENCES :

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
 3. TM 09962A-10/1 Operating Instruction Charts MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System
 4. TM 09962A-13&P/2B System Manual MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System
-

1803-CBTS-2403: Supervise Installation of MK 154 Launcher, Mine Clearance System on AAVP7A1/RAM RS

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7A1, a MK 154 LMC kit, trained AAV personnel with a 5-ton capable lifting source, the designed hydraulic bleeding kit for the MK 154, and appropriate collateral equipment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Inspect the positioning of the vehicles.
2. Inspect the preparation of the vehicles for installation of the MK 154 kit.
3. The crew should: locate vehicles on level ground/surface, lower rear ramp of AAVP7A1, remove and stow center troop benches, open and secure all cargo hatches, remove all antennas, ensure all hatch ground cables are clear of cargo openings, remove lower aft engine panel, and clean all debris from vehicle troop compartment.
4. Inspect outside of kit container for serviceability.
5. Inspect the bleeding of the container valve.
6. Inspect the removal of the mounting hardware on the container cover.
7. Inspect the MK 154 Launcher as sorted in the shipping container.
8. Inspect all mounting hardware.
9. Direct the installation of the Forward Pallet Assembly.
10. Direct the installation of the Housing and Door Assembly.
11. Direct the installation of the Rail Assembly.
12. Direct the installation of the Mast Assembly.
13. Direct the installation of the control box.
14. Direct the installation of the Arm Switch Assembly.
15. Direct the installation of the Wiring Harness Assemblies.
16. Direct the installation of the Power Cable.

17. Direct the stowage of additional Launcher Components: forward starboard guard, forward and aft guards, blasting machine, M-34, M51 blasting cap test set, remote firing harness, rope, block and tackle, tie down assemblies, communications cable, ramp strap assembly, and the AAV bolts which were removed to install the MK 154 Launcher.
18. Direct crew assistance rendered to the AAV mechanics as required in the installation of the MK 154 Launcher onto the AAV.
19. Direct crew assistance rendered to the AAV mechanics as required to bleed the hydraulic system of the MK 154 Launcher once it is fully installed onto the AAV.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
3. TM 09962A-10/1 Operating Instruction Charts MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System
4. TM 09962A-13&P/2B System Manual MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: AAV must be on stable and level ground/surface. Shipping container checklist has been successfully completed. Overhead clearance is unrestricted and ground space is available IAW TM 09674A-10/3 and TM 07007B-10.

1803-CBTS-2404: Supervise Operational Checks on MK 154 Launcher, Mine Clearance System on AAVP7A1/RAM RS

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7A1 RAM RS with MK 154 LMC, trained crew, and appropriate collateral equipment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Supervise crew in conducting hydraulic fluid level check.
2. Supervise crew in conducting manual operation test.
3. Supervise crew in conducting powered operation test.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
3. TM 09962A-10/1 Operating Instruction Charts MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System

4. TM 09962A-13&P/2B System Manual MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System

1803-CBTS-2405: Supervise Installation of MK 22 Rocket Motors, MOD 3-4 on MK 154

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an a trained crew installing MK 22 MOD3 Rocket Motors or MK22 MOD4 rocket motors on MK 154 Launcher

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Direct the inspection of the rocket motors.
2. Verify that the AAV crew handles the rocket motors in a safe manner.
3. Supervise the loading of the rocket motors onto the launcher platform rails per the references.
4. Supervise the installation of the rocket bridle cables.
5. Supervise the installation of the rocket motor electrical connections.
6. Verify that the installed rockets are NOT made thrust positive until employment of the MK 154.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
 3. TM 09962A-10/1 Operating Instruction Charts MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System
 4. TM 09962A-13&P/2B System Manual MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System
-

1803-CBTS-2406: Supervise Loading Line Charges into an AAVP7A1/RAM RS Equipped with MK 154 LMC System

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7A1 RAM RS with MK 154 LMC, three line charges, trained crew and mechanics, 5-ton capable lifting source, appropriate collateral equipment, and references.

STANDARD: So the MK 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System is prepared for firing.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Direct the inspection of the line charges.
2. Verify the safe fusing of the line charges.
3. Verify that the crew demonstrates proper hand signals and voice commands during the loading procedure.
4. Supervise the loading of three line charges: through the ramp opening and cargo hatch opening.
5. Direct the installation of the hatch tie-down assemblies.
6. Verify that the installed rockets are made thrust positive only if MK 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System is to be employed.
7. Verify that the electrical connections are safely completed.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
 3. TM 09962A-10/1 Operating Instruction Charts MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System
 4. TM 09962A-13&P/2B System Manual MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System
-

1803-CBTS-2407: Supervise the Operation of the MK 154 Mine Clearance System

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a MK 154 LMC kit, trained crew, and appropriate collateral equipment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Install the MK 154 Launcher, Mine Clearance System on AAVP7A1/RAM RS.
2. Conduct Operational Checks of MK 154 Launcher, Mine Clearance System on AAVP7A1/RAM RS.
3. Inspect Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on MK 154 Launcher, Mine Clearance System.
4. Install the MK 22 Rocket Motors, MOD 3-4 on MK 154 Launcher on AAVP7A1/RAM RS.
5. Load Line Charges into an AAVP7A1/RAM RS Equipped with MK 154 LMC System.
6. Operation the MK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System.
7. Unload Line Charges from an AAVP7A1/RAM RS Equipped with MK 154 LMC System.
8. Dismount the MK 22 Rocket Motors, MOD 3-4 from MK 154 Launcher on AAVP7A1/RAM RS.
9. Remove the MK 154 Launcher, Mine Clearance System from an AAVP7A1/RAM RS.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management

2. TM 09962A-10/1 Operating Instruction Charts MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

EQUIPMENT: AAVP7A1/RAM RS, MK154 LMC Kit, and 5-ton lifting source.

UNITS/PERSONNEL: AA Mine Countermeasure Platoon Commander task.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task is conducted by designated Mine Countermeasure (MCM) personnel.

1803-CBTS-2408: Supervise Unloading Line Charges from an AAVP7A1/RAM RS Equipped with MK 154 LMC System

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7A1 RAM RS with installed MK 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System, trained crew and mechanics, 5-ton capable lifting source, appropriate collateral equipment, and references.

STANDARD: So the line charges are defused and ancillary attachments are properly stored.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Verify that the rocket motors thrust neutral.
2. Verify that the electrical disconnections are safely completed.
3. Verify the proper removal of the tie-down assemblies.
4. Verify that the crew demonstrates proper hand signals and voice commands
5. Supervise the unloading of three line charges: through the ramp opening and cargo hatch opening.
6. Verify safe disarming of the line charges.
7. Verify proper storage of the line charges.
8. Verify the proper storage of the tie-down cables and forward and aft guards.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
 3. TM 09962A-10/1 Operating Instruction Charts MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System
 4. TM 09962A-13&P/2B System Manual MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System
-

1803-CBTS-2409: Supervise Dismounting MK 22 Rocket Motors, MOD 3-4 from MK 154 Launcher on AAVP7A1/RAM RS

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7A1, MK 154 LMC kit, MK 22 Rocket Motors, a trained crew, and appropriate collateral equipment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Supervise the inspection the rocket motors for serviceability.
2. Verify that the rocket motors thrust have been made neutral.
3. Verify that the rocket motor electrical connections are disconnected.
4. Supervise the removal and inspect of the rocket bridle cables.
5. Supervise the removal of the rocket motors from the launcher platform rails.
6. Verify that the rocket motors are properly stored.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
 3. TM 09962A-10/1 Operating Instruction Charts MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System
 4. TM 09962A-13&P/2B System Manual MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System
-

1803-CBTS-2410: Advise Supported Unit Commander on Employment of MK 154 Mine Clearance System

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian Mine Countermeasure unit, higher headquarters' operations order, area of operations, and references.

STANDARD: So all MK 154 employment concerns are highlighted and communicated to the supported unit commander and staff.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Advise supported unit commander on the capabilities and limitations of the MK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System to support the operation.
2. Advise supported unit commander on the logistical support requirements of

- the MK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System given the planned operation.
3. Advise supported unit commander on the possible courses of action for employment of the MK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System in support of the operation.

REFERENCES :

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCRP 3-17A Engineer Field Data
3. MCRP 3-17B Engineer Forms and Reports
4. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
5. MCWP 3-17.3 MAGTF Breaching Operations
6. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
7. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
8. TM 09962A-10/1 Operating Instruction Charts MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS :

UNITS/PERSONNEL : AA Mine Countermeasure Platoon Commander task.

MISCELLANEOUS :

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS : This task is conducted by designated Mine Countermeasure (MCM) personnel.

1803-CBTS-2411 : Coordinate Mine Countermeasures Operations with Supported Unit

EVALUATION-CODED : NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL : 12 months

BILLETTS : Platoon Commander

GRADES : 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING : MOJT

CONDITION : Given an Assault Amphibian Mine Countermeasure unit, area of operations, higher headquarters' operations order, and references.

STANDARD : So all MK 154 employment concerns are highlighted and communicated to the supported unit commander and staff.

PERFORMANCE STEPS :

1. Coordinate employment of the MK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System in support of mobility operations in accordance with the performance steps.
2. Coordinate employment of AAVs in construction, observation, and suppression of obstacles in support of countermobility operations.
3. Coordinate with supported unit for engineering support required by AA units as part of survivability operations.

REFERENCES :

1. MCRP 3-17A Engineer Field Data

2. MCRP 3-17B Engineer Forms and Reports
3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. MCWP 3-17.3 MAGTF Breaching Operations
5. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
6. TM 09962A-10/1 Operating Instruction Charts MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

UNITS/PERSONNEL: AA Mine Countermeasure Platoon Commander task.

1803-CSS-2501: Supervise Maintenance Related Programs

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Logistics Officer, Company Commander, Company Executive Officer, Platoon Commander

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a unit's T/O&E.

STANDARD: Per the reference.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Supervise the quality control program.
2. Supervise the Replacement and Evacuation (R&E) program.
3. Supervise the Recoverable Items Program (RIP).
4. Supervise the Inspect Repair Only As Necessary (IROAN) program.
5. Supervise the Repair and Return (R&R) program.
6. Supervise the Corrosion Prevention and Control Program (CPAC).
7. Implement a maintenance inspection program.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 4400.172 Table of Equipment (T/E) Allowance Change Procedures
 2. MCO 4400.82_ MIMMS Controlled Item Management Manual
 3. MCO 4700-15/1 Equipment Record Procedures
 4. MCO P4790.2 MIMMS Field Procedures Manual
 5. MCO P5090.2 Environmental Compliance and Protection Manual
 6. SL-3 Major Components of End Items
 7. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
 8. TM 4700-15/1H Ground Equipment Record Procedures
-

1803-CSS-2502: Inspect Completed Maintenance Work

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an AAV with completed maintenance, an active ERO and EROSL, and a current DPR

STANDARD: Per the reference.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Review PMCS records or ERO to determine which maintenance work has been accomplished and is to be inspected.
2. Visually inspect the items that have been repaired or serviced.
3. Verify that the corrective maintenance or service has been
4. Direct any additional work required.

REFERENCES:

1. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1803-CSS-2503: Monitor Unit Maintenance

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a unit's T/O&E and references.

STANDARD: So the combat readiness for AAV7A1 family of vehicles and associated equipment is no less than 80 percent.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Monitor daily process reports.
2. Monitor LM2 reports.
3. Coordinate routine reconciliation with maintenance and supply activities.
4. Implement a maintenance inspection program.

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
 2. MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations
 3. SL-3 Major Components of End Items
 4. TI 4710-14/1 Replacement and Evacuation Criteria
 5. TI 4731-14/1 Marine Corps Participation in the Joint Oil Analysis Program
 6. TM 4700-15/1 Marine Corps Ground Equipment Record Procedures
 7. TM 4795-12/1 Organizational Corrosion Prevention and Control Procedures
-

1803-CSS-2504: Supervise Personnel Handling Ammunition

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Company Commander, Company Executive Officer, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit handling ammunition and references.

STANDARD: With all safety procedures followed and ammunition loaded.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Determine what types of ammunition and how many rounds of each will be required.
2. Supervise the handling of machine gun ammunition.
3. Supervise personnel handling small arms ammunition.
4. Supervise personnel handling smoke grenades.
5. Supervise inventory and expenditure of ammunition.
6. Report all discrepancies.
7. Complete and file ammunition expenditure report and forward to chain-of-command in order to support class V replenishment.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 9-13 Ammunition Handbook
 2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 3. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1803-CSS-2505: Determine a Unit's Operational Supply Requirements

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an operation of specified duration, commander's guidance, T/O&E, computed requirements, and the references.

STANDARD: To ensure the requisite supplies are calculated to support the operational requirements for the entire period of deployment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Review the operation plan or applicable documents for operational support data.
2. Identify class I and water requirements (rations and food supplies).
3. Identify class II requirements (general supplies).
4. Identify class III requirements (POLs).
5. Identify class IV requirements (engineer and construction).
6. Identify class V (W) combat requirements (ammunition).
7. Identify class VI requirements (personal items).

8. Identify class VII requirements (major end times, i.e. AAVs).
9. Identify class VIII requirements (medical supplies).
10. Determine class IX requirements (repair parts).
11. Validate the contents of a class IX block for deficiencies.
12. Submit recommended changes to class IX block.
13. Validate bill of materials (BOM) for operational requirements.

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 2. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
 3. MCWP 4-11 Tactical Level Logistics
 4. MCWP 4-11.7 MAGTF Supply Operations
 5. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
-

1803-CSS-2506: Coordinate Supply Support Related Functions

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Operations Officer, Company Commander, Company Executive Officer, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given the support requirement, a unit T/O&E, Equipment Density List (EDL), and the references.

STANDARD: To ensure supply support maintenance requirements are met.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Determine class IX requirements (parts block).
2. Validate bill of materials (BOM) for operational requirements.
3. Validate the contents of a class IX block for deficiencies.
4. Submit recommended changes to class IX block.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 4400.82_ MIMMS Controlled Item Management Manual
 2. MCO 4700-15/1 Equipment Record Procedures
 3. MCO P4790.2 MIMMS Field Procedures Manual
 4. UM 4700.5 MIMMS Field Procedures Manual
-

1803-CSS-2507: Determine Logistic Support Requirements

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit and higher's operations order.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Determine the command relationship between the AA unit and the supported unit: attached, direct support, or general support.
2. Determine the preventative maintenance support needs of the AA unit.
3. Determine the corrective maintenance support needs of the AA unit.
4. Determine messing requirements.
5. Determine Petroleum, Oil, and Lubricant (POL) requirements.
6. Determine ammunition requirements.
7. Determine time requirements for preventative maintenance checks and services.
8. Determine requirements for resupply operations prior to commencing the attack.
9. Determine vehicle status, specifically critical systems: weapons station and weapons, communications, suspension/power train, and water drive/operating systems.
10. By type of vehicle: Tank, AAV (all variants), LAV, Engineer vehicles, wheeled vehicles.
11. Determine echelons of repair requiring support.
12. Determine medical/dental requirements.
13. Determine support required from higher elements.
14. Determine likely means of combat service support that will be available based on experience and task organization.
15. Determine personnel requirements by MOS or special skill.
16. Report any critical shortfalls in either equipment, supplies, or personnel.
17. Coordinate efforts and requirements with supporting elements.

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
2. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
3. MCWP 4-11 Tactical Level Logistics
4. MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations
5. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
6. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS

1803-CSS-2508: Provide Input for Load Planning of AAV Equipment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Logistics Officer, Company Commander, Company Executive Officer, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a requirement for unit transportation to support deployment, an operations order, equipment density list, roster of deploying

personnel, and references.

STANDARD: To ensure sufficient transportation assets are available to support unit deployment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Obtain and consolidate the required loading documents from each unit embarking supplies, cargo, equipment, and personnel.
2. Obtain the unloading priorities and composition of tactical serials from the embarkation team leader.
3. Verify that equipment to be loaded complies with the characteristics of the platform selected.
4. Identify any hazardous material and cargo requiring special handling.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 3. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
-

1803-CSS-2509: Advise Supported Unit Commander on Assault Amphibian Unit Logistic Support Requirements

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit, higher's operations order, and the references.

STANDARD: To assess the impact on the unit's ability to support the operations order.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Determine logistics support requirements.
2. Determine organic logistics support capabilities.
3. Determine shortfalls on logistics support requirements.
4. Advise supported unit commander and his staff on any logistical support requirements that the AA unit cannot meet and their potential impact on operations.
5. Recommend courses of action to the support unit commander and his staff to deal with any logistical support requirement shortfalls.

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
2. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
3. MCWP 4-11 Tactical Level Logistics
4. MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations
5. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
6. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault

Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS

1803-CSS-2510: Coordinate Assault Amphibian Unit Operation/Deployment Embarkation

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Executive Officer, Battalion Logistics Officer, Company Commander, Company Executive Officer, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given the requirement to coordinate a unit's transportation needs, the operations order, listing of supplies, equipment, and personnel.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Provide input for load planning of AA unit.
2. Assist in developing plans to embark AA unit.
3. Inspect unit embarkation preparations.
4. Coordinate and supervise embarkation of AA Unit onto land transportation.
5. Coordinate and supervise embarkation of AAVs onto land transportation.
6. Coordinate and supervise embarkation of AA Unit onto aircraft.
7. Coordinate and supervise embarkation of AAVs onto aircraft.
8. Conduct AA unit specific Maritime Prepositioning Forces (MPF) operations.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 55-9 Unit Air Movement Planning
 2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 3. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
 4. MCWP 4-11 Tactical Level Logistics
 5. MCWP 4-11.3 Transportation Operations
 6. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1803-CSS-2511: Coordinate Transportation Support for a Unit Operation/Deployment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Company Commander, Company Executive Officer, Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given the requirement to coordinate a unit's transportation, an operations order, listing of supplies, equipment, personnel, and references.

1803-CSS-2513: Monitor Unit Table of Organization and Equipment Modification (T/O&E) Procedures

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Assistant Operations Officer, Battalion Commander, Battalion Executive Officer, Battalion Logistics Officer, Battalion Operations Officer

GRADES: CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a using unit account, T/O&E, and reference.

STANDARD: To ensure the table of equipment allowances are properly maintained to support the mission.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Validate unit T/E excesses and deficiencies.
2. Supervise the adjustment of the unit table of equipment.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 4400.172 Table of Equipment (T/E) Allowance Change Procedures
-

1803-TAC-2701: Advise Supported Unit Commander on Assault Amphibian Unit Employment in Night/Limited Visibility Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit and higher's operations order.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Advise on night vision capabilities organic to the AAV and the AA unit.
2. Advise on Tactics, Techniques, and Procedures (TTPs), established by the AA unit for night/limited visibility operations.
3. Advise on control measures required for mechanized forces in night/limited visibility operations.
4. Advise on CSS requirements for night/limited visibility operations.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
-

1803-TAC-2702: Supervise the Transportation of Casualties in AAV

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an AAV, ambulatory and stretcher bound casualties, operations order, the appropriate AAV special mission kit, and references.

STANDARD: So the combat efficiency of the supported unit is maintained and wounded personnel are relocated to receive available medical attention.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Load casualties with advice from the unit corpsman.
2. Determine the safest, fastest, smoothest route for the movement.
3. Coordinate casualty transportation to appropriate unit casualty transfer point or aid station in accordance with the operations order.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

AA T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 7

INDIVIDUAL EVENT MOS 1833

	<u>PARAGRAPH</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
PURPOSE.	7000	7-2
EVENT CODING	7001	7-2
ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES	7002	7-2
PREREQUISITES.	7003	7-2
BILLET DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITIES	7004	7-3
INDEX OF EVENTS BY LEVEL	7005	7-10
1000-LEVEL 1833 INDIVIDUAL EVENTS.	7006	7-11
2000-LEVEL 1833 INDIVIDUAL EVENTS.	7007	7-67

AA T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 7

INDIVIDUAL EVENT MOS 1833

7000. PURPOSE. The purpose of 1000-level training is to provide the knowledge and skills required to perform as an Assault Amphibious Vehicle (AAV) Crewman. 2000-level events are Core Plus events, with initial training settings of either MOJT or through resident career progression training (Assault Amphibian Unit Leader Course)/distance learning PME.

7001. EVENT CODING. Events in the T&R manual are depicted with a 12 field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one - Each event in this chapter begins with "1833" indicating that the event is for AAV Crewmen.

b. Field two - This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. Functional areas for AAV Crewmen are:

GNNRY - Gunnery	CMDC - Command and Control
VOPS - Vehicle Operations	CBTS - Combat Support
CSS - Combat Service Support	AMPH - Amphibious Operations
TAC - Tactical Operation	

c. Field three - This field provides numerical sequencing.

7002. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES. Each Event may contain a paragraph that describes internal and external Support Requirements the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. Ranges/Training Areas are described in this section with plain-language description. They are also described using the Range/Facility Codes that identify the type of range and/or training area needed to accomplish the Event. Marines can use the codes to find information about available ranges at their geographic location by using the web-based Range/Training Area Management System (see TECOM website). Ultimate use of the Range/Training Area Code is to relate ranges to readiness by identifying those Events that cannot be accomplished at a certain location due to lack of ranges.

7003. PREREQUISITES. The Marine AAV Crewman will have completed the Assault Amphibian Crewman Course, Assault Amphibian School, Camp Pendleton, CA.

7004. BILLET DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITIES

CAREER PROGRESSION PHILOSOPHY. The AAV Crewman will complete the Assault Amphibian Crewman Course, Assault Amphibian School, Camp Pendleton, CA. Upon graduation, the AAV Crewman will conduct additional Level 2000 training in an Assault Amphibian unit in a variety of billets. Level 2 training continues through completion of Career, Intermediate, and Advanced Level Professional Military Education (PME), available through resident, seminar and distance learning courses.

BILLET: Crewman, AAV. Junior 1833 Crewman on the AAV.

Core Capabilities

1. Executes crewchief's commands related to employment and function of the vehicle.
2. Assists in the performance of vehicle pre-operations (ops), during-ops, at-halt, and after-ops checks.
3. Assists in the performance of PMCS, to include vehicle weapons.
4. Camouflages vehicle.
5. Maintains vehicle security and security of collateral equipment.
6. Assists embarked personnel in vehicle evacuation and responsible for maintaining order in the troop compartment during operations afloat.
7. Operates vehicle afloat and/or ashore.
8. Operates vehicle communication system utilizing proper procedures.
9. Assists gunner in reloading the weapons station, as rear crewman.
10. Assists the gunner in acquiring targets with the UGWS as driver.

BILLET: Crewman, AAVP7A1/RAM RS with MK 154 LMC Mod 0 Kit. Junior 1833 Crewman on the AAVP7A1/RAM RS with MK 154 LMC Mod 0 kit.

Core Capabilities

1. Executes crewchief's commands related to employment and function of the vehicle, weapons, and MK 154 kit.
2. Assists in the performance of pre-ops, during-ops, at-halt, and after-ops checks.
3. Assists in the performance of PMCS, to include vehicle weapons and MK 154 kit.
4. Camouflages vehicle.

5. Maintains vehicle security and security of collateral equipment.
6. Assists embarked personnel in vehicle evacuation and responsible for maintaining order in the troop compartment during operations afloat.
7. Operates vehicle afloat and/or ashore.
8. Operates vehicle communication system utilizing proper procedures.
9. Assists the crewchief in reloading the weapon station as rear crewman.
10. Assists the crewchief in acquiring targets with the UGWS as driver.

BILLET: Crewchief, AAVP7A1/RAM RS. Senior 1833 Crewman aboard the AAV. The crewchief leads two crewmen and is responsible for the maintenance and operation of the AAVP7A1/RAM RS and all associated collateral gear. The crewchief operates the upgunned weapon station.

Core Capabilities

1. Responsible for the welfare and discipline of his crew.
2. Responsible for the all embarked personnel and equipment.
3. Coordinates and supervises the vehicle crew in the performance of PMCS.
4. Instructs vehicle crew and embarked troops in general and specific military subjects, technical subjects, and safety procedures.
5. Requisitions and supervises the distribution of expendable supplies, collateral equipment, rations, petroleum, oil, and lubricants (POL) through his section leader and chain of command.
6. Maintains vehicle logbook.
7. Employs vehicle weapon station and communications system utilizing the proper procedures.
8. Responsible for loading and unloading of vehicle.

BILLET: Crewchief, AAVP7A1/RAM RS with MK 154 LMC Mod 0 Kit. Senior 1833 Crewman aboard the AAVP7A1/RAM RS with MK 154 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System. The crewchief leads two crewmen and is responsible for the maintenance and operation of the AAV and all associated collateral gear. The crewchief operates the upgunned weapon station.

Core Capabilities

1. Responsible for the welfare and discipline of his crew.
2. Responsible for embarked personnel and equipment.
3. Coordinates and supervises the vehicle crew in the performance of PMCS.

4. Instructs vehicle crew and embarked troops in general and specific military subjects, technical subjects, and safety procedures.
5. Requisitions and supervises distribution of expendable supplies, collateral equipment, rations, petroleum, oil, and lubricants (POL) through his section leader and chain of command.
6. Maintains vehicle logbook.
7. Employs MK 154 Mod 0 mine clearance system, vehicle weapons station, and communications system utilizing the proper procedures.
8. Responsible for loading and unloading of vehicle.

BILLET: Crewchief, AAVC7A1. Senior 1833 Crewman aboard the AAVC7A1. The crewchief leads two crewmen and is responsible for the maintenance and operation of the AAVC7A1 and all associated collateral gear. The crewchief rides in the vehicle commander's hatch.

Core Capabilities

1. Responsible for the welfare and discipline of his crew.
2. Responsible for embarked personnel and equipment.
3. Coordinates and supervises the vehicle crew in the performance of PMCS.
4. Instructs vehicle crew and embarked troops in general and specific military subjects, technical subjects, and safety procedures.
5. Requisitions and supervises distribution of expendable supplies, collateral equipment, rations, petroleum, oil, and lubricants (POL) through his section leader and chain of command.
6. Maintains vehicle logbook.
7. Employs vehicle weapon and communications system utilizing the proper procedures.
8. Responsible for loading and unloading of vehicle.

BILLET: Section Leader, AA Mine Countermeasure (MCM) Section. Senior 1833 crewman in section with two or more vehicles, at least one vehicle possesses the MK 154 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System. The section leader leads all vehicle crews and is responsible for all vehicles and associated collateral equipment in his section. The section leader will ride in the weapon station. During water operations, either in the ocean or river, the AA section leader maintains control of the tactical movement of the AA section.

Core Capabilities

1. Responsible for the welfare and discipline of his section.
2. Responsible for all embarked personnel and equipment.

3. Coordinates and supervises vehicle crews in the performance of PMCS.
4. Instructs vehicle crews and embarked troops in general and specific military subjects, technical subjects, and safety procedures.
5. Requisitions and supervises distribution of expendable supplies, collateral equipment, rations, petroleum, oil, lubricants, and ammunition through his platoon sergeant and chain of command.
6. Audits vehicle logbooks.
7. Employs his vehicle's weapon stations, and communications system utilizing proper procedures.
8. Trains the section in the performance of tasks which support platoon training objectives.
9. Controls his section's maneuver, fires, and MK 154 LMC kits.
10. Advises the supported unit commander in the employment of his section.

BILLET: Section Leader, AA Command Section. Senior 1833 Marine in command section with two or more vehicles, with at least one of the vehicles an AAVC7A1. The section leader leads all vehicle crews and is responsible for all vehicles and associated collateral equipment in his section.

Core Capabilities

1. Responsible for the welfare and discipline of his section.
2. Responsible for all embarked personnel and equipment.
3. Coordinates and supervises vehicle crews in the performance of PMCS.
4. Instructs vehicle crews and embarked troops in general and specific military subjects, technical subjects, and safety procedures.
5. Requisitions and supervises distribution of expendable supplies, collateral equipment, rations, petroleum, oil, and lubricants (POL) through his platoon sergeant and chain of command.
6. Audits vehicle logbooks.
7. Employs his vehicle's and section's weapon stations, and communication system utilizing proper procedures.
8. Trains the section in the performance of tasks that support platoon training objectives.
9. Controls his section's maneuver and fires.
10. Advises the supported unit commander in the employment of his section.

BILLET: Platoon Sergeant, AA Platoon. Senior 1833 and second in command of the AA platoon. Positioned in the weapon station of the platoon's logistics

vehicle. He is responsible for maintaining the platoon's vehicles and all associated collateral gear. He advises the AA platoon commander on training, welfare, and administrative functions within the platoon.

Core Capabilities

1. Maintains the welfare and discipline of the platoon.
2. Assists in all maintenance management functions for the AA platoon.
3. Advises the AA platoon commander in the logistical support of the platoon.
4. Instructs AA platoon and embarked troops in general and specific military subjects, technical subjects, and safety procedures.
5. Requisitions and supervises distribution of expendable supplies, collateral equipment, ammunition, rations, petroleum, oil, and lubricants (POL) through his chain of command.
6. Employs his vehicle's weapon station and communications system utilizing proper procedures.
7. Trains the platoon in the performance of tasks which support platoon training objectives.
8. Controls the employment of his vehicle.
9. Assumes command in platoon commander's absence.
10. Coordinates embarkation of vehicles and unit.
11. Coordinates logistical support for AA unit operations.
12. Coordinates all recovery and evacuation operations.

BILLET: Platoon Sergeant, AA Mine Countermeasure (MCM). Senior 1833 crewman and second in command of the MCM Platoon. Positioned in the weapon station of the platoon's logistics vehicle. He is responsible for maintaining the platoon's vehicles and all associated collateral gear. He advises the AAV platoon commander on training, welfare, and administrative functions within the platoon.

Core Capabilities

1. Maintains the welfare and discipline of the platoon.
2. Assists in all maintenance management functions for AA platoon.
3. Advises the AA platoon commander in the logistical support of the platoon.
4. Instructs AA platoon and embarked troops in general and specific military subjects, technical subjects, and safety procedures.

5. Requisitions and supervises distribution of expendable supplies, collateral equipment, ammunition, rations, petroleum, oil, and lubricants (POL) through his chain of command.
6. Employs his vehicle's weapon station and communications system utilizing proper procedures.
7. Trains the platoon in the performance of tasks that support platoon training objectives.
8. Controls the employment of his vehicle.
9. Assumes command in platoon commander's absence.
10. Coordinates embarkation of vehicles and unit.
11. Coordinates logistical support for AA unit operations.
12. Coordinates all recovery and evacuation operations.

BILLET: Company Operations Chief. Second most senior 1833 Marine in the AA company. Assists the company gunnery sergeant in all logistical and training requirements.

Core Capabilities

1. Assists the company commander in monitoring, conducting, reporting, and supervising unit training.
2. Conducts quartering party operations and assembly area activities.
3. Instructs company personnel in general and specific military subjects, technical subjects, and safety procedures.
4. Assists in planning future operations.

BILLET: Company Gunnery Sergeant. Senior 1833 Marine in the AA company. He is the duty expert in all 1833 operations and training for the AA company. Responsible for all logistical and training requirements.

Core Capabilities

1. Advises the company commander on unit training.
2. Coordinates unit logistical support.
3. Determines unit logistical requirements.
4. Coordinates embarkation of company vehicles and personnel.
5. Coordinates quartering party operations and assembly area activities.
6. Instructs company personnel in general and specific military subjects, technical subjects, and safety procedures.

7. Assists the company commander in coordinating, conducting, and supervising unit training.

BILLET: Battalion Operations Chief. Senior 1833 Marine in the battalion operations section.

Core Capabilities

1. Advises the operations officer on unit training.
2. Coordinates battalion individual and unit training.
3. Coordinates COC setup and operations.
4. Serves as senior enlisted Marine in combat operations center.
5. Coordinates assembly area activities.
6. Evaluates individual and unit training.
7. Coordinates operations section embarkation plans.
8. Assists the operations officer in planning future operations.
9. Advises the AA battalion commander on all 1833 Marine matters.

BILLET: Battalion Logistics Chief. Senior 1833 Marine in the battalion logistics section.

Core Capabilities

1. Advises the logistics officer on unit logistical requirements.
2. Coordinates battalion logistical support.
3. Assists in development of logistical requirements and support for operations.
4. Determines logistical requirements for unit training.
5. Coordinates battalion embarkation plans.
6. Monitors battalion hazardous material section.
7. Coordinates LOC setup and operations.
8. Serves as senior enlisted in LOC.

7005. INDEX OF EVENTS BY LEVEL

Event Code	Eval Code	Event	Page
		1000 LEVEL	
1833-GNRY-1101 1833-GNRY-1132		Gunnery related individual events	7-11 7-37
1833-CMDC-1201 1833-CMDC-1209		Command and Control individual events	7-37 7-42
1833-VOPS-1301 1833-VOPS-1327		Assault Amphibious Vehicle (AAV) Operations individual events	7-42 7-61
1833-CBTS-1400		No entries for Combat Support individual events	No Entry
1833-CSS-1500		No entries for Combat Service Support individual events	No Entry
1833-AMPH-1601		Amphibious Operations individual events	7-61
1833-TAC-1701 1833-TAC-1707		Tactical Operations individual events	7-62 7-66
		2000 LEVEL	
1833-GNRY-2101 1833-GNRY-2108		Gunnery related individual events	7-67 7-75
1833-CMDC-2201 1833-CMDC-2224		Command and Control individual events	7-75 7-91
1833-VOPS-2301 1833-VOPS-2304		Assault Amphibious Vehicle (AAV) Operations individual events	7-91 7-93
1833-CBTS-2401 1833-CBTS-2414		Combat Support individual events	7-93 7-105
1833-CSS-2501 1833-CSS-2516		Combat Service Support individual events	7-105 7-116
1833-AMPH-2601 1833-AMPH-2609		Amphibious Operations individual events	7-116 7-124
1833-TAC-2701 1833-TAC-2706		Tactical Operations individual events	7-124 7-128

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct safety check on weapon.
2. Verify that the firing solenoid, link block, bellmouth chute, trigger assembly, and charger assembly are installed on the M2 HB .50 cal machine gun; if not, have armorer install them.
3. Check that M2 HB.50 cal machine gun is set for right hand feed.
4. Set headspace.
5. Set timing.
6. Conduct functions check.

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
2. TM 10004A-10/1C Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List
3. TM 9-1005-213-10 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, Caliber .50, M2

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task is reference specific. Care must be taken to perform each step in accordance with the references.

1833-GNRY-1103: Load M2 .50 Cal HB Machine Gun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M2 .50 cal HB machine gun mounted on an AAVP7A1/RAM RS, appropriate collateral equipment and ammunition.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Starting with double looped end of link, lay 5 rounds of ammo hanging outside over the rear of ammo box. Use the side opposite the hinges.
2. Place ammo back in to ammo box so that the double looped end of link is on top front of box.
3. Place second ammo box in front ammo tray with hinges forward and rounds facing outboard.
4. Secure both ammo boxes with retainers in up position.
5. Remove first round of ammo from rear box. Discard link that comes with round.
6. Install round through double looped end of link of rear box and through single looped end of link in front box. Make sure round is installed to the same depth into ammo belt as the other rounds.
7. Elevate M2 HB .50 cal machine gun and open receiver cover.
8. Feed ammo from box, around rollers, through bellmouth chute, and into .50

- cal machine gun.
9. Place first round of ammo into M2 HB .50 cal machine gun past two belt holding pawls. Close receiver cover.
 10. Ensure 5 rounds are hanging from rear of box in order to link rounds from both boxes.

REFERENCES:

1. TM 10004A-10/1C Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List
2. TM 9-1005-213-10 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, Caliber .50, M2

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task is reference specific. Care must be taken to perform each step in accordance with the references.

1833-GNRY-1104: Zero M2 .50 Cal HB Machine Gun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M2 .50 cal HB machine gun installed on an AAVP7A1/RAM RS, appropriate collateral equipment, ammunition, an engagement area, and targets.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Lay the UGWS machine guns on a target 500 meters away so that the UGWS sight is on the center of the target.
2. Fire a burst of 8-10 rounds at the target.
3. Observe the impact on the target in relation to the aim point and adjust as required.
4. Repeat firing and adjustment, as required.
5. Set SAFE/ARMED switch to SAFE position than let go and make sure that the SAFE light is lit.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
3. TM 10004A-10/1C Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List
4. TM 9-1005-213-10 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, Caliber .50, M2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task is reference specific. Care must be taken to perform each step in accordance with the references.

1833-GNRY-1105: Fire the M2 HB .50 Cal Machine Gun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a M2 .50 cal HB machine gun mounted on an AAVP7A1/RAM RS, appropriate collateral equipment, ammunition, and targets in an engagement area.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Verify that M2 .50 cal HB machine gun is pointed down range.
2. Verify that selector latch is up in the unlocked position.
3. Pull charging handle completely out and down so bolt moves to the rear of loaded weapon and then release charging handle.
4. Pull out arming switch on the weapon control panel, and move it to the .50 caliber armed position ensuring the .50 caliber armed light engages.
5. Depress trigger and fire a short burst of three to five rounds.
6. Traverse the weapons station and/or elevate or depress mantlets as necessary to hit target.
7. To fire the M2 .50 cal HB machine gun without power, fire manually by pressing butterfly trigger to fire and release to stop fire.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
3. TM 10004A-10/1C Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List
4. TM 9-1005-213-10 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, Caliber .50, M2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

1833-GNRY-1106: Apply Failure to Fire Procedures for M2 .50 Cal HB Machine Gun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a M2 .50 cal HB machine gun mounted on an AAVP7A1/RAM RS, appropriate collateral equipment, and ammunition.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. If the weapon fires, continue the mission.
2. If the weapon fails to fire, follow the required safety procedures and inspect the weapon.
3. Conduct appropriate corrective action, as necessary.
4. Turn turret power off before attempting to inspect the weapon.
5. Determine whether there is a stoppage or a malfunction.
6. Charge the weapon and attempt to fire.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
3. TM 10004A-10/1C Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List
4. TM 9-1005-213-10 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, Caliber .50, M2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task is reference specific. Care must be taken to perform each step in accordance with the references.

1833-GNRY-1107: Unload M2 .50 Cal HB Machine Gun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a M2 .50 cal HB machine gun mounted on an AAVP7A1/RAM RS, appropriate collateral equipment, and ammunition.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Verify that the weapon is on safe and pointed down range, in a safe direction.
2. Unload the ammunition from the weapon.
3. Unload the ammunition from the Upgunned Weapons Station.

REFERENCES:

1. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
2. TM 10004A-10/1C Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List
3. TM 9-1005-213-10 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, Caliber .50, M2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task is reference specific. Care must be taken to perform each step in accordance with the references.

1833-GNRY-1108: Remove M2 .50 Cal HB Machine Gun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a M2 .50 cal HB machine gun mounted on an AAVP7A1/RAM RS and appropriate collateral equipment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Verify that the weapon is pointed down range, in a safe direction.
2. Visually and physically inspect the chamber and bolt of the weapon to ensure that it is clear.
3. Disconnect electric firing solenoids.
4. Remove retaining pins from weapon cradle.
5. Elevate the weapon so that the receiver will clear the azimuth ring and can be lowered into the vehicle.
6. Lift the weapon from the cradle and lower it into the vehicle to another Marine.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
 3. TM 10004A-10/1C Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List
 4. TM 9-1005-213-10 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, Caliber .50, M2
-

1833-GNRY-1109: Perform Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on M2 .50 Cal HB Machine Gun on AAVP7A1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M2 .50 cal HB machine gun and appropriate cleaning equipment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct a safety check on the weapon, ensuring that it is safe for disassembly.
2. Disassemble the weapon.
3. Inspect, clean, and lubricate the components.
4. Record worn or defective parts in equipment record jacket, tag defective parts, and inform armorer.
5. Assemble the weapon.
6. Conduct a functions check.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 10004A-10/1C Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List
3. TM 9-1005-213-10 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, Caliber .50, M2

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task is reference specific. Care must be taken to perform each step in accordance with the references.

1833-GNRY-1110: Install MK 19 Mod 3 40mm Machine Gun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a MK 19 40mm machine gun installed on an AAVP7A1/RAM RS, ammunition, and appropriate collateral equipment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct safety check on weapon.
2. Traverse weapons station so that mantlets are over the vehicle top deck and are depressed to 0 degrees or lower.
3. Move turret power switch to "OFF".
4. Be certain that the bolt is in the forward position on the MK 19 machine gun.
5. Remove front 40mm front cover and cover extension.
6. Elevate mantlet, release latch and remove 40mm service cover from inside the turret.
7. Have person on the outside of the vehicle install the Mk 19 Mod 3 40 mm machinegun into the 40 mm mantlet.
8. Position the MK 19 40mm machinegun into the 40mm mantlet.
9. Ensure that the electrical firing solenoid connection is facing inboard.
10. Install the charging handle.
11. Install rear mounting pin.
12. Install and adjust forward mounting pins.
13. Replace 40mm cover and cover extension.
14. Install feed chute.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. TM 08521A-10/1A Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun, 40mm, MK 19 Mod 3
 3. TM 10004A-10/1C Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List
-

1833-GNRY-1111: Load MK 19 Mod 3 40mm Machine Gun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a MK 19 Mod 3 40mm machine gun mounted on an AAVP7A1/RAM RS, appropriate collateral equipment and ammunition.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Traverse weapons station until MK-19 40mm machine gun is over the vehicle top deck.
2. Verify that turret power switch is OFF.
3. Unlatch spring loaded latch pins. Open upper and lower doors. Secure upper door with retainer assembly.
4. If installed, have assistant remove 40mm feed chute cover.
5. Have assistant release feed chute locks and disconnect 40mm chute assembly from K-19 40mm machine gun and feed throat. Remove 40mm chute assembly.
6. Open feed throat cover to gain access when feeding ammo. Have an outside assistant feed the 40mm ammo through the feed throat.
7. Pull ammo through feed throat and fill rear compartment of 40mm ammo box with five to six rounds. Raise rear ammo gate into locked position to secure ammo in rear compartment.
8. Continue loading each compartment from rear to front of 40mm ammo box. Forward compartments will hold nine or ten rounds each raise ammo gates as each compartment is filled.
9. When ammo box is loaded, close upper ammo box door, first, then lower doors. Secure with spring loaded latch pins.
10. Have outside assistant slide 40mm chute assembly over outside ammunition. Connect 40mm chute assembly to feed throat and MK-19 machine gun. Secure with locks.
11. Close and latch feed throat cover.
12. Remove pin. Release two latches and remove mantlet cover.
13. Turn latch and open MK-19 40mm machine gun cover.
14. Feed ammo up to MK-19 40mm machine gun.
15. Pull first link up between the primary and secondary pawls.
16. Move secondary drive arm all the way to the right.
17. Close and latch machine gun cover.
18. Reinstall 40mm cover and secure with two latches and pin.
19. Reinstall 40mm feed chute cover to 400mm chute assembly. Secure with zipper.
20. To reload, have assistant pass box of 40mm ammo into weapons station, after the last round switch stops the MK-19 40mm machine gun from firing.
21. Move turret power switch to OFF.
22. Unlatch spring loaded latch pins on ammo box doors. Open upper and lower doors and secure upper door with retainer assembly.
23. Install 40mm ammo into ammo box with a male link to the rear. Position five to six rounds of ammo to the rear of the ammo box and raise rear ammo gate.
24. Continue loading each compartment in the 40mm ammo box and lifting ammo gates from rear to front, one compartment at a time. All compartments, except the rear, hold nine or ten rounds each.
25. When all compartments are full, connect female link of first round ammo in box to male link of ammo coming from MK-19 40mm machine gun.
26. Close upper ammo box door first, then close lower doors. Secure doors with spring loaded latch pins.

REFERENCES:

1. TM 08521A-10/1A Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun, 40mm, MK 19 Mod 3
 2. TM 10004A-10/1C Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List
-

1833-GNRY-1112: Zero MK 19 Mod 3 40mm Machine Gun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a MK 19 40mm machine gun installed on an AAVP7A1/RAM RS, appropriate collateral equipment, ammunition, an engagement area, and targets.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Lay the UGWS machine guns on a target 500 meters away so that the UGWS sight is on the center of the target.
2. Fire a burst of 8-10 rounds at the target.
3. Observe the impact on the target in relation to the aim point and adjust the sights using the reticule knobs as required.
4. Repeat firing and adjustments, as required.

REFERENCES:

1. TM 08521A-10/1A Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun, 40mm, MK 19 Mod 3
2. TM 10004A-10/1C Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task is reference specific. Care must be taken to perform each step in accordance with the references.

1833-GNRY-1113: Fire the MK 19 40mm Machine Gun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a MK 19 40mm machine gun mounted on an AAVP7A1/RAM RS, appropriate collateral equipment, ammunition, and targets in an engagement area.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Verify that MK-19 40mm machine gun is pointed down range; ensure that the reticle control adapter is down against the stop screw.
2. Move safety switch of machine gun to FIRE position.
3. Install 40mm service cover and secure with latch.
4. Move turret power switch ON; turret power green indicator light comes on.
5. Pull charger handle up to the unlock position and fold down to lock in operating position; crank charger handle clockwise until bolt locks in rear position.
6. Crank charger handle counterclockwise until all slack in chain is in front of handle.
7. Pull arming switch out and to the left.
8. Press trigger once, then release.
9. Crank charger handle again clockwise until bolt locks in rear position.
10. Crank charger handle counter-clockwise until all slack in chain is in front of handle.
11. Pull charger handle out of fold up to stowed position.
12. Depress trigger and fire a short burst of three to five rounds.
13. Traverse the weapons station and/or elevate or depress mantlets as necessary to hit target.

REFERENCES:

1. TM 08521A-10/1A Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun, 40mm, MK 19 Mod 3
2. TM 10004A-10/1C Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

1833-GNRY-1114: Apply Failure to Fire Procedures for MK 19 Mod 3 40mm Machine Gun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a MK-19 40mm machine gun mounted on an AAVP7A1/RAM RS, appropriate collateral equipment, and ammunition.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Turn turret power off before attempting to inspect the weapon.
2. Determine whether there is a stoppage or a malfunction.

3. Charge the weapon and attempt to fire.
4. If the weapon fires, continue the mission.
5. If the weapon fails to fire, follow the required safety procedures and inspect the weapon.
6. Conduct appropriate corrective action, as necessary.

REFERENCES :

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. TM 08521A-10/1A Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun, 40mm, MK 19 Mod 3
 3. TM 10004A-10/1C Uppgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List
-

1833-GNRY-1115: Unload MK 19 Mod 3 40mm Machine Gun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a MK 19 40mm machine gun mounted on an AAVP7A1/RAM RS, appropriate collateral equipment, and ammunition.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Verify that the weapon is on safe and pointed down range, in a safe direction.
2. Move turret power switch OFF if applicable.
3. Elevate the MK 19 machine gun and open receiver cover.
4. Remove ammo belt.
5. Move selector latch, down in the locked position.
6. Pull charger handle down until bolt locks in rear position.
7. Close receiver cover.
8. Hold charger handle. Move selector switch up in the unlocked position and slowly ride bolt to forward position.

REFERENCES :

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. TM 08521A-10/1A Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun, 40mm, MK 19 Mod 3
 3. TM 10004A-10/1C Uppgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List
-

1833-GNRY-1116: Remove MK 19 Mod 3 40mm Machine Gun from AAVP7A1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a MK-19 40mm machine gun mounted on an AAVP7A1/RAM RS and appropriate collateral equipment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct a safety check on the MK 19 Mod 3 40mm machine gun.
2. Be sure that the bolt is forward on the 40mm machine gun.
3. Traverse weapons station so that mantlets are over the vehicle top deck.
4. Move the turret power switch to "OFF".
5. Remove the 40mm ammo chute cover.
6. Release locks and remove 40mm chute assembly from the MK 19 40mm machine gun and feed throat.
7. Have person on the outside of the vehicle remove the 40mm cover and cover extension.
8. Disconnect firing solenoid cable from firing solenoid.
9. Remove front mounting pins.
10. Remove rear mounting pin.
11. Remove MK 19 Mod 3 40mm machine gun from mantlet.
12. Install 40mm cover extension and cover.
13. Store mounting pins according to unit SOP.
14. Install 40mm service cover and secure latch.

REFERENCES:

1. TM 08521A-10/1A Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun, 40mm, MK 19 Mod 3
 2. TM 10004A-10/1C Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List
-

1833-GNRY-1117: Perform Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on MK 19 Mod 3 40mm Machine Gun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an MK 19 Mod 3 40mm machine gun and appropriate cleaning equipment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct a safety check on the weapon, ensuring that it is safe for

- disassembly.
2. Ensure the weapon is pointed in a safe direction.
 3. Disassemble the weapon.
 4. Inspect, clean, and lubricate the components.
 5. Record worn or defective parts in equipment record jacket, tag defective parts, and inform armorer.
 6. Assemble the weapon.
 7. Conduct a functions check.
 8. Weapon must be mounted in weapons station or on a tri-pod with mounting charging handle in order to conduct a proper functions check.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 08521A-10/1A Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun, 40mm, MK 19 Mod 3
3. TM 10004A-10/1C Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task is reference specific. Care must be taken to perform each step in accordance with the references.

1833-GNRY-1118: Install M240G 7.62mm Machine Gun on AAVC7A1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M240G 7.62mm machine gun, an AAVC7A1, and appropriate collateral equipment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct safety check on weapon.
2. Place pintle mount on machine gun.
3. Unlock and remove cover from vehicle pintle.
4. Place machine gun mount on pintle and secure with lock.
5. Install machinegun on machine gun mount and secure with lock.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 07268B-10/1A Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Command, Model 7A1, AAVC7A1 Supplement to TM 09674A-10/3
3. TM 9-1005-313-10 Maintenance Manual, 7.62mm Machinegun M240G

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task is reference specific. Care must be taken to perform each step in accordance with the references.

1833-GNRY-1119: Remove M240G 7.62mm Machine Gun from AAVC7A1

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M240G 7.62mm machine gun mounted on an AAVC7A1 and appropriate collateral equipment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Verify that weapon is clear and safe.
2. Remove machine gun from machine gun mount.
3. Remove pintle from machine gun mount.
4. Replace cover on vehicle pintle.
5. Remove machine gun from mount.
6. Remove pintle mount from machine gun.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 07268B-10/1A Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Command, Model 7A1, AAVC7A1 Supplement to TM 09674A-10/3
3. TM 9- Operator's Manual, 7.62mm Machinegun M240G
4. TM 9-1005-313-10 Maintenance Manual, 7.62mm Machinegun M240G

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task is reference specific. Care must be taken to perform each step in accordance with the references.

1833-GNRY-1120: Perform Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on M240G 7.62mm Machine Gun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an M240G 7.62mm machine gun and appropriate cleaning equipment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct a safety check on the weapon, ensuring that it is safe for disassembly.
2. Ensure weapon is pointed in a safe direction.
3. Disassemble the weapon.
4. Inspect, clean, and lubricate the components.
5. Record worn or defective parts in equipment record jacket, tag defective parts, and inform armorer.
6. Assemble the weapon.
7. Conduct a function check.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 07268B-10/1A Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Command, Model 7A1, AAVC7A1 Supplement to TM 09674A-10/3
3. TM 9-1005-313-10 Maintenance Manual, 7.62mm Machinegun M240G

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task is reference specific. Care must be taken to perform each step in accordance with the references.

1833-GNRY-1121: Conduct Minor Boresighting of Upgunned Weapons Station

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a M2 .50 cal HB machine gun and MK 19 Mod 3 40mm machine gun installed on the AAVP7A1/RAM RS, boresighting kit, and appropriate collateral equipment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Position vehicle on level terrain on flat surface and apply parking brake.
2. Install weapons.
3. Place protractor on MK 19 40mm machine gun barrel as close to the mantlet cover as possible and elevate or depress until the protractor registers 0. Range indicator should be on 0 when the weapon and protractor register 0. Adjust as necessary.
4. Install boresight 40mm caliber bar into 40mm machine gun barrel.
5. Install bore sighting telescope into 40mm caliber bar so that crosshairs are vertical and horizontal.
6. Install 12.7mm caliber bar into .50 caliber machine gun barrel.
7. Place boresight target 50 meters from the vehicle in such manner that sight image is clear and level with the turret trunnion and in line with

- center line of weapons station.
8. Place reticle control adapter down against the stop screw.
 9. Sight through boresighting telescope on 40mm caliber bar and have assistant position boresight target at same height, horizontally and vertically as MK-19 40mm machine gun at 0 degrees elevation. Align crosshairs in boresight telescope with 40mm reference by moving boresight target.
 10. Center azimuth and elevation boresight knobs.
 11. Sight through day sight eyepiece and check alignment of boresight cross.
 12. Remove boresighting telescope from the 40mm caliber bar and install in the 12.7mm caliber bar in M2HB .50 caliber machine gun barrel.
 13. Sight through boresighting telescope. Adjust as necessary.
 14. Adjust azimuth.
 15. Adjust elevation.
 16. Boresight at night, as required.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 08521A-10/1A Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun, 40mm, MK 19 Mod 3
3. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
4. TM 10004A-10/1C Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List
5. TM 9-1005-213-10 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, Caliber .50, M2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

1833-GNRY-1122: Conduct Major Boresighting of Upgunned Weapons Station

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a M2 .50 cal HB machine gun and MK 19 Mod 3 40mm machine gun installed in the AAVP7A1/RAM RS, boresighting kit, and appropriate collateral equipment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Verify that AAV is positioned on level ground.
2. Verify that weapons are level using protractor.
3. Set range drum indicator to zero, ensuring thumb slide is in proper position.
4. Install weapons in weapons station.

5. Erect boresighting target.
6. Position boresighting target.
7. Align boresighting target with 40mm machine gun.
8. Sight .50 cal machine gun.
9. Center azimuth and elevation boresight knobs on body and passive elbow.
10. Move reticle control adapter down against stop screw.
11. Remove sight cover and sight gasket.
12. Loosen four screws securing M119 mount assembly to greenhouse weldment.
Loosen screws just enough to move M119 mount.
13. Loosen two screws securing two screws in gunsight adjusting bracket.
14. Focus and sight through body eyepiece. Have assistant rotate screws to establish azimuth alignment of sight. Vertical line of day body reticle must align with vertical line of boresight cross on body position of boresight target. Position vertical reference line on boresight cross, while screws are being adjusted, by turning adjustment bar to either the left or right.
15. Tighten two screws on sight linkage securely, if loosened to turn adjustment bar.
16. Install boresight filter.
17. Check azimuth alignment of passive elbow.
18. Tighten four sight mounting screws securely.
19. Look through body and passive elbow eye pieces and re-check azimuth. Once azimuth has been established, turn passive elbow switch and vehicle master switch OFF.
20. Tighten screws securing screws in gunsight adjusting bracket.
21. Adjust M36E3 periscope.
22. Check major boresighting adjustments for retention.
23. Install sight cover onto M119 mount.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 08521A-10/1A Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun, 40mm, MK 19 Mod 3
3. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
4. TM 10004A-10/1C Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List
5. TM 9-1005-213-10 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, Caliber .50, M2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

1833-GNRY-1123: Operate Upgunned Weapons Station

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Crewchief, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader, Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7A1/RAM RS upgunned weapons station with installed, loaded, and zeroed machine guns, associated collateral equipment, and engagement area.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct preventive maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on the Upgunned Weapon Station (UGWS).
2. Perform pre-operation checks and services of the UGWS.
3. Operate electrical components and switches of the UGWS.
4. Operate manual components.
5. Set headspace and timing on M2 HB .50 cal machine gun.
6. Load M2 HB .50 cal machine gun.
7. Fire the M2 HB .50 cal machine gun.
8. Apply failure to fire procedures for M2 HB .50 cal machine gun.
9. Zero a M2 HB .50 cal machine gun.
10. Unload M2 HB .50 cal machine gun.
11. Perform preventive maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on M2 HB .50 cal machine gun.
12. Load MK-19 Mod 3 40mm machine gun.
13. Fire the MK-19 Mod 3 40mm machine gun.
14. Apply failure to fire procedures for MK-19 Mod 3 40mm machine gun.
15. Zero MK-19 Mod 3 40mm machine gun.
16. Unload MK-19 Mod 3 40mm machine gun.
17. Perform preventive maintenance checks and services (PMCS) on MK-19 Mod 3 40mm machine gun.
18. Identify target.
19. Place aiming point or proper range line on center mass of target.
20. Engage targets with the Upgunned Weapon Station.
21. Perform after operations checks of the Upgunned Weapon Systems.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 10004A-10/1C Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

1833-GNRY-1124: Engage Targets with Upgunned Weapons Station

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7A1/RAM RS upgunned weapon station with installed, loaded, and zeroed machine guns, associated collateral equipment, ammunition and engagement area.

STANDARD: So all targets are suppressed or destroyed with minimum exposure to enemy observation.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Identify target.
2. Place aiming point or proper range line on center mass of target.
3. Announce "ON THE WAY" and fire the weapon(s).
4. Employ re-engage method, as needed.
5. Employ gunner's standard adjustment, as needed.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
4. TM 10004A-10/1C Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

1833-GNRY-1125: Perform Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on Upgunned Weapons Station

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given the Upgunned Weapons Station on the AAVP7A1/RAM RS and appropriate collateral equipment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Check area outside weapons station for debris.
2. Check protective covers on weapons station.
3. Check vision blocks and sight window.
4. Check hatch for serviceability.
5. Check weapons mantlets for cleanliness and serviceability.
6. Clean and lubricate grenade launcher tubes.
7. Check slip ring for cleanliness and serviceability.
8. Check electrical harness for cleanliness and serviceability.
9. Check .50 caliber ejection system for cleanliness and serviceability.
10. Check gunner's seat for cleanliness and serviceability.

11. Check control panels for cleanliness and serviceability.
12. Check power assist traverse mechanism for cleanliness and serviceability.
13. Check elevation for cleanliness and serviceability.
14. Check azimuth ring for cleanliness and serviceability.
15. Check 40mm crank handle for cleanliness and serviceability.
16. Check 40mm ammunition box for cleanliness and serviceability.
17. Check .50 caliber cradle for cleanliness and serviceability.
18. Check .50 caliber feed system for cleanliness and serviceability.
19. Check range indicator for cleanliness and serviceability.
20. Check gunner's sight for cleanliness and serviceability.
21. Check reticule adapter for cleanliness and serviceability.
22. Check exhaust blower for cleanliness and serviceability.
23. Check communications system for cleanliness and serviceability.
24. Check utility light for cleanliness and serviceability.
25. Check dome light for cleanliness and serviceability.
26. Set inhibit zone.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
 3. TM 10004A-10/1C Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List
 4. TM 10004A-25&P/2C Maintenance Instructions and Repair Parts List Organizational, Intermediate, and Depot Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1
-

1833-GNRY-1126: Load M257 Grenade Launcher System

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a M257 Grenade Launcher System mounted on an AAVP7A1/RAM RS, appropriate collateral equipment and ammunition.

STANDARD: Per the reference.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Set the TURRET POWER switch to OFF.
2. Remove covers from grenade dischargers.
3. Check grenade discharger tubes for dirt or sharp objects and clean as required.
4. Insert grenades into tubes per the references.
5. Turn each grenade 1/4 to 1/2 turn clockwise to ensure a solid electrical connection.
6. Replace covers, if required.

REFERENCE:

1. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1833-GNRY-1127: Fire M257 Grenade Launcher System

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a M257 Grenade Launcher System mounted on an AAVP7A1/RAM RS, appropriate collateral equipment, and ammunition.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Prepare the vehicle for firing the grenades by closing the hatches, turning off the vent fan, and closing the plenums, if possible.
2. Announce "GRENADE LAUNCHER" and traverse the turret to desired direction of fire.
3. Verify that embarked personnel are clear of the arc of the launcher if they are outside the vehicle.
4. Fire the grenades.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Close all hatches before firing grenade launchers to protect from grenade fragments or misfires. All outside personnel must be at least 50 meters to the rear of launcher firing zone. Consider wind direction and speed for ground personnel safety area. Training area and conditions must support employment of phosphorous smoke.

1833-GNRY-1128: Apply Failure to Fire Procedures on M257 Grenade Launcher System

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a M257 Grenade Launcher System mounted on an AAVP7A1/RAM RS, appropriate collateral equipment, and ammunition.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Verify all personnel are clear of area. Keep launchers pointed downrange until grenades are removed.
2. Wait 10-20 seconds after first attempt to fire smoke grenades.
3. Press LEFT or RIGHT smoke grenade firing buttons.
4. If grenade does not fire, move smoke grenade arming switch down to off position. Ensure red indicator light goes out.
5. Check to see that smoke grenade is firmly seated in its discharge tube (press down and rotate).
6. Move smoke grenade arming switch up to armed position. Armed indicator will be red.
7. Press "left" or "right" smoke grenade firing buttons. If smoke grenades do not fire, move smoke grenade arming switch down to OFF position. Ensure indicator light goes out.
8. If grenade still does not fire, grenade is a misfire and must be disposed.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Training area and conditions must support employment of phosphorous smoke.

1833-GNRY-1129: Unload M257 Grenade Launcher System

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a M257 Grenade Launcher System mounted on an AAVP7A1/RAM RS, appropriate collateral equipment, and ammunition.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Set the TURRET POWER switch to OFF.
2. Remove grenades.
3. Place ammunition in proper storage container.
4. Replace caps on grenade discharge tubes.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1833-GNRY-1130: Perform Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services on M257 Grenade

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a M257 Grenade Launcher System mounted on an AAVP7A1/RAM RS, appropriate collateral equipment, and cleaning gear.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Clean tube, especially electrical contact at base.
2. Lubricate tubes.
3. Check interrupter switch, make sure that it pushes in and releases freely.
4. Check for rust and corrosion.
5. Check electronic connectors to ensure that they are properly and securely connected.
6. Check the wires to ensure that there are no bare wires exposed.
7. Inspect tubes to ensure that there are no cracks inside or outside the tubes.
8. Turn the vehicle master switch and turret power switch on.
9. Close and lock turret.
10. Arm the smoke grenade launchers ensuring that the switch stays in the on position and the smoke grenade indicator light is illuminated.
11. Replace tube covers.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1833-GNRY-1131: Conduct AAV Gunnery Table I

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Table I is a non-firing table designed to test the proficiency of Marines on the MK 19 and M2 machine guns of the upgunned Weapon Station.

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary AAV, upgunned weapon station with cleared and installed MK 19 and M2 machine guns, required ammunition by type and amount, qualified evaluator, and references.

STANDARD: So Marines score 80 percent on the written exam and pass all additional events.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Event #1: Complete written exam.
2. Event #2: Assemble and disassemble the MK 19 and M2 machine guns.
3. Event #3: Set head space and timing on M2 heavy barrel machine gun.
4. Event #4: Install the MK 19 and M2 in the upgunned weapons station.
5. Event #5: Boresight the MK 19 and M2 machine guns.
6. Event #6: Load and clear the MK 19 and M2 machine guns.
7. Event #7: Clear a malfunction from the MK 19.
8. Event #8: Perform manipulation exercise.
9. Event #9: Utilize smoke grenade tester to demonstrate loading and firing procedures on the M257.
10. Event #10: Describe the three AAV firing positions.
11. Event #11: Describe fire commands (ADDRAC).
12. Event #12: Prepare an AAV range card.
13. Event #13: Describe the characteristics of fire.
14. Event #14: Describe the three classes of fire.
15. Event #15: Demonstrate methods to determine distance to target.
16. Event #16: Demonstrate how to properly handle/store ammunition on an AAV.
17. Event #17: Describe how to safely embark troops armed with ammunition.

RELATED EVENTS:

1833-TAC-1703	1833-VOPS-1303	1833-GNRY-1112
1833-GNRY-1104	1833-GNRY-1115	1833-GNRY-1129
1833-GNRY-1107	1833-GNRY-1102	1833-GNRY-1116
1833-GNRY-1108	1833-GNRY-1123	1833-GNRY-1111
1833-GNRY-1126	1833-GNRY-1103	1833-GNRY-1110
1833-GNRY-1118	1833-GNRY-1101	1833-GNRY-1113
1833-GNRY-1105	1833-GNRY-1127	1833-GNRY-1128
1833-GNRY-1114	1833-GNRY-1106	1833-CSS-2507

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
4. TM 08521A-10/1A Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun, 40mm,

- MK 19 Mod 3
5. TM 10004A-10/1C Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List
 6. TM 9-1005-213-10 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, Caliber .50, M2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
B472 Cartridge, 40mm Dummy M922	10 rounds/man
A560 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Dummy M2	10 rounds/man

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Marines must score 80 percent to pass written exam on event #1. All other events are pass/fail and will be mastered and evaluated before advancing to Table II. Manipulation exercises are performed by manually laying the weapons on targets requiring changes in elevation and deflection.

1833-GNRY-1132: Conduct AAV Gunnery Table II

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Table II is a live fire gunnery table designed to demonstrate proficiency on zeroing weapons of the upgunned weapon station in order to validate boresight.

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary AAV, an upgunned weapon station with installed MK19 and M2 machine guns, required ammunition by type and amount, stationary target at 500 meters, and a qualified evaluator.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Zero the M2 machine gun.
2. Zero the MK 19 machine gun.

RELATED EVENTS:

1833-GNRY-1104 1833-GNRY-1112

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
4. TM 08521A-10/1A Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun, 40mm, MK 19 Mod 3
5. TM 10004A-10/1C Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious

Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List
6. TM 9-1005-213-10 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, Caliber .50, M2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Lin	32 rounds/man
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP	50 rounds/man

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Table II is a Go/No Go event. The gunner must successfully pass all tasks in tables 1 and 2 to proceed any further.

1833-CMDC-1201: Employ Ground Guide Signals

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an order to safely move and operate a manned AAV and the references.

STANDARD: To properly position the vehicles and minimize risk to personnel and equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Signal vehicle to move forward.
2. Signal vehicle to move backward with the aid of rear ground guide.
3. Signal vehicle to turn (left and right).
4. Signal vehicle to pivot (left and right).
5. Signal vehicle to stop.
6. Signal ramp-down.
7. Signal ramp-up and secured.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 21-60 Visual Signals
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 3. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1833-CMDC-1202: Communicate Using Visual Signals

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given responsibility to control an AAV or AA unit and an area of operations.

STANDARD: To substitute radio and voice communications.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Communicate using hand and arm signals to control vehicles.
2. Communicate using flashlights to control vehicles.
3. Communicate using flags to control vehicles.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 21-60 Visual Signals
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
-

1833-CMDC-1203: Install Wire Communications Hot Loop

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an order to install wire communications hot loop in the unit and collateral equipment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Prepare inter-AAV wire communications.
2. Ensure that AAV crews properly set radios for hot loop.
3. Ensure that AAVs incoming wire is routed through driver's hatch.
4. Ensure that one wire end is connected to each TEL/REMOTE POST on the amplifier.
5. Ensure that each wire is connected to the next AAV in the same manner.
6. Ensure that AAV external communications checks are conducted to verify that the last loop is operational.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 24-20 Tactical Wire and Cable Techniques
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

1833-CMDC-1204: Communicate Using AAVP7A1/RAM RS Communication Equipment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7A1/RAM RS, a radio net, and references.

STANDARD: Per current EMCON controls.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Prepare the communications equipment for operations.
2. Operate the Combat Vehicle Crewman's (CVC) helmet.
3. Operate the vehicle intercom system.
4. Operate the audio frequency amplifier.
5. Operate the receiver/transmitters in plain and covered mode.
6. Operate the receiver/transmitters in frequency hopping and single channel mode.
7. Communicate over inter-AAV wire communications (hot loop).
8. Operate the position location systems.
9. Secure communication equipment from operation.

REFERENCES:

1. TM 11-5810-256-OP-4 Operating Procedures for COMSECEQ TSEC/KY-57 in Tracked Vehicles
 2. TM 11-5820-890-10-1 Operator Manual for SINCGARS Ground Combat Net Radio
-

1833-CMDC-1205: Identify Standard Flags, Lights, and Markers Used to Control AAV

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given standard flags, lights, and markers.

STANDARD: Per the references.

CONDITION: Given slides, mock-ups, drawings, or models of vehicles and helicopters visible for 10 seconds.

STANDARD: So that crewman identifies vehicles and helicopters.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Determine the type of vehicle/helicopter.
2. Determine the role of the vehicle/helicopter on the battlefield.
3. Determine main armament.
4. Determine the identifying characteristics of the vehicle/helicopter.
5. State the nomenclature of the vehicle/helicopter.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 44-30 Visual Aircraft Recognition
 2. ROC-V Recognition of Combat Vehicles
-

1833-CMDC-1208: Perform AAV Operational Safety Procedures

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given responsibility of safety of embarked passenger and equipment and aid of crewmembers.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Verify that all embarked personnel receive orientation and safety brief in assembly area prior to the conduct of active operations.
2. Verify that all items in the troop compartment of the vehicle are secured to prevent injury.
3. Verify that all items for recovery operations, water and land, are serviceable and properly stowed on the vehicle.
4. Verify that all life jackets are serviceable and worn during water operations.
5. Verify that all embarked personnel remain seated, wear helmet and flak jacket, during operations.
6. Verify that all dismounted personnel maintain minimum safe distance from vehicles and are visible to the crew at all times.
7. Verify that crews use ground guides in congested or limited visibility conditions.
8. Verify that cargo and ammunition is properly loaded and secured.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 3. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1833-CMDC-1209: Navigate an AAV

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: While embarked aboard an AAV, and given a map, an area of operations, navigational devices, and references.

STANDARD: By plotting, navigating, and locating known points.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Plan the route to move from terrain feature to terrain feature, considering the tactical aspects and ease of movement of the route.
2. Follow the terrain features using terrain driving techniques.
3. Determine approximate directions of the various segments of the route.
4. Determine total distance for the route and distance between checkpoints.
5. Look to the rear to familiarize yourself with the view of the terrain if you must retrace the route.
6. Use COMPASS, GPS, TACNAV, MHS to augment navigation.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 5-33 Terrain Analysis
 2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
-

1833-VOPS-1301: Conduct Preoperations Checks

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an order to conduct operations and a preoperations checklist.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Check all oil levels and conditions.
2. Check coolant level and condition.
3. Check hydraulic reservoir oil level.
4. Check battery electrolyte and terminal condition.
5. Check fuel level.
6. Drain fuel water separator on fuel filter.
7. Drain fuel tank sediment.

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit with personnel to embark.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Verify that safety and orientation brief has been given.
2. Verify that emergency procedures have been briefed and rehearsed, as appropriate.
3. Verify that all personnel are placed on a manifest and the manifest is forwarded through the AAV chain.
4. Verify that weapons are inspected and placed in a safe condition.
5. Verify that troops are embarked in reverse order to their plan to disembark.
6. Verify that all personnel wear helmets and flak jackets when the vehicle is in motion.
7. Verify that all personnel are instructed on the proper operation of and methods for securing their hatches.
8. Verify that all personnel wear life jackets during waterborne operations.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 3. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1833-VOPS-1304: Account for Embarked Personnel Aboard AAVs

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AA unit with embarked personnel and the references.

STANDARD: So all personnel are accounted for accurately.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Verify that all embarked personnel are properly embarked on the AAV.
2. Verify that all personnel are properly listed on the AAV manifest list.
3. Verify that the manifest or a copy of the manifest is left with the ship's First Lieutenant or senior AAV personnel ashore.

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1833-VOPS-1305: Conduct AAV Orientation and Safety Brief for Embarked Personnel

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Crewchief, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader, Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given responsibility for embarked personnel.

STANDARD: Per higher unit's operations order and the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Verify that all embarked personnel are in listening range and are paying attention to the brief.
2. Brief embarked personnel on AAV orientation and safety.
3. Ask embarked personnel for any questions.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 3-90.1 Tank and Mechanized Infantry Company Team
 2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
-

1833-VOPS-1306: Start AAV Engine Under Normal Conditions

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV and appropriate collateral material.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Perform preoperation checks.
2. Ensure transmission gear selector is in N (neutral).
3. Ensure hand throttle is in IDLE.
4. Ensure fuel connector is OFF and fuel shutoff valve is open.
5. Place master switch ON.
6. Place mode selector switch in LAND mode.
7. Press starter switch and hold for 5 seconds. Allow five seconds for DDU

- interrupter to repower display. Observe BAT VOLTS display. If bargraph flashes and ambient temperature is above 50 degrees F, or engine does not crank, or cranks a turn or two and stops, release starter and turn master switch to OFF. Notify organizational maintenance.
8. If engine turn normally, continue to press starter switch for 15 seconds to prime lubrication system.
 9. Place fuel control ON.
 10. Place lamp test/warning cancel switch to LAMP TEST.
 11. Press starter switch firmly to engage starting motor.
 12. Let engine idle for 30 seconds.
 13. Before moving vehicle check driver's display panel.
 14. Check fuel level indicator to be sure there is enough fuel.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1833-VOPS-1307: Start an AAV Under Freezing Conditions

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Pre-operations checks are conducted on the vehicle.
2. Hydrostatic steer unit is disengaged by pulling lever outboard and then aft.
3. Mode selector switch is in WATER/TRACKS to turn cooling fan off and close plenums.
4. Power Takeoff (PTO) is disengaged by pulling lever outboard and then forward.
5. Hand throttle is opened 1/4 to 1/3 travel, and fuel control is on.
6. Cold start switch is held for 30 to 60 seconds to allow glow plug to warm up.
7. Starter switch is pressed while cold start switch is held ON.
8. Proper procedure is followed if engine begins to stall after releasing starter switch, by pressing starter switch again as soon as engine stops rotating. Continue to hold cold start switch ON while pressing starter switch.
9. Engine is warmed up after engine starts, by running engine at 800 to 1000 rpm. When engine is running smoothly, after about 2 to 5 minutes of operation, let go of cold start switch.
10. Restart procedures are followed if engine does not start within 30 seconds, let go of starter switch and cold start switch. Wait two minutes

- and repeat steps 6 through 9.
11. Parking brake is set. Place transmission gear selector in 4th gear. Hold engine speed of 1000 to 1200 rpm until engine water (coolant) temperature reaches 155 degrees.
 12. Transmission gear selector is placed in N "neutral".
 13. Fuel control is placed in "OFF" to stop engine.
 14. Hydrostatic steer unit is engaged by pulling lever outboard, then forward.
 15. Power takeoff is engaged by pulling lever outboard, then aft.
 16. Engine is started by placing fuel control "ON", then starting engine.

REFERENCES :

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1833-VOPS-1308: Tow Start an AAV

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit, disabled AAV, and route.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Pre-operations checks are conducted on both vehicles.
2. Verify that the disabled vehicle is prepared for tow starting by: disconnecting the hydrostatic steering, place fuel control "ON", place transmission gear selector in 2nd gear, and release parking brake.
3. Supervise the connection of tow bar or cables to the bow of the disabled vehicle and the stern of the towing vehicle at the towing eyes. When using cables, ensure that they are crossed.
4. The disabled vehicle is towed at the prescribed speed on a level surface until it starts.
5. When vehicle starts, signal towing vehicle and bring both vehicles to halt.
6. Place transmission gear selector in N (neutral).
7. Set parking brake.
8. Disconnect tow bar or tow cables.
9. When batteries are charged, place fuel control "OFF" to stop engine.
10. Engage hydrostatic steer unit by pulling lever outboard, then forward.

REFERENCES :

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1833-VOPS-1309: Start AAV Engine from Outside Power Source

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit and an AAV with dead batteries.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. The disabled AAV is prepared for slave starting.
2. The power source is positioned so that it can reach the disabled AAV with its slave cable.
3. The crew of the disabled AAV checks the reverse polarity indicator light and activates the reset button on the power distribution box.
4. The crew attempts to start the disabled AAV with operational power source operating.
5. With AAV engine operating, the crews disconnect the slave cable and prepare for operations.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1833-VOPS-1310: Operate AAV on Land

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given the duties of AAV driver, communication with vehicle crewchief, an area of operation, and references.

STANDARD: Without loss of vehicle control at any time, applying emergency procedures as required, and continuously observing the forward terrain for possible enemy targets and for likely friendly firing positions.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Perform pre-operations checks.
2. Verify that all personnel are properly seated and wearing helmets and flak jackets.
3. Verify that all hatches are properly secured: ramp is up and dogged; turret, driver, and troop commander hatches are secured; and cargo hatches

- are secured.
4. Make sure any cargo is tied down for travel.
 5. Make sure mode selector switch is in LAND mode.
 6. Properly start the AAV.
 7. Place transmission gear selector in position needed.
 8. Release parking brake.
 9. Press accelerator pedal slowly and evenly.
 10. Check operating systems to ensure vehicle is functioning properly.
 11. Perform during operations checks as required.
 12. To pivot steer, stop the vehicle and place transmission gear selector in PIVOT. Turn steering wheel in direction you want to pivot. Port and starboard tracks will turn opposite directions and vehicle will turn without moving forward.
 13. Observe driving cautions.
 14. Operate the vehicle on land, driving in reverse and pivoting the vehicle as required.
 15. Drive up and down hills as required.
 16. Drive over obstacles as required. Do not drive over obstacles that are narrower than the span of the track.
 17. Drive across ditches as required.
 18. Use evasive driving techniques as required.
 19. Drive at night, with and without lights, with and without night vision devices, as required.
 20. Perform during operation checks.
 21. Stop the vehicle properly.
 22. Perform after operations checks.

REFERENCES :

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 3. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1833-VOPS-1311: Operate AAV in Water

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV and an amphibious area of operation.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Perform prewater operations checks.
2. Prepare the vehicle for waterborne operations by installing water tight plugs in the ammunition chute and M2 barrel opening.
3. Ensure that all hatches are closed, to include the ramp and personnel door.

4. Ensure that all personnel have been given the orientation and safety brief.
5. Ensure that the turret is prepared for waterborne operations.
6. Ensure that all crewmen and embarked personnel are properly wearing a serviceable life jacket, flack jacket, and helmet.
7. Ensure communications between all crew stations and with other vehicles.
8. Place mode selector switch into water mode.
9. Observe that plenum position indicators are in the closed position.
10. Turn on electric bilge pumps.
11. Close Engine Compartment Exhaust Outlet Valve.
12. On signal from the Splash team or well deck personnel, drive the AAV into the water. All hatches will be closed at all times when entering or leaving the water.
13. When clear of the ship or surf zone, open hatches at the discretion of the vehicle commander.
14. Drive the AAV through the water. Employ the track drive in addition to the water drive according to hydrography of the area.
15. When clear of the ship or surf zone, deploy the bow plane.
16. Operate the vehicle in the reverse and pivot modes as required.
17. Retract the bow plane when approaching the ship, surf zone, or landing beach.
18. Drive the AAV out of the water.
19. Come to a complete stop as soon as possible, given the terrain or guidance from the well deck crew, and return the vehicle to the land operations mode.
20. Conduct after operations checks and services.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

1833-VOPS-1312: Operate AAV System Components

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an operational AAV.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct pre-operations checks.
2. Start engine.
3. Operate audio warning system.
4. Operate personnel heater.
5. Inspect manual fire suppression system.
6. Arm the Automatic Fire Sensing and Suppression System (AFSSS).
7. Inspect the portable fire extinguisher.
8. Operate the vehicle lights.
9. Operate the ventilation system.
10. Install and remove center troop seats.
11. Operate hatches.
12. Operate intake and exhaust grills.
13. Operate ramp.
14. Install and remove blackout covers.
15. Operate searchlight.
16. Operate bow plane.
17. Operate water drive system.
18. Operate magnetic heading system.
19. Operate extension light (drop light).
20. Stop engine.
21. Conduct after operations checks.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1833-VOPS-1313: Troubleshoot Systems Malfunctions on AAV

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given duties to troubleshoot AAV systems, specific symptoms of a malfunction in a vehicle operating system, and an AAV.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Troubleshoot malfunctions on the power plant.
2. Troubleshoot malfunctions on the final drives.
3. Troubleshoot malfunctions on the suspension.
4. Troubleshoot malfunctions on the controls and linkages.
5. Troubleshoot malfunctions on the hydraulic system.
6. Troubleshoot malfunctions on the water propulsion system.
7. Troubleshoot malfunctions on the ventilation system.
8. Troubleshoot malfunctions on the electrical system.
9. Troubleshoot malfunctions on the manual fire suppression system.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Open intake grill.
2. Open exhaust grill.
3. Detach the links in the hydraulic hoses for the intake and exhaust plenums as shown on the panel in the vehicle.
4. Reconnect the hydraulic lines for the intake and exhaust plenum covers as shown on the panel in the vehicle to create a circular flow of fluid for each plenum cover.
5. Using two crewman, push plenum cover shut until plenum cover latch locks. Use a screwdriver as appropriate.
6. With plenum covers locked shut, disconnect hydraulic plenum lines to prevent fluid from moving between the portions of the cylinder.
7. Close intake and exhaust covers.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1833-VOPS-1316: Refuel an AAV

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit and the use of a refueling vehicle or other source with appropriate fuel.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Position the AAV near enough to the fuel source that the hose will reach using ground guides.
2. Turn the vehicle off.
3. Disembark all personnel from the vehicle prior to refueling.
4. Vehicle commander is positioned with a portable fire extinguisher in case of emergency.
5. All local safety requirements are observed at the refueling point.
6. AAV is refueled until it is full or the fuel source is depleted.
7. The vehicle is ground guided from the fuel source and prepared for further service.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1833-VOPS-1317: Employ Smoke Generation System

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7A1/RAM RS and an area to operate the smoke generation system.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Set parking brake.
2. Perform the pre-operation checks.
3. Loosen thumbscrew and open smoke generation system valve access door.
4. Turn smoke system manual control "ON".
5. Close access door and secure thumb screw.
6. Make sure switch guard is closed (down position).
7. Start engine.
8. Check to make sure smoke generation indicator light is "OFF".
9. Let engine idle at least 30 seconds and slowly increase engine speed to 1000/1200 rpm (for cold engine, warm up engine at 1000/1200 rpm for about 3 minutes).
10. Operate moving vehicle at 1800 to 2000 rpm.
11. Operate stationary vehicle with brakes on and transmission in 4th gear at engine speed above 2000 rpm.
12. Lift up smoke generation switch guard and hold smoke switch in the up "ON" position.
13. Check to make sure smoke generation light is "ON".
14. To shut down, place smoke switch guard down.
15. Make sure transmission gear selector is in N (neutral).
16. Make sure parking brake is set.
17. Run engine at about 1000 rpm for 3 to 5 minutes to make sure power train cools off slowly (if this is not possible run it at a fast idle for at least 30 to 60 seconds).
18. Make sure hand throttle is in IDLE and do not pump accelerator when stopping engine.
19. Place fuel control "OFF" and engine will stop.
20. Place master switch "OFF".
21. Loosen thumbscrew and open access door.
22. Turn smoke system manual control "OFF".
23. Close access door and secure with thumbscrew.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

1833-VOPS-1318: Conduct Demolition to Prevent Enemy Use

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a disabled AAV, an operations order directing the destruction of vehicles to prevent enemy use and subsequent displacement.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Establish local security around disabled AAV.
2. Determine amount of time available to conduct repair or salvage operations.
3. If speed is essential or enemy pressure is present prepare vehicle for hasty demolition by: removing all wounded and dead personnel from vehicle, removing any personal weapons and equipment, open ramp and cargo hatches, disable fire suppression system, and clear all radios if time permits.
4. Have all personnel and vehicles move at least 500 meters from disabled AAV.
5. Have designated vehicle(s) fire salvo of MK-19 40mm rounds into troop compartment or throw incendiary hand grenade until onboard ammunition and fuel ignite or explode.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1833-VOPS-1319: Conduct Land Tow of a Disabled AAV

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a disabled AAV capable of being towed on land, an operational AAV to support towing, trained crews, tow bars, tow cables, and appropriate collateral material.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Connect tow bar to forward towing eyes of disabled vehicle and to pintle of tow vehicle.
2. When using tow cables, connect one end of tow cables to forward towing eyes of disabled vehicle.
3. Cross connect other end of tow cables to aft towing eyes of tow vehicle.
4. When towing vehicle equipped with a bow plane on land, the bow plane must be fully retracted. If the bow plane cannot be retracted from the driver's station, it should be removed from the vehicle before attaching tow cables or tow bar.
5. Disengage hydrostatic steer unit of disabled vehicle by pulling lever outboard, then aft.
6. Disengage power takeoff by pulling lever on outboard, then forward.
7. Have organizational maintenance disconnect final drive universal joints.
8. Station an observer in troop compartment of tow vehicle to view disabled vehicle through ramp vision block.
9. Open cover and view disabled vehicle through ramp vision block. Inform driver of position and condition of disabled vehicle. Watch for hand and arm signals from crew of disabled vehicle and report to driver as needed.
10. If needed, pull quick-release handle on inside of ramp to open tow pintle and release disabled vehicle.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
 3. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1833-VOPS-1320: Conduct Water Tow of a Disabled AAV

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a disabled AAV capable of being towed in water, an operational AAV to support towing, trained crews, tow bars, tow cables, and appropriate collateral material.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Hook two towlines on sea tow quick-release and around mooring cleats on tow vehicle. Hook other end of towlines to mooring cleats on disabled vehicle.
2. Before towing a vehicle equipped with a bow plane in open water, the bow plane of the towed vehicle should be fully retracted. If the bow plane cannot be retracted, the towlines should be placed around the sides of the

- bow plane.
3. Station an observer in troop compartment of tow vehicle to view disabled vehicle through ramp vision block.
 4. Open cover and view disabled vehicle through ramp vision block.
 5. To release towlines, pull up on outside release handle or pull down on inside release handle.
 6. To reset quick-release, return outside handle to clip, and push inside handle flush to overhead.

REFERENCES :

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
 3. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1833-VOPS-1321: Maintain CVC Helmet

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a CVC helmet, warm water, mild soap solution, dry cloth, PM brush, eraser, and the references.

STANDARD: By inspecting for serviceability, ensuring the liner and outer shell, cords, and connectors are clean.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Inspect outer shell for cracks, worn rubber edging and loose rivets.
2. Verify that switch operates smoothly.
3. Clean sweatband and liner with warm water and mild soap solution (do not wet the earphone microphone set).
4. Wipe off cords.
5. Clean connectors with PM brush and eraser.

REFERENCES :

1. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
 2. TM 11-5820-401-10-2 Operator's Manual (VRC-12)
-

1833-VOPS-1322: Maintain Ordnance Vehicle Logbook

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV ordnance vehicle logbook.

STANDARD: Per the reference.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Inventory log book to ensure that it is accurate.
2. Make entry when a minimum of one mile and/or hour is added to the speedometer/tachometer.
3. Inventory log book to ensure that is complete.

REFERENCE:

1. TM 4700-15/1 Marine Corps Ground Equipment Record Procedures
-

1833-VOPS-1323: Maintain Driver Vision Enhancement (DVE) Sight

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a DVE night vision viewer, alcohol, lens cleaning solution, and lens tissue.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Flush surfaces of lenses with alcohol.
2. Soak lens tissue using cleaning solution.
3. Apply solution to lenses dabbing lightly until surface is evenly covered.
4. Wait 1 to 3 minutes for solution to loosen heavy dirt (do not allow solution to dry). Flush solution away with alcohol.
5. Repeat solution application as needed to clean dirty optics.
6. Clean lenses in small section by applying cleaning solution and gently wiping with clean tissue.
7. Rinse lenses with alcohol. Dry lenses by wiping lightly in a single direction with clean lens tissue.
8. Report any damage to organizational maintenance.

REFERENCES:

1. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
2. TM 11-5855-249-10 Operator's Manual for Viewer, Drivers Night Vision System, AN/VVS-2

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task is reference dependent and requires the use of the technical manual for successful task performance.

Performance in the appropriate reference should be followed closely.

1833-VOPS-1324: Operate Driver's Night Vision Device

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a driver's night vision device.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct pre-operations checks and services.
2. Install night vision device in driver's station.
3. Connect power cable to vehicle or use batteries as appropriate.
4. Verify that sight is centered on hatch prior to vehicle operation.
5. Focus field of view prior to vehicle operation.

REFERENCES:

1. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
 2. TM 11-5855-249-10 Operator's Manual for Viewer, Drivers Night Vision System, AN/VVS-2
-

1833-VOPS-1325: Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on AAV

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV and appropriate collateral material.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct preventive maintenance checks and services on the vehicle exterior.
2. Conduct preventive maintenance checks and services on the vehicle suspension.
3. Conduct preventive maintenance checks and services on the vehicle water drive system.
4. Conduct lubrication in accordance with the lubrication instruction.

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7A1 and associated Special Mission Kits.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct preventive maintenance checks and services on the cold weather operating kit.
2. Conduct preventive maintenance checks and services on the enhanced appliqué armor kit (EAAK).
3. Conduct preventive maintenance checks and services on the litter kit.
4. Conduct preventive maintenance checks and services on the visor kit.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. TM 09674A-10/1A Special Mission Kits for the Assault Amphibious Vehicle
 3. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1833-AMPH-1601: Debark from Amphibious Shipping

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given the order to debark from amphibious shipping, the responsibility of AAV driver, and intercom communication with vehicle crewchief.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct pre-water operations checks and services.
2. Verify water tight integrity of AAV.
3. Place vehicle in water drive mode.
4. On signal from ship's well deck crew, drive clear of well deck.
5. When vehicle is clear of ship, on order from the vehicle commander, open hatches.
6. Deploy bow plane as appropriate.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

1833-TAC-1701: Employ Movement Techniques

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit, area of operation, designated route, and references.

STANDARD: By maintaining control and mutual support throughout the movement.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct terrain analysis of movement area.
2. Conduct threat analysis of movement area.
3. Select appropriate movement technique based on the estimate of the mission, the terrain to be covered, and the threat of enemy contact.
4. Use traveling technique when speed is essential and enemy contact is unlikely.
5. Use traveling overwatch when speed is important and enemy contact is possible.
6. Use successive or alternate bounding overwatch when enemy contact is likely.
7. Communicate formations.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

1833-TAC-1702: Employ Movement Formations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a Assault Amphibian unit and area of operations.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct terrain analysis of movement area.
2. Conduct threat analysis of movement area.
3. Select appropriate movement formation, rate of march, and interval.
4. Communicate formation.
5. Move into different formation as METT-TC analysis is updated.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
-

1833-TAC-1703: Prepare AAV Range Card

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV with a sector of fire.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Indicate the position of the AAV.
2. Indicate key terrain features, range, and elevation.
3. Indicate unit sector of engagement area.
4. Indicate Target Reference Points (TRPs).
5. Indicate friendly Observation Points (OPs).
6. Indicate obstacles.
7. Indicate any indirect fire targets, including Final Protective Fire (FPF), if allocated.
8. Indicate position of vehicles or units on immediate flanks.
9. Indicate weapons dead spaces.
10. Record date that range card was made.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 5-33 Terrain Analysis
2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
5. TM 10004A-10/1C Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17420 Maneuver/Training Area, Heavy Forces

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Range cards are made during daylight hours whenever possible. Range cards should be made using magnetic azimuths and grid position to integrate fires with infantry. Bezel ring azimuths are not applicable for fire plan sketches.

1833-TAC-1704: Scan Area

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given area of operations within field of view.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct ground search using rapid-scan method.
2. Conduct ground search using slow (50 meter) scan method.
3. Conduct ground search using detailed search method.
4. Conduct air search using horizontal search and scan.
5. Conduct air search using vertical search and scan.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
-

1833-TAC-1705: Camouflage an AAV

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given the order to camouflage an AAV, camouflage system, the aid of crewmembers., and references.

STANDARD: To avoid detection by enemy ground or air observers.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Maintain security while other vehicles camouflage.
2. Maintain noise and light discipline.
3. Erect and maintain camouflage netting as necessary.

STANDARD: So all personnel are safely evacuated.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Disabled/sinking AAV crew alerts unit of distress.
2. Supervise movement of recovery AAV to assist disabled/sinking AAV.
3. Move rescue AAV to disabled/sinking AAV and hold station to begin evacuation.
4. Evacuate and transfer personnel from disabled/sinking AAV.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

7007. 2000-LEVEL 1833 INDIVIDUAL EVENTS

1833-GNRY-2101: Load M240G 7.62mm Machine Gun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M240G 7.62mm machine gun, an AAVC7A1 vehicle, and dummy ammunition.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct safety check on weapon.
2. Place the safety to "F".
3. Hold cocking handle to rear, squeeze trigger, ease the bolt forward.
4. Place link belt in feed tray with 1st round against cartridge stop (position open side of links down).
5. Close cover assembly. Make sure it locks shut.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 07268B-10/1A Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Command, Model 7A1, AAVC7A1 Supplement to TM 09674A-10/3
3. TM 9-1005-313-10 Maintenance Manual, 7.62mm Machinegun M240G

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task is reference specific. Care must be taken to perform each step in accordance with the references.

1833-GNRY-2102: Fire M240G 7.62mm Machine Gun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M240G 7.62mm machine gun mounted on an AAVC7A1, appropriate collateral equipment, ammunition, and targets in an engagement area.

STANDARD: Until all targets are suppressed or destroyed.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct safety check on weapon.
2. Install M240G 7.62mm machine gun on AAVC7A1.
3. Load M240G 7.62mm machine gun.
4. Sight the weapon on target approximately 500 to 800 meters down range.
5. Fire a burst of 5-8 rounds at the target.
6. Repeat firing and adjust as required.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 07268B-10/1A Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Command, Model 7A1, AAVC7A1 Supplement to TM 09674A-10/3
3. TM 9-1005-313-10 Maintenance Manual, 7.62mm Machinegun M240G

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17721 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task is reference specific. Care must be taken to perform each step in accordance with the references.

1833-GNRY-2103: Apply Failure to Fire Procedures for M240G 7.62mm Machine Gun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M240G 7.62mm machine gun mounted on an AAVC7A1, appropriate collateral equipment, and ammunition.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Determine whether there is a stoppage or a malfunction.
2. Charge the weapon and attempt to fire.
3. If weapon does not fire, pull cocking handle to the rear and lock the bolt to the rear.
4. Perform remedial action -if the weapon is "hot", wait 15 minutes.
5. Clear weapon.
6. Visually inspect weapon.
7. Load and attempt to fire.
8. If weapon does not fire, notify unit maintenance.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management

2. TM 07268B-10/1A Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Command, Model 7A1, AAVC7A1 Supplement to TM 09674A-10/3
3. TM 9- Operator's Manual, 7.62mm Machinegun M240G
4. TM 9-1005-313-10 Maintenance Manual, 7.62mm Machinegun M240G

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task is reference specific. Care must be taken to perform each step in accordance with the references.

1833-GNRY-2104: Unload M240G 7.62mm Machine Gun

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an M240G 7.62mm machine gun mounted on an AAVC7A1, appropriate collateral equipment, and ammunition.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Place safety on "F".
2. Pull cocking handle to the rear to lock the bolt back. Return cocking handle to forward position.
3. Place safety on "S".
4. Push in latches and open feed cover assembly.
5. Remove ammunition belt.
6. Raise feed tray.
7. Look into chamber to make sure it is empty. If a round is still in the chamber, refer to ruptured/stuck cartridge case or live round procedures.
8. Lower feed tray.
9. Place safety to "F".
10. Depress trigger, ease bolt forward.
11. Close cover assembly and lock it shut.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 07268B-10/1A Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Command, Model 7A1, AAVC7A1 Supplement to TM 09674A-10/3
3. TM 9-1005-313-10 Maintenance Manual, 7.62mm Machinegun M240G

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task is reference specific. Care must be taken to perform each step in accordance with the references.

1833-GNRY-2105: Set Inhibit Zone for the Upgunned Weapons Station

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Inhibit zones are areas in which the weapons are prevented (inhibited) from firing ELECTRICALLY, because part of the vehicle is in the line fire. When checking inhibit zones, refer to the last recorded settings. If the INHIBIT light on the weapons control panel fails to illuminate or go off at any of the recorded settings, adjustments must be made and new zones must be set, checked, and recorded.

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7A1/RAM RS, tactical scenario, and adjacent friendly forces.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Set up the UGWS for setting the inhibit zone.
2. Establish the inhibit zone elevation.
3. Establish Inhibit Zone 2 azimuths.
4. Establish Inhibit Zone 1 azimuths.
5. Reset inhibit points if applicable and re-establish inhibit zones.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
3. TM 10004A-10/1C Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: When weapons enter an inhibit zone the INHIBIT light, on the weapons control panel illuminates and the electric trigger ceases to function. Inhibit points are where the inhibit zone begins and ends. When inhibit points are set, they are recorded in the Weapon Record Book, Part 1. There are four inhibit points, two for each inhibit zone.

1833-GNRY-2106: Conduct AAV Gunnery Table III

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Table III is a live fire gunnery table that demonstrates basic upgunned weapon station engagement skills from a stationary position against stationary target(s) during daylight operations.

BILLETS: Crewchief, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary AAV, upgunned weapon station with installed MK 19 and M2 machine guns, required ammunition by type and amount, stationary targets from 600-1800 meters, daytime visibility, qualified evaluator, and references.

STANDARD: So the gunner destroys all targets in the time directed.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Scenario #1: Engage and destroy a stationary target at a distance of 600-1000 meters using manual or electrical trigger within 30 seconds.
2. Scenario #2: Engage and destroy 2 stationary targets at a distance of 600-1000 meters using manual or electrical trigger within 60 seconds.
3. Scenario #3: Engage and destroy a stationary target at a distance of 1000-1800 meters using manual or electrical trigger within 45 seconds.
4. Scenario #4: Engage and destroy 2 stationary targets at a distance of 1000-1800 meters using manual or electrical trigger within 2 minutes.
5. Scenario #5: Engage and destroy 2 stationary targets at unknown ranges using manual or electrical trigger within 2 minutes.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

1833-GNRY-1132

RELATED EVENTS:

1833-TAC-1703 1833-GNRY-1124 1833-GNRY-1105
1833-GNRY-1113

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Lin	88 rounds/man
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP	160 rounds/man

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

1. Each task in Table III is a pass or fail event. Each gunner must cumulatively pass 70 percent of events from Tables III-V in order to qualify.
2. Suppression with the MK 19 is impact of the round within 30 meters of the target, with a 3-5 round burst. Suppression with the .50 cal. is rounds impacting within 4 meters in width and 10 meters deep of the target, with an 8-10 round burst. Rounds impacting short of the target have some suppressive value; however, rounds fired over the target have

no suppressive value. Suppression will be determined by the judgment of the evaluator.

3. A target is destroyed with the MK 19 when a round impacts within 5 meters of the target. The .50 cal. can destroy a target only with a direct hit on soft targets at ranges no greater than 1000 meters. The MK 19 can destroy a soft target by impacting within 15 meters of the target.
4. Time is the time limit given as part of the standard. The gunner must register suppression and destroy the target within the time limit to pass the event.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: Gunners will prepare a range card prior to live fire. Gunners will record firing data for both weapons on targets to be engaged for subsequent nighttime engagements. All times are maximum allowed to complete the task. Ammunition requirements are based on a Marine to execute entire table.

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS:

ADVANCED GUNNER (80%-100%) QUALIFIED GUNNER (70%-79%) UNQUALIFIED (0-69%)

1833-GNRY-2107: Conduct AAV Gunnery Table IV

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Table IV is a live fire gunnery table that demonstrates basic upgunned weapon station engagement skills from a stationary position against stationary target(s) during simulated NBC conditions.

BILLETS: Crewchief, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary AAV, upgunned weapon station with installed MK 19 and M2 machine guns, required ammunition by type and amount, stationary targets from 600-1800 meters, daytime visibility, simulated NBC conditions in MOPP 4, qualified evaluator, and references.

STANDARD: So the gunner destroys all targets in the time directed.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Scenario #6: Engage and destroy a stationary target at a distance of 600-1000 meters using manual or electrical trigger within 45 seconds.
2. Scenario #7: Engage and destroy a stationary target at a distance of 1000-1800 meters using manual or electrical trigger within 60 seconds.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

1833-GNRY-2106

RELATED EVENTS:

1833-GNRY-1113 1833-GNRY-1124 1833-GNRY-1105

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
4. TM 08521A-10/1A Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun, 40mm, MK 19 Mod 3
5. TM 10004A-10/1C Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List
6. TM 9-1005-213-10 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, Caliber .50, M2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Lin	24 rounds/man
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP	40 rounds/man

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

1. Each task in Table IV is a pass or fail event. Each gunner must cumulatively pass 70 percent of events from Tables III-V in order to qualify.
2. Suppression with the MK 19 is impact of the round within 30 meters of the target, with a 3-5 round burst. Suppression with the .50 cal. is rounds impacting within 4 meters in width and 10 meters deep of the target, with an 8-10 round burst. Rounds impacting short of the target have some suppressive value; however, rounds fired over the target have no suppressive value. Suppression will be determined by the judgment of the evaluator.
3. A target is destroyed with the MK 19 when a round impacts within 5 meters of the target. The .50 cal. can destroy a target only with a direct hit on soft targets at ranges no greater than 1000 meters. The MK 19 can destroy a soft target by impacting within 15 meters of the target.
4. Time is the time limit given as part of the standard. The gunner must register suppression and destroy the target within the time limit to pass the event.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: All times are maximum allowed to complete the task. Ammunition requirements are based on one Marine to execute entire table.

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS:

ADVANCED GUNNER (80%-100%) QUALIFIED GUNNER (70%-79%) UNQUALIFIED (0-69%)

1833-GNRY-2108: Conduct AAV Gunnery Table V

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Table V is a live fire gunnery table that demonstrates basic upgunned weapon station engagement skills from a stationary position against stationary target(s) during nighttime limited visibility operations.

BILLETS: Crewchief, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary AAV, upgunned weapon station with installed MK 19 and M2 machine guns, required ammunition by type and amount, stationary targets from 400-800 meters, nighttime limited visibility, range card, qualified evaluator, and references.

STANDARD: So the gunner destroys all targets in the time directed.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Scenario #8: Proof range card by validating firing data.
2. Scenario #9: Engage and destroy a stationary target at a distance of 400-800 meters using manual or electrical trigger within 60 seconds.
3. Scenario #10: Engage and destroy multiple stationary targets at a distance of 400-800 meters using manual or electrical trigger within 60 seconds.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

1833-GNRY-2107 1833-GNRY-2106

RELATED EVENTS:

1833-TAC-1703 1833-GNRY-1124 1833-GNRY-1105
1833-GNRY-1113

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
4. TM 08521A-10/1A Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun, 40mm, MK 19 Mod 3
5. TM 10004A-10/1C Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List
6. TM 9-1005-213-10 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, Caliber .50, M2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Lin	32 rounds/man
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP	100 rounds/man

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

EQUIPMENT: Range card constructed from Table III run is a prerequisite to Table V night-time engagements.

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

1. Each task in Table V is a pass or fail event. Each gunner must cumulatively pass 70 percent of events from Tables III-V in order to qualify.
2. Suppression with the MK 19 is impact of the round within 30 meters of the target, with a 3-5 round burst. Suppression with the .50 cal. is rounds impacting within 4 meters in width and 10 meters deep of the target, with an 8-10 round burst. Rounds impacting short of the target have some suppressive value; however, rounds fired over the target have no suppressive value. Suppression will be determined by the judgment of the evaluator.
3. A target is destroyed with the MK 19 when a round impacts within 5 meters of the target. The .50 cal. can destroy a target only with a direct hit on soft targets at ranges no greater than 1000 meters. The MK 19 can destroy a soft target by impacting within 15 meters of the target.
4. Time is the time limit given as part of the standard. The gunner must register suppression and destroy the target within the time limit to pass the event.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

All times are maximum allowed to complete the task. Ammunition requirements are based on one Marine to execute entire table.

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS:

ADVANCED GUNNER (80%-100%) QUALIFIED GUNNER (70%-79%) UNQUALIFIED (0-69%)

1833-CMDC-2201: Communicate Using AAVC7A1 Communication Equipment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Crewchief, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVC7A1 and radio net.

STANDARD: Per current EMCON controls and the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Operate and troubleshoot MSQ 115 system.
2. Transmit on designated command and control circuits when directed by the supported unit commander.
3. Operate the crew's radios.
4. Operate the vehicle intercom system.
5. Operate static telephone lines when in a static situation.

6. Assist embarked staff on MSQ 115 system operations.
7. Secure communications equipment from operation.

REFERENCES:

1. TM 07268B-10/1A Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Command, Model 7A1, AAVC7A1 Supplement to TM 09674A-10/3
 2. TM 11-5810-256-OP-4 Operating Procedures for COMSECEQ TSEC/KY-57 in Tracked Vehicles
 3. TM 11-5820-890-10-1 Operator Manual for SINCGARS Ground Combat Net Radio
-

1833-CMDC-2202: Control Radio Communications

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Operations Chief, Crewchief, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit, operations order, and a current Communications-Electronic Operating Instruction (CEOI).

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Verify that all elements have the authorized SC frequency, frequency hopping (FH) data and COMSEC instructions input into their radios.
2. Perform Net Control Station duties and open the net.
3. Update FH data using electronic remote fill (ERF), as needed.
4. Conduct late net entry as needed.
5. Enforce standard radio procedures including: use only approved radio/telephone procedures, keep transmission to under 15 seconds, encode and decode all critical messages, use challenge and reply authentication in accordance with CEOI, Use lowest possible power settings and directional antennas, and submit MIJI reports within five minutes after attempted jamming.
6. Coordinate with supported unit or supported unit communications officer for call signs and frequencies.
7. Distribute daily call signs and frequencies to all stations on net.
8. Establish self as net control, authorizing stations to become operational on net using AAV unit organic communications equipment.
9. Enforce listening silence.
10. Recognize electronic countermeasures (ECM) and implement electronic counter countermeasures (ECCM) under the guidance of the communications officer.

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
2. MCRP 6-22C Radio Operator's Handbook
3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault

STANDARD: By analyzing the area of operation in terms of the military aspects of terrain and identify any terrain or structure that may affect the mission.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Orient map and identify the area of operation.
2. Identify graphic control measures on the map.
3. Conduct terrain analysis
4. Identify available routes of travel.
5. Identify known and planned friendly positions.
6. Mark known and suspected enemy positions on the map.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 21-26 Map Reading and Land Navigation
 2. FM 5-33 Terrain Analysis
 3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
-

1833-CMDC-2205: Develop a Modified Combined Obstacle Overlay (MCOO)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant

GRADES: GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given higher's operations order, a map, and an area of operations.

STANDARD: Per the reference.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Define the Battlespace.
2. Conduct terrain analysis.
3. Conduct weather analysis.
4. Conduct threat analysis.
5. Graphically depict the integration of the above information.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 5-33 Terrain Analysis
 2. MCRP 2-12A Intelligence Preparation of the Battlefield (IPB)
 3. MCWP 2-1 Intelligence Operations
 4. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
-

1833-CMDC-2206: Conduct Terrain Analysis

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit, supported infantry unit, an operations order defining the battle space and mission, tactical scenario, map of the battle space, specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: To determine the effects of the environment on friendly and enemy operations.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Define the battlespace to include: area of interest, area of influence, and area of operations.
2. Determine each of the following in the Area of Operations (AO), to include their effect on operations: observation and fields of fire, avenues of approach, key terrain to include decisive terrain, obstacles, and cover and concealment.
3. Determine key features of local weather and its effect on operations, to include: Beginning Morning Nautical Twilight (BMNT), Ending Evening Nautical Twilight (EENT), moon rise, moon set, percent illumination, and temperature (high, low), precipitation by type and amount, wind (directions and speed), fog and cloud ceiling, and weather effecting amphibious operations as necessary.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 21-26 Map Reading and Land Navigation
 2. FM 5-33 Terrain Analysis
 3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
-

1833-CMDC-2207: Conduct Threat Analysis

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit, supported infantry unit, an operations order defining the battle space and mission, tactical scenario, map of the battle space, specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: To develop an assessment of the threat's capabilities and intentions within the Area of Interest (AI).

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Determine enemy order of battle.
2. Determine enemy composition and disposition.
3. Determine enemy capabilities and limitations.
4. Determine enemy's most probable course of action.
5. Determine enemy's most dangerous course of action.

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit, supported unit, an operations order, tactical scenario, specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: To develop courses of action and support the operations order

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Analyze operations order.
2. Determine AA unit tasks (specified and implied).
3. Determine AA unit capabilities and limitations.
4. Develop courses of action based on the ability of the AA unit to support them.

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 3. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
 4. MCWP 4-11 Tactical Level Logistics
 5. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
 6. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1833-CMDC-2210: Task Organize Assault Amphibian Unit

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit and higher's operations order.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Analyze the supported unit's operations order and determine the tasks to be performed, the elements to be supported, and the lift requirements of each.
2. Make recommendations to supported unit commander and staff on task organization for mission accomplishment.
3. Issue order to subordinate AA elements identifying the units they will be supporting, defining the type of support role/relationship between them and the supported unit, and assigning them their specific missions.

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 3. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
-

1833-CMDC-2211: Analyze Operations Order

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Operations Chief, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit, supported unit, an operations order, tactical scenario, specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: To determine tactical responsibilities of the unit.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Determine commander's intent and desired end state and their impact on the AAV unit.
2. Conduct detailed analysis of battle space to include area of interest, area of influence, and area of operations.
3. Conduct terrain analysis to determine the effect on the scheme of maneuver.
4. Conduct threat analysis.
5. Determine Commander's Critical Information Requirements.
6. Request any information not provided in the order.
7. Determine any restraints and/or constraints.
8. Determine assumptions.
9. Identify tasks.
10. Develop estimate of supportability for AA unit.
11. Determine any additional resources required to accomplish the mission, as assigned.
12. Determine any additional training or rehearsals required: to include safety briefings and orientation training.
13. Determine current and anticipated mechanical readiness of unit.
14. Determine logistical support requirements.
15. Determine command and control requirements for AA units.

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 2. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
 3. MCWP 4-11 Tactical Level Logistics
 4. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
 5. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1833-CMDC-2212: Develop Operations Order

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit, supported unit, higher unit's operations order, tactical scenario, specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: To support the mission of the supported unit.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Develop Scheme of Maneuver for land and/or amphibious operations.
2. Develop Scheme of Fire.
3. Develop Scheme of Mobility/Counter mobility/Survivability.
4. Develop Scheme of Logistics Support.
5. Develop Scheme of Communications Support.

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 3. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination
 4. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
 5. MCWP 4-11 Tactical Level Logistics
 6. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
 7. MCWP 6-22 Communications and Information Systems
 8. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1833-CMDC-2213: Issue Operations Order

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit, supported unit, an operations order, tactical scenario, and specified threat.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Assemble subordinate element leaders and other key personnel.
2. Take role to ensure that all required personnel are present.
3. Verify local time with commander's watch.
4. Orient personnel on map, terrain model, etc.
5. Direct personnel to "Hold all questions until the end."
6. Issue Mission statement.
7. Review Execution.
8. Review Administration and Logistics.
9. Review Command and Signals.

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook

2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 3. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
-

1833-CMDC-2214: Direct an Assault Amphibian Unit in Preparations for Combat

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit and orders to prepare for combat.

STANDARD: To ensure that unit has understanding of operations and possess logistical supplies to accomplish the mission.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Task organize the unit for preparation.
2. Forecast resupply requirements for sustainment of combat operations.
3. Direct resupply if not complete to include: refuel vehicles; refill all oil, hydraulic fluid, and lubricants containers; resupply ammo, food, potable water; resupply any repair parts;
4. Inspect vehicles: verify that vehicles have water, POLs, ammo, and rations; inspect for proper gear stowage; and inspect any maintenance work recently completed.
5. Conduct and supervise walk through rehearsals.
6. Conduct communication checks.
7. Communicate plan to higher headquarters.

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-11.2A Marine Troop Leader's Guide
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 3. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1833-CMDC-2215: Navigate an Assault Amphibian Unit

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Operations Chief, Crewchief, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit, map, and area of operations.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Plan the route to move from terrain feature to terrain feature, considering the tactical aspects and ease of movement of the route.
2. Use terrain features as checkpoints as the AAV moves along the route.
3. Follow the terrain features using terrain driving techniques.
4. Determine approximate directions of the various segments of the route.
5. Determine total distance for the route and distance between checkpoints.
6. Make written or mental notes to remember terrain features as they are being passed.
7. Look to the rear to familiarize yourself with the view of the terrain if you must retrace the route.
8. Use GPS/PLRS to augment your navigation, when available.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 21-26 Map Reading and Land Navigation
 2. FM 21-60 Visual Signals
 3. FM 5-33 Terrain Analysis
 4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 5. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
-

1833-CMDC-2216: Control Unit Maneuver Elements

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Section Leader

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV, an operations order, tactical scenario, specified threat, training area, and references.

STANDARD: Employing the appropriate movement techniques based on terrain, mission, and threat analysis in order to minimize exposure to enemy observation and fire and maximize the security and speed of the unit formation.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Maintain control over maneuver elements, designate lead and trail elements, move with the elements that allows best control of the operation, determine mode of movement (traveling, traveling overwatch, bounding overwatch), ensure elements maintain dispersion laterally and in depth, ensure visual contact is maintained between adjacent vehicles, ensure each vehicle moves by separate, covered, and concealed route if possible.
2. Maintain detailed plot on location of all elements.
3. Ensure subordinate elements use internal methods of maneuver control.
4. Ensure subordinate elements assigned special missions are controlled.
5. Ensure operational reports are included in reports control system.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management

2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

1833-CMDC-2217: Control Assault Amphibian Unit Fire and Maneuver

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Section Leader

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit, mission, area of operations, and the references.

STANDARD: So the Assault Amphibian unit minimizes exposure to enemy observation and fire, but maximizes the security and speed of the unit formation while providing suppressive fires.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Control unit maneuver.
2. Designate target precedence.
3. Designate engagement criteria.
4. Designate weapons orientation.
5. Designate weapons status.
6. Designate pattern of fire.
7. Coordinate unit fire and maneuver.
8. Communicate with visual signals.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
-

1833-CMDC-2218: Direct Unit Fires

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit, area of operations with an engagement area, targets, and the references.

STANDARD: To provide timely and accurate fires on the targets.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Assess the situation.
2. Determine priority targets.

3. Determine fire pattern for the unit.
4. Select technique of fire.
5. Issue clear and concise fire command.
6. Adjust fires as appropriate.
7. Terminate engagement.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

1833-CMDC-2219: Conduct Combat Reporting

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Crewchief, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit, area of operations, and higher's operations order.

STANDARD: Per the reference.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct reporting in accordance with unit SOP or the current operations order.
2. Report all required control measures.
3. Report friendly situation (SITREP) as required by unit SOP or current operations order.
4. Report enemy contact.
5. Report enemy jamming efforts (MIJI report).
6. Report enemy use of nuclear, biological, or chemical weapons (NBC report).
7. Report enemy use of artillery.
8. Report friendly logistical situation as required by unit SOP or current operations order (LOG SUM).
9. Report friendly personnel situation as required by unit SOP or current operations order (PERS SUM).
10. Report on enemy minefields encountered.
11. Report Enemy Prisoners of War (EPWs).
12. Report mass casualties.
13. Conduct MEDEVAC request.
14. Conduct maintenance rapid request.

REFERENCE:

1. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
-

1833-CMDC-2220: Evaluate MOS Related Training Effectiveness

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Operations Chief

GRADES: GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit's training schedule, training directives from the supported unit (division), Battalion Commander's guidance, and references.

STANDARD: For the period directed by the commander.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Observe the training exercise or activity.
2. Evaluate performance to determine whether Marines can meet the standard after training.
3. Evaluate preparation based on indicators observed during training.
4. Critique individual and collective performance.
5. Note the results of performance evaluations of individuals in appropriate records as determined by unit SOP.
6. Record the results of collective training in after action reports (AAR) or appropriate records.
7. Make recommendations as to future training needs or changes in the training.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCRP 3-0A Unit Training Management Guide
 3. MCRP 3-0B How to Conduct Training
 4. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 5. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
-

1833-CMDC-2221: Develop Unit Training Schedule

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Operations Chief, Platoon Sergeant

GRADES: GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given unit mission guidelines from higher headquarters, Battalion Commander's guidance, and references.

STANDARD: To include individual and team MOS related training resources available and environmental constraints on training; publish as a Battalion Order intended to support unit mission, increase unit readiness, and support Marine Corps training policy.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Analyze guidance from higher headquarters.
2. Extract training requirements necessary for unit readiness.
3. Review current training directives/policies.
4. Make any changes necessary to increase training efficiency and to improve unit readiness.
5. Determine individual or unit proficiencies and deficiencies.
6. Determine instructional settings, methods, and media.
7. Specify when and where training will occur.
8. Schedule facilities and ranges, as appropriate.
9. Specify instructors and evaluators.
10. Provide administrative guidance and coordination, as appropriate.
11. Submit for approval, if required.
12. Publish training directives/policies when finalized and approved.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCRP 3-0A Unit Training Management Guide
 3. MCRP 3-0B How to Conduct Training
 4. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 5. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
-

1833-CMDC-2222: Supervise Unit Training

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Operations Chief, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a unit's training schedule, training directives from the supported unit (division), commander's guidance, and references.

STANDARD: For the period covered as directed by the commander.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Verify that personnel receive sufficient instruction in MOS/military skills in accordance with the events set forth in this publication.
2. Verify that exercises simulate actual combat conditions.
3. Verify that local conditions and specific unit functions are incorporated into exercise development.
4. Verify that training is integrated with unit mission.
5. Verify that safety regulations and considerations are applied; stop training if safety is compromised.
6. Evaluate how well Marines accomplish their duties.
7. Identify training deficiencies and outline procedures to correct deficiencies or schedule required training.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCRP 3-0A Unit Training Management Guide

STANDARD: To support the unit commander's guidance and supported unit's directives.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Supervise Unit Training.
2. Evaluate MOS Related Training Effectiveness.
3. Develop Battalion Training Directives.
4. Develop Unit Training Schedule.
5. Conduct Unit Training.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCRP 3-0A Unit Training Management Guide
 3. MCRP 3-0B How to Conduct Training
 4. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 5. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
-

1833-VOPS-2301: Supervise Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) of Assault Amphibian Unit

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit conducting preventive maintenance checks and services.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Verify that all unit maintenance management policies are enforced.
2. Verify that all collateral materials for all items are inventoried, repaired, or replaced as necessary on a regular basis.
3. Verify that all 1st echelon preventive maintenance checks and services (PMCS) are conducted on all items organic to the unit.
4. Verify that corrective maintenance efforts are properly documented in accordance with the manuals.
5. Verify that all items requiring calibration are serviced according to applicable technical manuals.
6. Verify that all required inspections, services, and repairs are conducted on all communications equipment organic to the unit in accordance with the appropriate technical manuals.
7. Verify that all required inspections, services, and repairs are conducted on all optical equipment organic to the unit in accordance with the appropriate technical manuals.
8. Verify that all required inspections, services, and repairs are conducted on all vehicles organic to the unit.
9. Verify that all required inspections, services, and repairs are conducted on all weapons organic to the unit.

3. Inspect exterior surface for damage.
4. Inspect battery compartment for corrosion, defective battery cap spring.
5. Inspect eye relief adjustment to ensure free movement.
6. Rotate diopter adjustment rings and check for free motion.
7. Inspect interpupillary adjustment and ensure monoculars can freely move farther apart and closer together.
8. Rotate focus knob and check for free movement.
9. Inspect rotary switch and its mechanical action.
10. Inspect headmount assembly for holes, cracks, defective fasteners.
11. Clean carrying case.

REFERENCES:

1. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
 2. TM 11-5855-262-10-2 Operator's Manual for Night Vision Goggles, AN/PVS-7B
-

1833-VOPS-2304: Operate Night Vision Goggles

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given night vision goggles.

STANDARD: Per the reference.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct pre-operations checks.
2. Prepare goggles for operation.
3. Operate the goggles.
4. Shutdown and stow the goggles.

REFERENCE:

1. TM 11-5855-262-10-2 Operator's Manual for Night Vision Goggles, AN/PVS-7B
-

1833-CBTS-2401: Inspect MK 154 Launcher Mine Clearance System Components in Shipping Container

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a MK 154 LMC kit, a trained crew, and appropriate collateral equipment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Inspect mounting hardware.
2. Inspect Housing and Door Assembly
3. Inspect Forward Pallet Assembly.
4. Inspect Aft Pallet Rail Assembly.
5. Inspect Mast Assembly.
6. Inspect Arm Switch Assembly.
7. Inspect Wiring Harness Assembly.
8. Inspect additional launcher components.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
3. TM 09962A-10/1 Operating Instruction Charts MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System
4. TM 09962A-13&P/2B System Manual MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task is instructed via Mobile Training Team (MTT).

1833-CBTS-2402: Conduct Preventive Maintenance Checks and Services (PMCS) on MK 154 Launcher, Mine Clearance System

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a MK 154 LMC kit, crewmen, and appropriate collateral equipment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Execute PMCS checklist on shipping container.
2. Conduct PMCS on mounting hardware.
3. Conduct PMCS of Housing and Door Assembly.
4. Conduct PMCS on Forward Pallet Assembly.
5. Conduct PMCS on Aft Pallet Rail Assembly.
6. Conduct PMCS on Mast Assembly.
7. Conduct PMCS on Control Box Assembly.
8. Conduct PMCS on Wiring Harness Assembly.

9. Conduct PMCS on additional MK 154 LMC components.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
3. TM 09962A-10/1 Operating Instruction Charts MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System
4. TM 09962A-13&P/2B System Manual MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task is instructed via Mobile Training Team (MTT).

1833-CBTS-2403: Install MK 154 Launcher, Mine Clearance System on AAVP7A1/RAM RS

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7A1, a MK 154 LMC kit, trained AAV personnel with a 5-ton-capable lifting source, the designed hydraulic bleeding kit for the MK 154, and appropriate collateral equipment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Inspect the positioning of the vehicles.
2. Prepare the vehicle for installation of the MK 154 kit.
3. Locate vehicles on level ground/surface.
4. Lower rear ramp of AAVP7A1.
5. Remove and stow center troop benches.
6. Open and secure all cargo hatches.
7. Remove all antennas.
8. Ensure all hatch ground cables are clear of cargo openings.
9. Remove lower aft engine panel.
10. Clean all debris from vehicle troop compartment.
11. Inspect outside of kit container for serviceability.
12. Bleed the container valve.
13. Remove the mounting hardware on the container cover.
14. Inspect the MK 154 Launcher as stored in the shipping container.
15. Inspect all mounting hardware.
16. Install the Forward Pallet Assembly.
17. Install the Housing and Door Assembly.
18. Install the Aft Rail Assembly.
19. Install the Mast Assembly.
20. Install the control box.

21. Install the Arm Switch Assembly.
22. Install the Wiring Harness Assemblies.
23. Install the Power Cable.
24. Store additional Launcher Components: forward starboard guard, forward and aft guards, blasting machine M-34, M51 blasting cap test set, remote firing harness, rope, block and tackle, tie down assemblies, communications cable, and ramp strap assembly.
25. The AAV bolts which were removed to install the MK 154 launcher.
26. Direct mechanic assistance rendered to the AAV crew as required in the installation of the MK154 Launcher onto the AAV.
27. Direct mechanic assistance rendered to the AAV crew as required to bleed the hydraulic system of the MK 154 Launcher once it is fully installed onto the AAV.

REFERENCES :

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
3. TM 09962A-10/1 Operating Instruction Charts MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System
4. TM 09962A-13&P/2B System Manual MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System

MISCELLANEOUS :

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS :

1. AAV must be on stable and level ground/surface.
2. Shipping container checklist has been successfully completed.
3. Overhead clearance is unrestricted and ground space is available IAW TM 09674A-10/3 and TM 07007B-10.
4. This task is instructed via Mobile Training Team (MTT).

1833-CBTS-2404: Conduct Operational Checks on MK 154 Launcher, Mine Clearance System on AAVP7A1/RAM RS

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7A1 RAM RS with MK 154 LMC, trained crew, and appropriate collateral equipment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Check hydraulic fluid level check.
2. Conduct manual operation test.
3. Conduct powered operation test.

REFERENCES :

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
3. TM 09962A-10/1 Operating Instruction Charts MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System
4. TM 09962A-13&P/2B System Manual MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System

MISCELLANEOUS :

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task is instructed via Mobile Training Team (MTT).

1833-CBTS-2405: Install MK 22 Rocket Motors, MOD 3-4 on MK 154

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an a trained crew installing MK 22 MOD 3 Rocket Motors or MK 22 MOD 4 rocket motors on MK 154 Launcher

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Inspect the rocket motors.
2. Verify that the AAV crew handles the rocket motors in a safe manner.
3. Load the rocket motors onto the launcher platform rails per the references.
4. Install the rocket bridle cables.
5. Install the rocket motor electrical connections.
6. Installed rockets are NOT made thrust positive until employment of the MK 154.

REFERENCES :

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
3. TM 09962A-10/1 Operating Instruction Charts MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System
4. TM 09962A-13&P/2B System Manual MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System

MISCELLANEOUS :

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task is instructed via Mobile Training Team (MTT).

1833-CBTS-2406: Load Line Charges into an AAVP7A1/RAM RS Equipped with MK 154 LMC System

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7A1 RAM RS with MK 154 LMC, three line charges, trained crew and mechanics, 5-ton capable lifting source, appropriate collateral equipment, and references.

STANDARD: So the MARK 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System is prepared for firing.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Inspect line charges.
2. Verify the safe fusing of the line charges.
3. Demonstrate proper hand signals and voice commands during the loading procedure.
4. Load three line charges: through the ramp opening and cargo hatch opening.
5. Install tie-down assemblies.
6. Make the installed rockets thrust positive only if MK 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System is to be employed.
7. Complete electrical connections safely.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
3. TM 09962A-10/1 Operating Instruction Charts MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System
4. TM 09962A-13&P/2B System Manual MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task is instructed via Mobile Training Team (MTT).

1833-CBTS-2407: Operate the MK 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7A1 RAM RS, MK 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System, MK 22 rocket motors, line charges, a trained crew, and appropriate collateral equipment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Perform before operations PMCS.
2. Make the rockets thrust positive.
3. Raise the launcher platform to the "safe to launch" angle (either method may be used, both must be mastered): powered and manually.
4. Complete the rocket motor launch sequence properly for each rocket motor.
5. Safely detonate the deployed line charge(s).
6. Conduct immediate actions for failure of the rocket motor to deploy.
7. Conduct immediate actions for failure of the line charge to detonate.
8. Perform during operations PMCS.
9. Perform after operations PMCS.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
3. TM 09962A-10/1 Operating Instruction Charts MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
J143 Rocket Motor, 5-inch MK22 Mod 4	42
ML26 Charge, Demolition Inert Linear M69	18
ML25 Charge, Demolition Linear M59A1	18

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17710 Multipurpose Training Range (MPTR)

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. This task is instructed via six Mobile Training Teams (MTT) annually.
2. Three MTTs are instructed to support II MEF units and three MTTs are instructed to support I/III MEF units.
3. Listed class V requirements support total annual allocation to support six MTTs.
4. DODIC ML 25 demolition linear charge can only be detonated on designated ranges.

1833-CBTS-2408: Unload Line Charges from an AAVP7A1/RAM RS Equipped with MK 154 LMC System

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7A1 RAM RS with installed MK 1 Mod 0 Mine Clearance System, trained crew and mechanics, 5-ton capable lifting source, appropriate collateral equipment, and references.

STANDARD: So the line charges are defused and ancillary attachments are properly stored.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Make rocket motors thrust neutral.
2. Complete electrical disconnections safely.
3. Remove the tie-down assemblies.
4. Demonstrate proper hand signals and voice commands
5. Unload three line charges: through the ramp opening and cargo hatch opening.
6. Defuse the line charges safely.
7. Inspect line charges prior to storage.
8. Store the line charges safely.
9. Store the tie-down cables and forward and aft guards.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
3. TM 09962A-10/1 Operating Instruction Charts MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System
4. TM 09962A-13&P/2B System Manual MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task is instructed via Mobile Training Team (MTT).

1833-CBTS-2409: Dismount MK 22 Rocket Motors, MOD 3-4 from MK 154 Launcher on AAVP7A1/RAM RS

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7A1, MK 154 LMC kit, MK 22 Rocket Motors, a trained crew, and appropriate collateral equipment.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Inspect the rocket motors for serviceability.
2. Verify that the rocket motors thrust have been made neutral.
3. Verify that the rocket motor electrical connections are disconnected.
4. Remove and inspect the rocket bridle cables.
5. Remove rocket motors from the launcher platform rails.
6. Verify that the rocket motors are properly stored.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
3. TM 09962A-10/1 Operating Instruction Charts MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System
4. TM 09962A-13&P/2B System Manual MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task is instructed via Mobile Training Team (MTT).

1833-CBTS-2410: Remove MK 154 Launcher, Mine Clearance System from an AAVP7A1/RAM RS

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7A1 with an installed MK 154 LMC, trained crewmen and mechanics, 5-ton-capable lifting source, the unique shipping container for the MK 154, appropriate collateral equipment, and references.

STANDARD: So all electrical, mechanical and hydraulic disconnections are made, the MK 154 is properly stored, and the AAVP7A1 is returned to its original configuration.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Remove power cable.
2. Remove pallet and rail assembly.
3. Remove arm switch assembly.
4. Remove control box.
5. Remove W12 and M14 wiring harnesses.
6. Remove mast assembly.
7. Remove housing and door assembly.
8. Remove, inspect, and stow additional launcher components: forward starboard guard, forward and aft guards, blasting machine, M51 blasting cap test set, remote firing harness, rope, block and tackle, and tie down assemblies.
9. Inspect the MK 154 launcher prior to storing in the shipping container.

10. Replace the AAV bolts which were removed to install the MK 154 launcher.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
3. TM 09962A-10/1 Operating Instruction Charts MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System
4. TM 09962A-13&P/2B System Manual MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task is instructed via Mobile Training Team (MTT).

1833-CBTS-2411: Advice Supported Unit Commander on Employment of MK 154 Mine Clearance System

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian Mine Countermeasures unit, higher headquarters operations order, area of operations, and references.

STANDARD: So all MK 154 employment concerns are highlighted and communicated to the supported unit commander and staff.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Advise supported unit commander on the capabilities and limitations of the MK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System to support the operation.
2. Advise supported unit commander on the logistical support requirements of the MK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System given the planned operation.
3. Advise supported unit commander on the possible courses of action for employment of the MK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System in support of the operation.

REFERENCES:

1. MCRP 3-17A Engineer Field Data
2. MCRP 3-17B Engineer Forms and Reports
3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. MCWP 3-17.3 MAGTF Breaching Operations
5. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
6. TM 09962A-10/1 Operating Instruction Charts MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

UNITS/PERSONNEL: AA Mine Countermeasure Platoon Sergeant task.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. This task is conducted by designated Mine Countermeasure (MCM) platoon personnel.
 2. This task is instructed via Mobile Training Team (MTT).
-

1833-CBTS-2412: Coordinate Mine Countermeasures Operations with Supported Unit

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian Mine Countermeasures unit, area of operations, higher headquarters operations order, and references.

STANDARD: So all MK 154 employment concerns are highlighted and communicated to the supported unit commander and staff.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Coordinate employment of the MK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System in support of mobility operations in accordance with the performance steps.
2. Coordinate employment of AAVs in construction, observation, and suppression of obstacles in support of countermobility operations.
3. Coordinate with supported unit for engineering support required by AA units as part of survivability operations.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCRP 3-17A Engineer Field Data
3. MCRP 3-17B Engineer Forms and Reports
4. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
5. MCWP 3-17.3 MAGTF Breaching Operations
6. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
7. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
8. TM 09962A-10/1 Operating Instruction Charts MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System
9. TM 09962A-13&P/2B System Manual MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

UNITS/PERSONNEL: AA Mine Countermeasure Platoon Sergeant task.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. This task is conducted by designated Mine Countermeasure (MCM) personnel.
 2. This task is instructed via Mobile Training Team (MTT).
-

1833-CBTS-2413: Supervise Removal of MK 154 Launcher, Mine Clearance System from an AAVP7A1/RAM RS

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Commander

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAVP7A1 with an installed MK 154 LMC, trained crewmen and mechanics, 5-ton-capable lifting source, the unique shipping container for the MK 154, appropriate collateral equipment, and references.

STANDARD: So all electrical, mechanical and hydraulic disconnections are made, the MK 154 is properly stored, and the AAVP7A1 is returned to its original configuration.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Verify that the AAV mechanics assist the crews, as required.
2. Supervise the removal of the power cable.
3. Supervise the removal of the Aft Pallet and Rail Assembly.
4. Supervise the removal of the control box and the installation of the M27 mount.
5. Supervise the removal of the W12 and W14 Wiring Harness.
6. Supervise the removal of the Mast Assembly.
7. Supervise the removal of the Housing and Door Assembly.
8. Supervise the removal of the Forward Pallet Assembly.
9. Supervise the removal, inspection, and stowage of additional Launcher Components: forward starboard guard, forward and aft guards, blasting machine, M34, M51 blasting cap test set, remote firing harness, rope, block and tackle, tie down assemblies, communications cable, and ramp strap assembly.
10. Supervise removal of the two piece engine panel and installation of the original one piece.
11. Supervise the inspection of the MK 154 Launcher prior to storing into the shipping container.
12. Supervise replacement of any bolts on the AAV that were removed to install the MK 154 Kit.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
3. TM 09962A-10/1 Operating Instruction Charts MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System
4. TM 09962A-13&P/2B System Manual MARK 1 MOD 0 Mine Clearance System

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task is instructed via Mobile Training Team (MTT).

1833-CBTS-2414: Employ Fire Support

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given applicable communication to fire support agencies, an area of operations, and targets.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Determine available fire support assets.
2. Determine fire support requirements.
3. Establish communication with the supporting agency.
4. Request fires from supporting agency.
5. Adjust fires as needed.
6. Complete mission.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. MCWP 3-16 Fire Support Coordination

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17671 Field Artillery Indirect Fire Range

1833-CSS-2501: Monitor Daily Progress Report

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an open Equipment Repair Order (ERO), Equipment Repair Order Shopping List (EROSL), and a current Daily Progress Report (DPR)

STANDARD: Per the reference.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Obtain (DPR) which is no more than five days old.
2. Verify job status of all EROs.
3. Verify EROs reflecting a "short parts" status have parts on order or EROSLs being processed.
4. Annotate on the EROSL those parts and transactions that appear on the DPR. Ensure that all remaining parts or transaction on the EROSL are submitted to the supply source for action at the next unit reconciliation.
5. Verify that there are no parts on order that reflect a higher FAD status than that of the ERO.
6. Verify that all EROs have a valid category and priority for the work being requested.
7. Verify that all EROs have valid priorities and indicator codes.
8. Brief unit commander on the DPR, as required.

REFERENCE:

1. MCO P4790.2 MIMMS Field Procedures Manual
-

1833-CSS-2502: Initiate a Work Request

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Crewchief, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a NAVMC 10245, ERO (Equipment Repair Order), and an AAV requiring maintenance action.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Review ERO information in TM 4700-15/1.
2. Enter Serial No. Turned in if different from below, if applicable.
3. Enter Y to indicate an ORF (Operational Readiness Float) exchange is desired if the RDD (Required Delivery Date) cannot be met. Enter N if no exchange is desired (block 11).
4. Enter Organization Doing Repairs or to which the equipment is being evacuated (if applicable).
5. Enter DEST.AC (Designation Activity) (if applicable/blocks 12-16).
6. Enter request No. (if applicable/blocks 17-20).
7. Enter DCD (Deadline Control Date) (if applicable/blocks 21-24).
8. Enter ECH (Echelon) of repair (block 25).
9. Enter serial number of equipment (if applicable/blocks 26-35).
10. Enter Job ID from current edition of the Marine Corps User's Manual, UM 4790-5 (if applicable/blocks 36-37).
11. Enter QTY to be repaired under this ERO (blocks 38-39); ensure that the field is filled.
12. Enter RDD (if applicable/blocks 40-43).

13. Enter Owing Organization.
14. Enter Owner AC (Activity Code) (blocks 44-48).
15. Have authorized person sign Authorized By (Signature) Date block after rest of ERO is completed.
16. Enter Defect code from UM 4790-5 (if applicable/blocks 49-51).
17. Enter PRI (Priority) assigned (blocks 52-53).
18. Enter ID Number (blocks 54-59).
19. Enter Nomenclature.
20. Circle Category Code.
21. Enter JON (Job Order Number) (blocks 63-76).
22. Have authorized person sign Released From Investigation (Signature) block (if applicable).
23. Enter Owner's Phone Number.
24. Enter SEC REP (Secondary Repairable) NSN (if applicable).
25. Enter Remarks section with any other necessary information.
26. Turn in ERO, equipment, and records to maintenance activity; receive yellow copy as receipt.

REFERENCES :

1. MCO 4400.82_ MIMMS Controlled Item Management Manual
 2. MCO 4700-15/1 Equipment Record Procedures
 3. MCO P4790.2 MIMMS Field Procedures Manual
 4. UM 4700.5 MIMMS Field Procedures Manual
-

1833-CSS-2503: Prepare an ERO Shopping List (EROSL)

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given NAVMC 10925, EROSL (ERO Shopping/transaction List) and an active ERO.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Enter ERO number.
2. Enter unit and date.
3. Circle appropriate Material Usage Code.
4. Annotate the shop section.
5. Enter the reference source in the letter blank "A."
6. Enter remaining letter blanks.
7. Enter the requisition information using the appropriate template.

REFERENCES :

1. MCO 4400.82_ MIMMS Controlled Item Management Manual
 2. MCO 4700-15/1 Equipment Record Procedures
 3. NAVMC 10925 Equipment Repair Order Shopping List (EROSL)
 4. UM 4700.5 MIMMS Field Procedures Manual
-

1833-CSS-2504: Conduct Vehicle Inspection of Assault Amphibian Unit

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit's vehicles and equipment, current daily progress report, and the references.

STANDARD: To ensure accountability, serviceability, and operational readiness of unit equipment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Inspect collateral material for accountability, serviceability, and cleanliness.
2. Inspect the AAV for serviceability and cleanliness.
3. Verify that all systems are fully operational.
4. Verify that any mechanical defects are noted on the appropriate vehicle's ERO, that higher echelons are notified of work requiring their assistance, that all required parts are noted on the unit's DPR.
5. Verify that all required services have been conducted and noted in the vehicles records.
6. Inspect the weapon(s) for serviceability and cleanliness.
7. Verify that the weapon(s) are fully operational.
8. Verify that any mechanical defects are noted on the appropriate ERO, that higher echelons are notified of work requiring their assistance, and that all required parts are noted on the unit's DPR.
9. Verify that all required services have been conducted and noted in the weapons' records.
10. Verify that all missing or unserviceable items are reflected on the DPR.
11. Verify that all items are accounted for on inventory forms.
12. Inspect the communication system for cleanliness and serviceability, to include the crew's CVC helmets.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1833-CSS-2505: Inspect Completed Maintenance Work

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an AAV with completed maintenance, an active ERO and EROSL, and a current DPR

STANDARD: Per the reference.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Review PMCS records or ERO to determine which maintenance work has been accomplished and is to be inspected.
2. Visually inspect the items that have been repaired or serviced.
3. Verify that the corrective maintenance or service has been
4. Direct any additional work required.

REFERENCE:

1. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1833-CSS-2506: Monitor Unit Maintenance

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a unit's T/O&E and references.

STANDARD: So the combat readiness for AAV7A1 family of vehicles and associated equipment is no less than 80 percent.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Monitor daily process reports.
2. Monitor LM2 reports.
3. Coordinate routine reconciliation with maintenance and supply activities.
4. Implement a maintenance inspection program.

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
 2. MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations
 3. SL-3 Major Components of End Items
 4. TI 4710-14/1 Replacement and Evacuation Criteria
 5. TI 4731-14/1 Marine Corps Participation in the Joint Oil Analysis Program
 6. TM 4700-15/1 Marine Corps Ground Equipment Record Procedures
 7. TM 4795-12/1 Organizational Corrosion Prevention and Control Procedures
-

1833-CSS-2507: Supervise Personnel Handling Ammunition

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit handling ammunition and references.

STANDARD: With all safety procedures followed and ammunition loaded.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Determine what types of ammunition and how many rounds of each will be required.
2. Supervise the handling of machine gun ammunition.
3. Supervise personnel handling small arms ammunition.
4. Supervise personnel handling smoke grenades.
5. Supervise inventory and expenditure of ammunition.
6. Report all discrepancies.
7. Complete and file ammunition expenditure report and forward to chain-of-command in order to support class V replenishment.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 9-13 Ammunition Handbook
 2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 3. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1833-CSS-2508: Determine a Unit's Operational Supply Requirements

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an operation of specified duration, commander's guidance, T/O&E, computed requirements, and the references.

STANDARD: To ensure the requisite supplies are calculated to support the operational requirements for the entire period of deployment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Review the operation plan or applicable documents for operational support data.
2. Identify class I and water requirements (rations and food supplies).
3. Identify class II requirements (general supplies).
4. Identify class III requirements (POLs).
5. Identify class IV requirements (engineer and construction).
6. Identify class V (W) combat requirements (ammunition).
7. Identify class VI requirements (personal items).
8. Identify class VII requirements (major end times, i.e. AAVs).
9. Identify class VIII requirements (medical supplies).

10. Determine class IX requirements (repair parts).
11. Validate the contents of a class IX block for deficiencies.
12. Submit recommended changes to class IX block.
13. Validate bill of materials (BOM) for operational requirements.

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 2. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
 3. MCWP 4-11 Tactical Level Logistics
 4. MCWP 4-11.7 MAGTF Supply Operations
 5. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
-

1833-CSS-2509: Determine Logistics Support Requirements

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit and higher's operations order.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Determine the command relationship between the AA unit and the supported unit: attached, direct support, or general support.
2. Determine the preventative maintenance support needs of the AA unit.
3. Determine the corrective maintenance support needs of the AA unit.
4. Determine messing requirements.
5. Determine Petroleum, Oil, and Lubricant (POL) requirements.
6. Determine ammunition requirements.
7. Determine time requirements for preventative maintenance checks and services.
8. Determine requirements for resupply operations prior to commencing the attack.
9. Determine vehicle status, specifically critical systems: weapons station and weapons, communications, suspension/power train, and water drive/operating systems.
10. By type of vehicle: Tank, AAV (all variants), LAV, Engineer vehicles, wheeled vehicles.
11. Determine echelons of repair requiring support.
12. Determine medical/dental requirements.
13. Determine support required from higher elements.
14. Determine likely means of combat service support that will be available based on experience and task organization.
15. Determine personnel requirements by MOS or special skill.
16. Report any critical shortfalls in equipment, supplies, or personnel.
17. Coordinate efforts and requirements with supporting elements.

REFERENCES :

1. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 2. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
 3. MCWP 4-11 Tactical Level Logistics
 4. MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations
 5. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
 6. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1833-CSS-2510: Provide Input for Load Planning of AAV Equipment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant

GRADES: GYSGT, MSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a requirement for unit transportation to support deployment, an operations order, equipment density list, roster of deploying personnel, and the references.

STANDARD: To ensure sufficient transportation assets are available to support unit deployment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Obtain and consolidate the required loading documents from each unit embarking supplies, cargo, equipment, and personnel.
2. Obtain the unloading priorities and composition of tactical serials from the embarkation team leader.
3. Verify that equipment to be loaded complies with the characteristics of the platform selected.
4. Identify any hazardous material and cargo requiring special handling.

REFERENCES :

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 3. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
-

1833-CSS-2511: Supervise Loading Cargo

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit loading cargo.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Evaluate the cargo to be loaded.
2. Verify that all ammunition is properly stowed to prevent damage.
3. Reconfigure the vehicle as necessary for the load (i.e. litter kits).
4. Verify the proper loading and securing of all materials.

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 2. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
 3. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1833-CSS-2512: Advice Supported Unit Commander on Assault Amphibian Unit Logistic Support Requirements

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit, higher's operations order, and the references.

STANDARD: To assess the impact on the AA unit's ability to support the operations order.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Determine logistics support requirements.
2. Determine organic logistics support capabilities.
3. Determine shortfalls on logistics support requirements.
4. Advise supported unit commander and his staff on any logistical support requirements that the AA unit cannot meet and their potential impact on operations.
5. Recommend courses of action to the support unit commander and his staff to deal with any logistical support requirement shortfalls.

REFERENCES:

1. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 2. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
 3. MCWP 4-11 Tactical Level Logistics
 4. MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations
 5. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
 6. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1833-CSS-2513: Coordinate Assault Amphibian Unit Operation/Deployment Embarkation

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant

GRADES: GYSGT, MSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given the requirement to coordinate a unit's transportation needs, the operations order, listing of supplies, equipment, and personnel.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Provide input for load planning of AA unit.
2. Assist in developing plans to embark AA unit.
3. Inspect unit embarkation preparations.
4. Coordinate and supervise embarkation of AA Unit onto land transportation.
5. Coordinate and supervise embarkation of AAVs onto land transportation.
6. Coordinate and supervise embarkation of AA Unit onto aircraft.
7. Coordinate and supervise embarkation of AAVs onto aircraft.
8. Conduct AA unit specific Maritime Prepositioning Forces (MPF) operations.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 55-9 Unit Air Movement Planning
 2. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
 3. MCWP 4-11 Tactical Level Logistics
 4. MCWP 4-11.3 Transportation Operations
 5. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1833-CSS-2514: Coordinate Transportation Support for a Unit Operation/Deployment

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant

GRADES: GYSGT, MSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given the requirement to coordinate a unit's transportation, an operations order, listing of supplies, equipment, personnel, and the references.

STANDARD: To ensure sufficient transportation assets are available to support unit deployment.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Review the operations plan to determine specific transportation requirements.
2. Identify Marine Corps strategic mobility concepts.
3. Identify U.S. Transportation Command (Strategic Mobility) concept.
4. Formulate an embarkation plan.
5. Forecast lift requirements.
6. Provide input regarding Force Deployment Planning and Execution.
7. Prepare requests for transportation.
8. Submit transportation requirements to higher headquarters.
9. Disseminate a movement schedule to the appropriate units.
10. Supervise embarkation/movement staging area.
11. Ensure dispatching procedures are correct.

REFERENCES:

1. FM 55-9 Unit Air Movement Planning
 2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 4. MCWP 4-11.3 Transportation Operations
-

1833-CSS-2515: Perform the Duties of a Logistics Chief

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Battalion Logistics Officer

GRADES: MSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given the required duties of a logistics chief, commander's guidance, and the references.

STANDARD: To support the mission requirements of the unit.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Organize the logistics section.
2. Determine directive and publication requirements.
3. Establish internal control procedures for maintaining administrative files and records.
4. Review logistics related reports.
5. Prepare staff correspondence pertaining to logistics.
6. Prepare standing operating procedures.
7. Prepare external support requests.
8. Prepare briefing materials on logistics matters.
9. Implement corrective action of discrepancies noted during administrative inspections.
10. Provide oversight for the Logistics' functional areas of Motor Transport, Supply, Equipment Maintenance, Arms, Ammunition and Explosives (AA&E), and Messing.
11. Verify that Combat Service Support MOS proficiency related training is scheduled and conducted.
12. Conduct inspections.

13. Verify that correct use of operational forms and records.
14. Verify that dispatching procedures are correct.
15. Maintain a Ground Safety Program.
16. Supervise a unit armory.
17. Supervise a unit ammunition account.
18. Supervise unit subsistence.
19. Maintain a ground safety program.
20. Supervise Hazardous material/waste (HAZMAT) disposal program.
21. Supervise a motor transport licensing program.
22. Supervise publication control system.
23. Supervise maintenance management related functions.

REFERENCES :

1. MCRP 4-11.4A Battle Damage Assessment and Repair
2. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. MCWP 4-1 Logistics Operations
5. MCWP 4-11 Tactical Level Logistics
6. MCWP 4-11.3 Transportation Operations
7. MCWP 4-11.4 Maintenance Operations
8. MCWP 4-11.7 MAGTF Supply Operations
9. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
10. NWP 22-10 MPF Operations
11. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS

1833-CSS-2516: Monitor Unit Table of Organization and Equipment Modification (T/O&E) Procedures

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETTS: Battalion Logistics Chief, Battalion Operations Chief

GRADES: MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a using unit account, T/O&E, and reference.

STANDARD: To ensure the table of equipment allowances are properly maintained to support the mission.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Validate unit T/E excesses and deficiencies.
2. Supervise the adjustment of the unit table of equipment.

REFERENCES :

1. MCO 4400.172 Table of Equipment (T/E) Allowance Change Procedures
-

1833-AMPH-2601: Assist in Developing the Landing Plan

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant

GRADES: GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit, supported unit, an operations order, specified amphibious ship platform, tactical scenario, specified threat, and references.

STANDARD: So that all associated diagrams, tables, attachments, and overlays are included.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Conduct Mission Analysis of supported unit's operations order and provide appropriate input.
2. Determine Assault Amphibian lift requirements for assault elements, scheduled waves, on-call waves, and nonscheduled waves.
3. Review Amphibious Vehicle Availability Table to determine the number and periods of availability for each type of AAV assigned to the operation.
4. Determine landing force lift requirements for the ship-to-shore movement in coordination with a review of the Amphibious Vehicle Availability Table, Helicopter Availability Table, and the Landing Craft Availability Table.
5. Consider enemy capabilities to counter surface and/or air assaults.
6. Allow flexibility of on-call and nonscheduled waves.
7. Assign elements to one of five categories in order to indicate their relative priority for landing and to facilitate control of the ship-to-shore movement.
8. Allocate assets for use by subordinate elements, and ensure that the proposed Landing Diagram, Assault Schedule, and Landing Sequence Table are developed concurrently and are mutually compatible.
9. Develop Serial Assignment Table based on task organization for the landing.
10. Develop Landing Craft and Amphibious Vehicle Assignment Table is coordinated with affected units.
11. Develop Assault Landing Table and Serial Assignment Table ensure proper coordination with appropriate CE.
12. Develop Debarkation Schedule in coordination with Naval personnel.

REFERENCES:

1. JCS PUB 3-02 Joint Doctrine for Amphibious Operations
2. JCS PUB 3-02.1 Joint Doctrine for Landing Force Operations
3. LFM 03 Amphibious Embarkation
4. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
5. MCRP 3-31.3A Over the Horizon Surface Operations
6. MCRP 3-31B Amphibious Ships and Landing Craft Data Book
7. MCRP 4-11.3D The Naval Beach Group
8. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
9. MCWP 3-31.3 Surf Zone Operations
10. MCWP 3-31.5 Ship-to-Shore Movement

11. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
 12. MCWP 5-11 Amphibious Task Force Planning
 13. MCWP 5-11.2 The Amphibious Task Force Plan
-

1833-AMPH-2602: Assist Analyzing Landing Plan

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant

GRADES: GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit, higher's operations order, a landing plan, and a list of amphibious ship platforms.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Reconcile the Landing Plan with the scheme of maneuver ashore.
2. Examine the Landing Plan Diagram and extract the AAV-borne scheduled waves of the assault.
3. Examine the Approach Schedule and extract the wave schedules.
4. Analyze the Landing Craft and Amphibious Vehicle Assignment Schedule and verify the boat team assignments.
5. Analyze the Serial Assignment Table to determine the grouping of units to be landed on a specified beach at the specified/correct time.
6. Analyze the Landing Sequence Table to determine the priority of landing of nonscheduled serials.
7. Analyze the Assault Schedule to determine the composition and timing of waves landing over designated beaches.
8. Analyze the Amphibious Vehicle Availability Table to determine the type, number and ship location of amphibious vehicles which are available to the landing force.
9. Provide the Landing Force and Amphibious Task Force staff members with input for the Amphibious Vehicle Employment Plan.
10. The operations order and landing plan should also contain the following key information: task organization for waves, boat groups, assault schedule, type of launch expected, prelaunch warm up time and sequence, time for undocking, staging of AAVs, frequencies and call signs, radio checks per EMCON, timeline for issuing ammunition and embarking infantry, planned time for launch, launch signals, procedures for vehicle if stalled in well deck, ballast conditions, multiple vehicle launches from a single ship (if planned), simulated launches from multiple ships (if planned), launch interval, launch sequence, boat line location, designation of wave guides and commanders, Navy Control Group command and control, recovery planning if vehicles become disabled, signals for emergency lifting of Naval Gunfire, location of line of departure, beach characteristics, and barriers to landing and enemy defenses expected.

REFERENCES:

1. JCS PUB 3-02 Joint Doctrine for Amphibious Operations

2. JCS PUB 3-02.1 Joint Doctrine for Landing Force Operations
3. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
4. MCRP 3-31.3A Over the Horizon Surface Operations
5. MCRP 3-31B Amphibious Ships and Landing Craft Data Book
6. MCRP 4-11.3D The Naval Beach Group
7. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
8. MCWP 3-31.1 Supporting Arms in Amphibious Operations
9. MCWP 3-31.2 Mine Warfare
10. MCWP 3-31.3 Surf Zone Operations
11. MCWP 3-31.5 Ship-to-Shore Movement
12. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
13. MCWP 5-11 Amphibious Task Force Planning
14. MCWP 5-11.2 The Amphibious Task Force Plan

1833-AMPH-2603: Supervise Preparation of AAV Element for Debarkation from Amphibious Shipping

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit preparing for debarkation from amphibious shipping, higher's operations order, a supporting landing plan, and use of amphibious shipping well-deck.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Supervise pre-water operation checks and services of AAVs.
2. Supervise conduct of communications checks.
3. Supervise issuing of ammunition and pyrotechnics to AAVs.
4. Supervise ungripping of vehicles if necessary. Gripes will be stowed in accordance with the ship's guidance.
5. Supervise the conduct of safety orientation and issue life jackets by crews.
6. Supervise embarkation of troops.
7. Supervise positioning of AAVs for launch under guidance from ship's well deck personnel.
8. Supervise placing vehicles into water operating mode.
9. Supervise conduct of splash team operations.
10. Supervise launch of vehicles from well deck in accordance with guidance from ship's well-deck personnel.

REFERENCES:

1. LFM 03 Amphibious Embarkation
 2. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 3. MCRP 3-31B Amphibious Ships and Landing Craft Data Book
 4. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
-

1833-AMPH-2604: Coordinate Embarkation/Debarkation Plans on Amphibious Shipping with Naval Personnel

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit, Amphibious Objective Area, applicable communications with assigned amphibious shipping personnel, and the references.

STANDARD: So that all personnel, equipment, ordnance, and vehicles are safely and securely embarked aboard amphibious shipping.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Confirm number and type of AAVs.
2. Confirm call signs and frequencies for communication between ship, safety boats, and AA unit.
3. Confirm center-beach grid coordinates with Naval personnel.
4. Confirm timeline for: set condition One Alpha for AAV/Well deck operations, launch of safety boats, and launch of AAVs to ship.
5. Confirm procedures for recovery of disabled AAV with ship.
6. Confirm actions for AAV sinking during movement with ship.
7. Confirm ships plan for depth of water/ballast condition at sill on well deck.
8. Confirm position/angle of stern gate.
9. Confirm positioning of well deck crew and hand and arm signals used by well deck crews for maneuvering AAVs into and inside of the well deck.
10. Confirm AAV positioning within the well deck to provide adequate space for: ship's fire fighting crews, conducting AAV after operations checks and services, conducting required AAV corrective maintenance, and Refueling of AAVs within well deck if necessary.
11. Attend pre-assault briefing to coordinate debarkation plans with Naval personnel.
12. Coordinate time line for launch.
13. Coordinate with ship's personnel for procedures in the event of AAV becoming disabled in the well deck during launch.
14. Coordinate waterborne control measures.
15. Coordinate with ship's personnel for any AAVs or AAV personnel remaining aboard ship.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCRP 3-31B Amphibious Ships and Landing Craft Data Book
3. MCRP 4-24A Vehicle Recovery Operations
4. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS: This task will be conducted normally at the pre-sail conference.

1833-AMPH-2605: Perform Duties of Wave Commander

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Wave commander is tactically responsible for movement of wave of AAVs from ship-to-shore. A wave is considered a group of vehicles or boats that land at the same beach at the same time.

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit, Amphibious Objective Area, a landing diagram, and communications with the Primary Control Ship.

STANDARD: So the AAV wave touches down at the specific beach and time in the prescribed formation.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Direct the formation of vehicle waves.
2. Communicate with Primary Control Shipping for AA unit pace and placement in the boat lane.
3. Verify that vehicles are in proper sequence to ensure tactical unity.
4. Direct waterborne movement.
5. Maintain vehicle intervals and distances.
6. Report when vehicles have landed at the beach.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCRP 3-31B Amphibious Ships and Landing Craft Data Book
3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
4. MCWP 3-31.5 Ship-to-Shore Movement

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

UNITS/PERSONNEL: Amphibious shipping required.

1833-AMPH-2606: Develop Surf Observation (SUROB) Report

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Surf observation report will be conducted and reported, if applicable, prior to waterborne operations. This event will aid the assault amphibian officer in determining waterborne operational conditions and ultimately whether to splash his AA unit or not.

BILLETS: Crewchief, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SGT, SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Amphibious Objective Area and reference.

STANDARD: To validate the safety of splashing AAVs.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Line Alpha-determine significant breaker height.
2. Line Bravo-determine maximum breaker height.
3. Line Charlie-determine breaker period.
4. Line Delta-determine breaker type.
5. Line Echo-determine breaker angle.
6. Line Foxtrot-determine littoral current.
7. Line Golf-determine depth of surf zone and lines of breakers.
8. Line Hotel-determine miscellaneous information: wind speed and angle, secondary breaker height, debris in the surf zone, and sea state.
9. Employ NATO format as required.
10. Translate SUROB into Modified Surf Index (MSI) as required.

REFERENCE:

1. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
-

1833-AMPH-2607: Direct Assault Amphibian Unit Waterborne Movement

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit and an amphibious area of operation.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Verify that all crews conduct pre-water operations checks and services.
2. Verify that the pre-water operations checklists and manifests for each vehicle is left with appropriate shipboard personnel or are retained by the AA unit.
3. Verify that a splash team checks each vehicle prior to launch onto the water.
4. Establish the control measure necessary to conduct waterborne movement, including: entry points, splash teams, interval at launch; formation, rate of march, catch up speed while waterborne; actions in the event of enemy contact; actions in the event of enemy mines and obstacles; actions in the event of a disabled AAV in the water; and actions in the event of a sinking AAV in the water.
5. Exit point or landing beach, to include alternate landing sites or "safe

- harbors" in the event of emergencies.
6. Actions on exiting water.
 7. Direct AAV movement, ensuring proper rate of march, formation, and weapons orientation.
 8. Verify proper exiting.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
-

1833-AMPH-2608: Supervise Splash Team Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian team conducting splash team operations.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Assign a minimum of three personnel to the splash team to include at least one NCO.
2. Team leader, controls movement of vehicles to splash point, directs splash team activities, and launches vehicles into water.
3. Forward member, inspects forward hull plugs, plenum indicators, and hatches as well as confirms all bilge pumps are on.
4. Aft member, inspects aft hull plugs, ensures personnel door is locked, and ramp is sealed and dogged.
5. Supervise the splash team in the conduct of their duties at the splash point.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
-

1833-AMPH-2609: Complete Individual Surf Qualification

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given a life jacket, white T-shirt, utility trousers, swim buddy, references and placed 1000 meters from the beach line with an AAV.

STANDARD: By disembarking the AAV in a safe manner and swimming from the drop point to the breakers while negotiating the surf to the beach.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Disembark stationary AAV into water when signaled from crew chief or designated personnel.
2. Swim away from AAV to safe distance.
3. Swim to shoreline with swim buddy.
4. Negotiate breakers.

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17411 Maneuver/Training Area, Amphibious Forces

1833-TAC-2701: Advise Supported Unit Commander on Employment of AAVs

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT, MSGT, MGYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit, higher headquarters' operations order, and references.

STANDARD: So unit courses of action are provided to the supported unit commander for developing a scheme of maneuver.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Analyze the landing plan.
2. Analyze supported unit's mission.
3. Coordinate with supported unit staff for additional information requirements.
4. Advise supported unit commander on AAV movement techniques.
5. Develop a course of action for on UGWS weapons employment in support of mechanized operations.
6. Coordinate communications scheme of maneuver to maximize AAV communications assets.
7. Develop a course of action for AAV employment during limited visibility operations.
8. Develop a course of action for AAV employment in offensive operations.
9. Develop a course of action for AAV employment in defensive operations.
10. Develop a course of action for AAV employment in nuclear, biological, or

- chemical environments.
11. Advise the supported unit commander and his staff on the Combat Service Support requirements for the AA unit.
 12. Develop a course of action for AAV employment in amphibious operations.
 13. Coordinate Embarkation of Personnel Aboard AAVs.

REFERENCES :

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCRP 3-11.1A Commander's Tactical Handbook
 3. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
 4. MCWP 5-1 Marine Corps Planning Process
-

1833-TAC-2702: Prepare Assault Amphibian Unit Fire Plan Sketch

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given an Assault Amphibian unit in defensive positions and subordinate unit sketches.

STANDARD: Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Collect and verify the range cards for the unit.
2. Integrate the range cards into single sketch, including vehicle positions and important terrain features.
3. Integrate any supporting arms assets available.
4. Make one copy for the AA unit and one copy for the supported unit commander.

REFERENCES :

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
 2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
-

1833-TAC-2703: Coordinate Assault Amphibian Unit Fire Plan Sketch with Supported Unit Commander

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

1833-TAC-2705: Prepare AAV for Night/Limited Visibility Operations

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given AAV with crew and orders to conduct operations during times of darkness.

STANDARD: Per the reference.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Install night vision device in driver's station.
2. Conduct pre-operations checks on Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) sight for night operations.
3. Install blackout curtains.
4. Place all dome lights in the off or blue/green light position.
5. Mount headlights.
6. Mount chemical lights or other required marking devices.

REFERENCE:

1. TM 09674A-10/3B Operator's Manual (With Component List), Assault Amphibious Vehicle, 7A1 Family of Vehicles and RAM/RS
-

1833-TAC-2706: Transport Casualties in AAV

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

BILLETS: Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: MOJT

CONDITION: Given embarked casualties, requirement to transport them to aid station, area of operations, and route.

STANDARD: So the combat efficiency of the supported unit is maintained and wounded personnel are relocated to receive available medical attention.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Install the litter kit in an AAVP7A1.
2. Load casualties with advice from the unit corpsman.
3. Determine the safest, fastest, smoothest route for the movement.
4. Verify casualties are transported to appropriate unit casualty transfer

point or aid station in accordance with the operations order.

REFERENCES :

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)

AA T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 8

INDIVIDUAL AND COLLECTIVE TRAINING

ASSAULT AMPHIBIAN UNIT GUNNERY TABLES

	<u>PARAGRAPH</u>	<u>PAGE</u>
PURPOSE	8000	8-2
EVENT CODING.	8001	8-2
ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES.	8002	8-2
DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY	8003	8-3
INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS BY FUNCTIONAL AREA.	8004	8-4
GUNNERY TABLES.	8005	8-5

AA T&R MANUAL

CHAPTER 8

INDIVIDUAL AND COLLECTIVE TRAINING

ASSAULT AMPHIBIAN GUNNERY TABLES

8000. PURPOSE. This chapter contains all Assault Amphibian unit gunnery individual and collective events as executed through AAV gunnery tables I-IX. These tables illustrate the relationship between unit competencies (Mission Essential Tasks (METs), unit training (Collective events) and prerequisite individual training requirements. Unit training managers can isolate all training relevant to each event and devise training to support their competencies as needed. Lastly, this chapter serves as the primary method to qualify and grade the machine gunnery skills of the 1803 and 1833 military occupational specialties (MOS).

8001. EVENT CODING. Events in the T&R manual are depicted with a 12 field alphanumeric system, i.e. XXXX-XXXX-XXXX. This chapter utilizes the following methodology:

a. Field one - Each individual event starts with "1803" or "1833" indicating the event is for the applicable MOS in the Assault Amphibian unit. Each collective event starts with "AAV" indicating it is representative of the Assault Amphibian unit at the crew or section level. The Collective Event title for all gunnery tables will begin with "Conduct AAV Gunnery Table".

b. Field two - This field is alpha characters indicating a functional area. The functional area used is:

GNRY - Gunnery

c. Field three - This field provides unit level at which the event is accomplished and numerical sequencing.

8002. ADMINISTRATIVE NOTES. Each Event contains a paragraph that describes internal and external Support Requirements the unit and Marines will need to complete the event. Ranges/Training Areas are described in this section with plain-language description. They are also described using the Range/Facility Codes that identify the type of range and/or training area needed to accomplish the Event. Marines can use the codes to find information about available ranges at their geographic location by using the web-based Range/Training Area Management System (see TECOM website). Ultimate use of the Range/Training Area Code is to relate ranges to readiness by identifying those Events that cannot be accomplished at a certain location due to lack of ranges. Administrative instructions, ordnance requirements, and other instructions provide amplifying guidance to support the conduct and execution of the gunnery tables.

8003. DESCRIPTION/CORE CAPABILITY

1. Engages a stationary target from a stationary AAV with upgunned weapons station utilizing the M2 .50 caliber heavy barrel machinegun and MK-19 machinegun.
2. Engages multiple stationary targets from a stationary AAV with upgunned weapons station utilizing the M2 .50 caliber heavy barrel machinegun and MK-19 machinegun.
3. Engages targets and displaces to subsequent/alternate battle positions.
4. Engages targets in daylight and limited visibility conditions.
5. Engages targets under nuclear, biological, and chemical (NBC) conditions.

8004. INDEX OF COLLECTIVE EVENTS BY FUNCTIONAL AREA

Event Code	Eval Code	Event	Page
1803-GNRY-1131 1833-GNRY-1131		Conduct AAV Gunnery Table I	8-5
1803-GNRY-1132 1833-GNRY-1132		Conduct AAV Gunnery Table II	8-6
1803-GNRY-1133 1833-GNRY-2106		Conduct AAV Gunnery Table III	8-7
1803-GNRY-1134 1833-GNRY-2107		Conduct AAV Gunnery Table IV	8-9
1803-GNRY-1135 1833-GNRY-2108		Conduct AAV Gunnery Table V	8-10
AAV-GNRY-3156	Yes	Conduct AAV Gunnery Table VI	8-12
AAV-GNRY-3157	Yes	Conduct AAV Gunnery Table VII	8-14
AAV-GNRY-3158	Yes	Conduct AAV Gunnery Table VIII	8-16
AAV-GNRY-4159	Yes	Conduct AAV Gunnery Table IX	8-18

8005. GUNNERY TABLES

1803-GNRY-1131/1833-GNRY-1131: Conduct AAV Gunnery Table I

EVALUATION-CODED: NO **SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL:** 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Table I is a non-firing table designed to test the proficiency of Marines on the MK 19 and M2 machine guns of the upgunned weapon station.

BILLETS: Platoon Commander, Vehicle Crewman

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary AAV, upgunned weapon station with cleared and installed MK 19 and M2 machine guns, required ammunition by type and amount, qualified evaluator, and references.

STANDARD: So Marines score 80 percent on the written exam and pass all additional events.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Event #1: Complete written exam.
2. Event #2: Assemble and disassemble the MK 19 and M2 machine guns.
3. Event #3: Set head space and timing on M2 heavy barrel machine gun.
4. Event #4: Install the MK 19 and M2 in the upgunned weapons station.
5. Event #5: Boresight the MK 19 and M2 machine guns.
6. Event #6: Load and clear the MK 19 and M2 machine guns.
7. Event #7: Clear a malfunction from the MK 19.
8. Event #8: Perform manipulation exercise.
9. Event #9: Utilize smoke grenade tester to demonstrate loading and firing procedures on the M257.
10. Event #10: Describe the three AAV firing positions.
11. Event #11: Describe fire commands (ADDRAC).
12. Event #12: Prepare an AAV range card.
13. Event #13: Describe the characteristics of fire.
14. Event #14: Describe the three classes of fire.
15. Event #15: Demonstrate methods to determine distance to target.
16. Event #16: Demonstrate how to properly handle/store ammunition on an AAV.
17. Event #17: Describe how to safely embark troops armed with ammunition.

RELATED EVENTS:

1803-GNRY-1109	1803-VOPS-1303	1803-GNRY-1112
1803-GNRY-1129	1803-GNRY-1106	1803-GNRY-1101
1803-GNRY-1123	1803-GNRY-1108	1803-GNRY-1126
1803-GNRY-1102	1803-GNRY-1105	1803-GNRY-1110
1803-GNRY-1104	1803-GNRY-1127	1803-GNRY-1124
1803-GNRY-1128	1803-GNRY-1111	1803-GNRY-1103
1833-TAC-1703	1833-VOPS-1303	1833-GNRY-1112
1833-GNRY-1104	1833-GNRY-1115	1833-GNRY-1129
1833-GNRY-1107	1833-GNRY-1102	1833-GNRY-1116
1833-GNRY-1108	1833-GNRY-1123	1833-GNRY-1111

1833-GNRY-1126	1833-GNRY-1103	1833-GNRY-1110
1833-GNRY-1118	1833-GNRY-1101	1833-GNRY-1113
1833-GNRY-1105	1833-GNRY-1127	1833-GNRY-1128
1833-GNRY-1114	1833-GNRY-1106	1833-CSS-2507

REFERENCES :

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
4. TM 08521A-10/1A Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun, 40mm, MK 19 Mod 3
5. TM 10004A-10/1C Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List
6. TM 9-1005-213-10 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, Caliber .50, M2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS :

ORDNANCE :

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
B472 Cartridge, 40mm Dummy M922	10 rounds/man
A560 Cartridge, Caliber .50 Dummy M2	10 rounds/man

MISCELLANEOUS :

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS :

1. Marines must score 80 percent to pass written exam on event #1.
2. All other events are pass/fail and will be mastered and evaluated before advancing to Table II.
3. Manipulation exercises are performed by manually laying the weapons on targets requiring changes in elevation and deflection

1803-GNRY-1132/1833-GNRY-1132 : Conduct AAV Gunnery Table II

EVALUATION-CODED : NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL : 12 months

DESCRIPTION : Table II is a live fire gunnery table designed to demonstrate proficiency on zeroing weapons of the upgunned weapon station in order to validate boresight.

BILLETS : Platoon Commander, Vehicle Crewman

GRADES : 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, PVT, PFC, LCPL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING : FORMAL

CONDITION : Given a stationary AAV, an upgunned weapon station with installed MK19 and M2 machine guns, required ammunition by type and amount, stationary target at 500 meters, and a qualified evaluator.

STANDARD : Per the references.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Zero the M2 machine gun.
2. Zero the MK 19 machine gun.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

1803-GNRY-1131 1833-GNRY-1131

RELATED EVENTS:

1833-GNRY-1112 1803-GNRY-1103 1803-GNRY-1109
1833-GNRY-1104

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
4. TM 08521A-10/1A Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun, 40mm, MK 19 Mod 3
5. TM 10004A-10/1C Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List
6. TM 9-1005-213-10 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, Caliber .50, M2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Lin	32 rounds/man
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP	50 rounds/man

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. Table II is a Go/No Go event.
2. The gunner must successfully pass all tasks in tables 1 and 2 to proceed any further.

1803-GNRY-1133/1833-GNRY-2106: Conduct AAV Gunnery Table III

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Table III is a live fire gunnery table that demonstrates basic upgunned weapon station engagement skills from a stationary position against stationary target(s) during daylight operations.

BILLETS: Platoon Commander, Crewchief, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary AAV, upgunned weapon station with installed MK 19 and M2 machine guns, required ammunition by type and amount, stationary targets from 600-1800 meters, daytime visibility, qualified evaluator, and references.

STANDARD: So the gunner destroys all targets in the time directed.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Scenario #1: Engage and destroy a stationary target at a distance of 600-1000 meters using manual or electrical trigger within 30 seconds.
2. Scenario #2: Engage and destroy 2 stationary targets at a distance of 600-1000 meters using manual or electrical trigger within 60 seconds.
3. Scenario #3: Engage and destroy a stationary target at a distance of 1000-1800 meters using manual or electrical trigger within 45 seconds.
4. Scenario #4: Engage and destroy 2 stationary targets at a distance of 1000-1800 meters using manual or electrical trigger within 2 minutes.
5. Scenario #5: Engage and destroy 2 stationary targets at unknown ranges using manual or electrical trigger within 2 minutes.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

1803-GNRY-1132 1833-GNRY-1132

RELATED EVENTS:

1803-GNRY-1110	1803-GNRY-1124	1803-GNRY-1104
1833-TAC-1703	1833-GNRY-1124	1833-GNRY-1105
1833-GNRY-1113		

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Lin	88 rounds/man
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP	160 rounds/man

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

1. Each task in Table III is a pass or fail event. Each gunner must cumulatively pass 70 percent of events from Tables III-V in order to qualify.
2. Suppression with the MK 19 is impact of the round within 30 meters of the target, with a 3-5 round burst. Suppression with the .50 cal. is rounds impacting within 4 meters in width and 10 meters deep of the target, with a 8-10 round burst. Rounds impacting short of the target have some suppressive value; however, rounds fired over the target have no suppressive value. Suppression will be determined by the judgment of the evaluator.
3. A target is destroyed with the MK 19 when a round impacts within 5 meters of the target. The .50 cal. can destroy a target only with a direct hit on soft targets at ranges no greater than 1000 meters. The MK 19 can destroy a soft target by impacting within 15 meters of the target.
4. Time is the time limit given as part of the standard. The gunner must register suppression and destroy the target within the time limit to

pass the event.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. Gunners will prepare a range card prior to live fire.
2. Gunners will record firing data for both weapons on targets to be engaged for subsequent nighttime engagements.
3. All times are maximum allowed to complete the task.
4. Ammunition requirements are based on a Marine to execute entire table.

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS:

ADVANCED GUNNER (80%-100%) QUALIFIED GUNNER (70%-79%) UNQUALIFIED (0-69%)

1803-GNRY-1134/1833-GNRY-2107: Conduct AAV Gunnery Table IV

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Table IV is a live fire gunnery table that demonstrates basic upgunned weapon station engagement skills from a stationary position against stationary target(s) during simulated NBC conditions.

BILLETS: Platoon Commander, Crewchief, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary AAV, upgunned weapon station with installed MK 19 and M2 machine guns, required ammunition by type and amount, stationary targets from 600-1800 meters, daytime visibility, simulated NBC conditions in MOPP 4, qualified evaluator, and references.

STANDARD: So the gunner destroys all targets in the time directed.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Scenario #6: Engage and destroy a stationary target at a distance of 600-1000 meters using manual or electrical trigger within 45 seconds.
2. Scenario #7: Engage and destroy a stationary target at a distance of 1000-1800 meters using manual or electrical trigger within 60 seconds.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

1803-GNRY-1133 1833-GNRY-2106

RELATED EVENTS:

1803-GNRY-1110 1803-GNRY-1124 1803-GNRY-1104
1833-GNRY-1113 1833-GNRY-1124 1833-GNRY-1105

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
4. TM 08521A-10/1A Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun, 40mm,

- MK 19 Mod 3
5. TM 10004A-10/1C Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List
 6. TM 9-1005-213-10 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, Caliber .50, M2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Lin	24 rounds/man
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP	40 rounds/man

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

1. Each task in Table IV is a pass or fail event. Each gunner must cumulatively pass 70 percent of events from Tables III-V in order to qualify.
2. Suppression with the MK 19 is impact of the round within 30 meters of the target, with a 3-5 round burst. Suppression with the .50 cal. is rounds impacting within 4 meters in width and 10 meters deep of the target, with an 8-10 round burst. Rounds impacting short of the target have some suppressive value; however, rounds fired over the target have no suppressive value. Suppression will be determined by the judgment of the evaluator.
3. A target is destroyed with the MK 19 when a round impacts within 5 meters of the target. The .50 cal. can destroy a target only with a direct hit on soft targets at ranges no greater than 1000 meters. The MK 19 can destroy a soft target by impacting within 15 meters of the target.
4. Time is the time limit given as part of the standard. The gunner must register suppression and destroy the target within the time limit to pass the event.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. All times are maximum allowed to complete the task.
2. Ammunition requirements are based on one Marine to execute entire table.

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS:

ADVANCED GUNNER (80%-100%) QUALIFIED GUNNER (70%-79%) UNQUALIFIED (0-69%)

1803-GNRY-1135/1833-GNRY-2108: Conduct AAV Gunnery Table V

EVALUATION-CODED: NO

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Table V is a live fire gunnery table that demonstrates basic upgunned weapon station engagement skills from a stationary position against stationary target(s) during nighttime limited visibility operations.

BILLETS: Platoon Commander, Crewchief, Platoon Sergeant, Section Leader

GRADES: 2NDLT, 1STLT, CAPT, MAJ, LTCOL, CPL, SGT, SSGT, GYSGT

INITIAL TRAINING SETTING: FORMAL

CONDITION: Given a stationary AAV, upgunned weapon station with installed MK 19 and M2 machine guns, required ammunition by type and amount, stationary targets from 400-800 meters, nighttime limited visibility, range card, qualified evaluator, and references.

STANDARD: So the gunner destroys all targets in the time directed.

PERFORMANCE STEPS:

1. Scenario #8: Proof range card by validating firing data.
2. Scenario #9: Engage and destroy a stationary target at a distance of 400-800 meters using manual or electrical trigger within 60 seconds.
3. Scenario #10: Engage and destroy multiple stationary targets at a distance of 400-800 meters using manual or electrical trigger within 60 seconds.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

1803-GNRY-1134	1833-GNRY-2107	1833-GNRY-2106
----------------	----------------	----------------

RELATED EVENTS:

1803-GNRY-1110	1803-GNRY-1124	1803-GNRY-1104
1833-TAC-1703	1833-GNRY-1124	1833-GNRY-1105
1833-GNRY-1113		

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
4. TM 08521A-10/1A Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun, 40mm, MK 19 Mod 3
5. TM 10004A-10/1C Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List
6. TM 9-1005-213-10 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, Caliber .50, M2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Lin	32 rounds/man
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP	100 rounds/man

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

EQUIPMENT: Range card constructed from Table III run is a prerequisite to Table V nighttime engagements.

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

1. Each task in Table V is a pass or fail event. Each gunner must cumulatively pass 70 percent of events from Tables III-V in order to

- qualify.
2. Suppression with the MK 19 is impact of the round within 30 meters of the target, with a 3-5 round burst. Suppression with the .50 cal. is rounds impacting within 4 meters in width and 10 meters deep of the target, with a 8-10 round burst. Rounds impacting short of the target have some suppressive value; however, rounds fired over the target have no suppressive value. Suppression will be determined by the judgment of the evaluator.
 3. A target is destroyed with the MK 19 when a round impacts within 5 meters of the target. The .50 cal. can destroy a target only with a direct hit on soft targets at ranges no greater than 1000 meters. The MK 19 can destroy a soft target by impacting within 15 meters of the target.
 4. Time is the time limit given as part of the standard. The gunner must register suppression and destroy the target within the time limit to pass the event.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. All times are maximum allowed to complete the task.
2. Ammunition requirements are based on one Marine to execute entire table.

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS:

ADVANCED GUNNER (80%-100%) QUALIFIED GUNNER (70%-79%) UNQUALIFIED (0-69%)

AAV-GNRY-3156: Conduct AAV Gunnery Table VI

SUPPORTED MET(S): 6, 8

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Table VI is a live fire gunnery table designed to train crews to acquire and engage stationary target(s) from a defensive position utilizing the upgunned weapons station during daylight operations. Crews are evaluated on their ability to load/reload weapons, move AAV from a hide to firing position, and to displace to an alternate battle position and reengage targets.

CONDITION: Given a stationary AAV with crew, upgunned weapons station with installed MK 19 and M2 machine guns, required ammunition by type and amount, stationary targets from 600-1800 meters, daytime visibility, qualified evaluator, and references.

STANDARD: So the crew maneuvers the AAV from a hide to firing position and destroys all targets in the time directed.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. DRY RUN/SIMULATED: Defend battle position 1, engage and destroy a stationary target 600-1800 meters using manual or electrical trigger.
2. Scenario #1: Defend battle position 1, engage and destroy multiple stationary targets 600-1800 meters using manual or electrical trigger

- within 60 seconds.
3. Scenario #2: Defend battle position 1, engage and destroy multiple stationary targets 600-1800 meters, move to hide position to reload, displace to alternate fighting position, and complete engagement using manual or electrical trigger within 4 minutes 30 seconds.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

1833-GNRY-2108

RELATED EVENTS:

1833-TAC-1704	1833-TAC-2704	1833-TAC-1703
1833-VOPS-1310	1833-GNRY-1113	1833-GNRY-1105
1833-GNRY-1124	1833-CMDC-2218	

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
4. TM 08521A-10/1A Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun, 40mm, MK 19 Mod 3
5. TM 10004A-10/1C Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List
6. TM 9-1005-213-10 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, Caliber .50, M2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Lin	72 rounds/AAV
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP	120 rounds/AAV

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

1. Each task in Table VI is a pass or fail event. Each crew must pass a minimum of three of the four scenarios cumulatively for Tables VI-VIII in order to qualify.
2. Suppression with the MK 19 is impact of the round within 30 meters of the target, with a 3-5 round burst. Suppression with the .50 cal. is rounds impacting within 4 meters in width and 10 meters deep of the target, with an 8-10 round burst. Rounds impacting short of the target have some suppressive value; however, rounds fired over the target have no suppressive value. Suppression will be determined by the judgment of the evaluator.
3. A target is destroyed with the MK 19 when a round impacts within 5 meters of the target. The .50 cal. can destroy a target only with a direct hit on soft targets at ranges no greater than 1000 meters. The MK 19 can destroy a soft target by impacting within 15 meters of the target.
4. Time is the time limit given as part of the standard. The crew must register suppression and destroy the target within the time limit to pass the event.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. All times are maximum allowed to complete the task.
2. Ordnance requirements listed are based on one crew to execute the entire table.
3. Range Cards will be made for each firing position which will be staked.
4. Distance from the hide position to the firing position will be determined by the RSO for each range used.
5. During all tasks that require movement of the vehicle, the clock will stop during movement. During reload tasks the clock will run. The evaluator will determine, based on range conditions, when the clock should start and when it should stop.
6. AAV crew will expend allotted ammunition prior to reload.
7. While in the hide position and movement to the firing position, no weapons will be in condition 3 or higher. Only the RSO will determine that the firing position is safely occupied and only then will the RSO allow the crew to go condition 1 and hot.

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS:

ADVANCED CREW (100%) QUALIFIED CREW (75%) UNQUALIFIED (0-50%)

AAV-GNRY-3157: Conduct AAV Gunnery Table VII

SUPPORTED MET(S): 6, 8

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Table VII is a live fire gunnery table designed to train crews to acquire and engage stationary target(s) from a defensive position utilizing the upgunned weapons station during simulated NBC conditions. Crews are evaluated on their ability to load/reload weapons and move AAV from a hide to firing position in MOPP level 4.

CONDITION: Given a stationary AAV with crew, upgunned weapon station with installed MK 19 and M2 machine guns, required ammunition by type and amount, stationary targets from 600-1800 meters, daytime visibility, simulated NBC environment in MOPP level 4, qualified evaluator, and references.

STANDARD: So the crew maneuvers the AAV from a hide to firing position and destroys all targets in the time directed.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. DRY RUN/SIMULATED: Defend battle position 1, engage multiple targets 600-1800, reload in hide position, and engage and destroy multiple targets 600-1800 meters using manual or electrical trigger.
2. Scenario #3: Defend battle position 1, engage multiple targets 600-1800, reload, and engage and destroy multiple targets 600-1800 meters using manual or electrical trigger, within 2 minutes 30 seconds.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

AAV-GNRY-3156

RELATED EVENTS:

1833-TAC-1704	1833-GNRY-1113	1833-VOPS-1310
1833-GNRY-1124	1833-GNRY-1105	

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
4. MCWP 3-37 MAGTF Nuclear, Biological, and Chemical Defense Operations
5. TM 08521A-10/1A Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun, 40mm, MK 19 Mod 3
6. TM 10004A-10/1C Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List
7. TM 9-1005-213-10 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, Caliber .50, M2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Lin	12 rounds/AAV
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP	50 rounds/AAV

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

1. Each task in Table VII is a pass or fail event. Each crew must pass a minimum of three of the four scenarios cumulatively for Tables VI-VIII in order to qualify.
2. Suppression with the MK 19 is impact of the round within 30 meters of the target, with a 3-5 round burst. Suppression with the .50 cal. is rounds impacting within 4 meters in width and 10 meters deep of the target, with an 8-10 round burst. Rounds impacting short of the target have some suppressive value; however, rounds fired over the target have no suppressive value. Suppression will be determined by the judgment of the evaluator.
3. A target is destroyed with the MK 19 when a round impacts within 5 meters of the target. The .50 cal. can destroy a target only with a direct hit on soft targets at ranges no greater than 1000 meters. The MK 19 can destroy a soft target by impacting within 15 meters of the target.
4. Time is the time limit given as part of the standard. The crew must register suppression and destroy the target within the time limit to pass the event.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. All times are maximum allowed to complete the task.
2. Ordnance requirements listed are based on one crew to execute the entire table.
3. Range Cards will be made for each firing position which will be staked.
4. Distance from the hide position to the firing position will be determined by the RSO for each range used.
5. During all tasks that require movement of the vehicle, the clock will stop during movement. During reload tasks the clock will run. The evaluator will determine, based on range conditions, when the clock should start and when it should stop.

6. AAV crew will expend allotted ammunition prior to reload.
7. While in the hide position and movement to the firing position, no weapons will be in condition 3 or higher. Only the RSO will determine that the firing position is safely occupied and only then will the RSO allow the crew to go condition 1 and hot.
8. All vehicle hatches will be buttoned/closed.

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS:

ADVANCED CREW (100%) QUALIFIED CREW (75%) UNQUALIFIED (0-50%)

AAV-GNRY-3158: Conduct AAV Gunnery Table VIII

SUPPORTED MET(S): 6, 8

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Table VIII is a live fire gunnery table designed to train crews to acquire and engage stationary target(s) from a defensive position utilizing the upgunned weapons station during nighttime limited visibility operations. Crews are evaluated on their ability to load/reload weapons and move AAV from a hide to firing position.

CONDITION: Given a stationary AAV with crew, upgunned weapons station with installed MK 19 and M2 machine guns, required ammunition by type and amount, stationary targets from 600-1800 meters, nighttime limited visibility, qualified evaluator, and references.

STANDARD: So the crew maneuvers the AAV from a hide to firing position and destroys all targets in the time directed.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. DRY RUN/SIMULATED: Defend battle position 1, engage multiple targets 600-1800, reload in hide position, and engage and destroy multiple targets 600-1800 meters using manual or electrical trigger.
2. Scenario #4: Defend battle position 1, engage multiple targets 600-1800, reload in hide position, and engage and destroy multiple targets 600-1800 meters using manual or electrical trigger, within 4 minutes 30 seconds.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

AAV-GNRY-3157

RELATED EVENTS:

1833-TAC-1704	1833-TAC-1703	1833-VOPS-1310
1833-GNRY-1105	1833-GNRY-1124	1833-GNRY-1113

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
4. TM 08521A-10/1A Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun, 40mm, MK 19 Mod 3
5. TM 10004A-10/1C Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List

6. TM 9-1005-213-10 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, Caliber .50, M2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Lin	48 rounds/AAV
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP	100 rounds/AAV

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

1. Each task in Table VIII is a pass or fail event. Each crew must pass a minimum of three of the four scenarios cumulatively for Tables VI-VIII in order to qualify.
2. Suppression with the MK 19 is impact of the round within 30 meters of the target, with a 3-5 round burst. Suppression with the .50 cal. is rounds impacting within 4 meters in width and 10 meters deep of the target, with an 8-10 round burst. Rounds impacting short of the target have some suppressive value; however, rounds fired over the target have no suppressive value. Suppression will be determined by the judgment of the evaluator.
3. A target is destroyed with the MK 19 when a round impacts within 5 meters of the target. The .50 cal. can destroy a target only with a direct hit on soft targets at ranges no greater than 1000 meters. The MK 19 can destroy a soft target by impacting within 15 meters of the target.
4. Time is the time limit given as part of the standard. The crew must register suppression and destroy the target within the time limit to pass the event.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. All times are maximum allowed to complete the task.
2. Ordnance requirements listed are based on one crew to execute the entire table.
3. Range Cards will be made for each firing position which will be staked/marked with chemical lights.
4. Distance from the hide position to the firing position will be determined by the RSO for each range used.
5. During all tasks that require movement of the vehicle, the clock will stop during movement. During reload tasks the clock will run. The evaluator will determine, based on range conditions, when the clock should start and when it should stop.
6. AAV crew will expend allotted ammunition prior to reload.
7. While in the hide position and movement to the firing position, no weapons will be in condition 3 or higher. Only the RSO will determine that the firing position is safely occupied and only then will the RSO allow the crew to go condition 1 and hot.
8. Weapons maintenance and proofing of range card firing data must be performed prior to night fire.

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS:

ADVANCED CREW (100%) QUALIFIED CREW (75%) UNQUALIFIED (0-50%)

AAV-GNRY-4159: Conduct AAV Gunnery Table IX

SUPPORTED MET(S): 5, 6, 8

EVALUATION-CODED: YES

SUSTAINMENT INTERVAL: 12 months

DESCRIPTION: Table IX is a live fire gunnery table designed to evaluate a section leader's ability to control section fires and movement, provide overwatch/supporting fires, and employ the M257 Grenade Launcher System.

CONDITION: Given an AAV section with crews, upgunned weapons station with installed MK 19 and M2 machine guns, required ammunition by type and amount, stationary targets from 600-1800 meters, daytime visibility, training range that supports mechanized movement, qualified evaluator, and references.

STANDARD: So the section maneuvers to an on-line position and suppresses targets on the objective in the time directed.

EVENT COMPONENTS:

1. DRY RUN/SIMULATED: Attack and engage multiple targets 600-1800 meters using manual or electrical trigger, reload, and establish support by fire position to suppress remaining targets on the objective area.
2. Scenario # 1: Displace battle position 1 to a forward firing position, within 15 seconds initiate M257 Grenade Launchers, and displace section back to battle position 1 under cover of smoke screen.
3. Scenario #2: Attack and engage multiple targets 600-1800 meters using manual or electrical trigger, reload, and establish support by fire position to suppress remaining targets on the objective area for ten minutes.

PREREQUISITE EVENTS:

AAV-GNRY-3158

RELATED EVENTS:

1833-CMDC-2217 1833-GNRY-1113 1833-GNRY-1127
1833-GNRY-1124 1833-GNRY-1105

REFERENCES:

1. MCO 3500.27B W/ERRATUM Operational Risk Management
2. MCWP 3-13 Employment of Amphibious Assault Vehicles (AAVs)
3. MCWP 3-15.1 Machine Guns and Machine Gun Gunnery
4. TM 08521A-10/1A Operator's Manual and Components List, Machinegun, 40mm, MK 19 Mod 3
5. TM 10004A-10/1C Upgunned Weapons Station (UGWS) Assault Amphibious Vehicle, Personnel, Model 7A1, AAVP7A1 with Components List
6. TM 9-1005-213-10 Operator's Manual, Machinegun, Caliber .50, M2

SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS:

ORDNANCE:

<u>DODIC</u>	<u>Quantity</u>
A576 Cartridge, Caliber .50 4 API M8/1 AP	400 rounds/section
G826 Grenade, Launcher Smoke Infrared Scr	32 grenades/section
B542 Cartridge, 40mm HEDP M430/M430A1 Lin	384 rounds/section

RANGE/TRAINING AREA:

Facility Code 17722 Tank/Fighting Vehicle Multipurpose Range Complex,

OTHER SUPPORT REQUIREMENTS: The section is qualified when all scenarios in Table IX are successfully passed.

MISCELLANEOUS:

ADMINISTRATIVE INSTRUCTIONS:

1. Loading and firing of the M257 smoke grenade launchers will be in accordance with TM 10004A-10/1B Chapter 4.
2. This Table simulates support by fire for the infantry in the attack. Weapons should not fire faster than their sustained rates of fire. The purpose of the section table is to evaluate the Section Leader's ability to control his sections fire. It also evaluates the proficiency of the section as a team.
3. The MK-19 will use the low ammo override to stop firing, so only manual traverse will be allowed. Reload for both weapons will be done from inside the vehicle.
4. The Section Leader will control when each vehicle will reload.
5. While moving to the firing position no weapons will be in a condition 3 or higher. Only when determined by the RSO that the section can safely engage targets, will the section be cleared to go condition 1 and hot.
6. Lapse of fire in excess of 20 seconds compromises objective suppression and is considered failure of task.
7. No range cards or preparing of the firing line will be done.
8. Distance between AAVs will be determined by range conditions and regulations.
9. The evaluator will assign targets to the Section Leader once the AAVs are on the firing line. The clock will not start until the Section Leader has a clear understanding of the engagement area; this applies to all timed events.
10. Ordnance requirements listed are based on one section to execute the entire table.

SPECIAL PERSONNEL CERTS:

1. Section is qualified when all tables are passed.
2. Passing each scenario in each table is based on the decision of an objective evaluator.